Installation and Setup User Guide

BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS

B.A.S.I.S.® ET

BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS INTEGRATED SOLUTIONS

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Before You Begin Installing B.A.S.I.S. 13

System Setup Checklist 13

Configure B.A.S.I.S. 13

Installation Prerequisites 16

Upgrading to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition 19

Chapter 2: Upgrade Procedures 21

B.A.S.I.S. Upgrade Checklist 21

Upgrading from B.A.S.I.S. 2000 or B.A.S.I.S. 2002 23

Upgrading B.A.S.I.S. 24

Attach the Hardware Key (B.A.S.I.S. License Server Computer Only) 25

Start the Communication Server 25

Install the New License 25

Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. SQL or Oracle Database 26

Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. Access Database 30

Maintaining and Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition 34

Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition 38

Upgrading from Versions of B.A.S.I.S. Before 5.5E 38

New Installations 39

Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition 41

Installation Procedures 41

Install & Configure SQL Server or Oracle Server (Does Not Apply to SQL Server Desktop Engine Users) 41

Install the B.A.S.I.S. Software 42

Attach the Hardware Key (B.A.S.I.S. License Server Computer Only) 47

Start the Communication Server 51

Install the New License 51

Set Up Your B.A.S.I.S. Database 51

Install Acrobat Reader 52

Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup 53

Configuring Video Hardware & Software 53

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware 53

Step 2: Install the FlashPoint Video Capture Board 55

Step 3: Install the FlashPoint VGA Display Adapter Driver 56

Step 4: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct 56

Step 5: Install FlashPoint Software 58

Step 6: Connect Your Video Camera(s) to Your FlashPoint 3D Board 58

Step 7: Verify That Your Video Board and Drivers Are Working Properly 59

Step 8: Video Software Settings 60

CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default) 63

CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit 64

Chapter 5: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for USB Devices 65

Configuring Video Hardware & Software 65

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware 65

Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows XP) 66

Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows 2000) 70

Step 3: Video Software Settings 72

CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default) 76

CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit 77

Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station 79

Environmental Considerations Affecting Flash & Camera Capture Quality .. 79

Setting Up the B.A.S.I.S. Capture Dialog 79

Capture Station Setup Specifications 80

Recommended Badging Room Layout 81

Final Adjustments for Fixed Diffused Lighting 82

Final Adjustments for Continuous Lighting 83

Basic Camera Setup (CAM-CCP-500K) 83

CCP-500 (Back View) 84

Lighting Setup 85

Basic Continuous Lighting Setup (EHK-K42U-A) 85

Advanced Setup 85

Environmental Considerations and Factors Leading to Poor Lighting 86

Chapter 7: Configuring Computers for TCP/IP 87

Configuring TCP/IP in Windows 2000 87

Chapter 8: Installing and Configuring WirelessOffice Messaging Software Version 5.0 89

WirelessOffice Messaging Software Overview 89

Manual E-mail/Paging 89

Automatic E-mail/Paging 89

E-mail/Paging Setup Checklist 91

E-Mail/Paging Setup Procedures 92

Prerequisites 92

WirelessOffice Procedures 93

B.A.S.I.S. Procedures 103

Database Management Systems 105

Chapter 9: Installing Microsoft SQL Server 107

SQL Server Support Overview 107

Hardware Requirements 107

Operating System Requirements 108

Installing SQL Server 2000 (New Installations) 108

Installing SQL Server 2000 109

Configuring SQL Server 2000 116

Run Query Analyzer 123

Chapter 10: Upgrading Microsoft SQL Server 125

Upgrading from SQL Server 7.0 to SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition 125

Verifying the Database Upgrade 131

Chapter 11: Installing & Configuring Oracle 9*i* Server Software 133

Oracle 9i Server Software Configuration Overview 133

Oracle 9i Server Software Installation and Configuration 135

Step 1: Install Oracle 9*i* Server Software 135

Step 2: Configure the BEST Database 137

Step 3: Run the Net Configuration Assistant 146

Step 4: Verify the System is Working 152

Step 5: Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition 154

Step 6: Create the Lenel User 155

Step 7: Run Database Setup 157

Chapter 12: Configuring Oracle 9*i* Client Software 159

Oracle 9i Client Installation and Configuration 159

Step 1: Install Oracle 9i 159

Step 2: Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition Software 164

Step 3: Run the Net Configuration Assistant 164

Step 4: Verify the System is Working 164

Chapter 13: Database Backup and Restoration 165

Dell Precision 330 165

Conduct a Random Database Backup for ACCESSCONTROL 166

Conduct a Database Restore for ACCESSCONTROL 167

Change Scheduled Backup Intervals 167

Dell Precision 340 169

SQL Server 2000 Database Backup Procedures 170

SQL Server 2000 Database Restore Procedures 189

SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Backup Procedures 192

SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Restore Procedures 194

DB2 Database Backup and Restoration 195

Back Up a DB2 Database 195

Restore a DB2 Database 197

Appendix 199

Appendix A: Installing DirectX 201

DirectX Version Overview 201

Installing DirectX Version 9.0 201

Appendix B: Accounts and Passwords 205

Password Standards 205

Enable/Disable Strong Password Enforcement 206

Change the Database Password 206

Change the BEST Account Password 208

About Accounts 211

Change the System Administrator Password for the Database 211

Step 1: Change the SYSTEM Account Password Using Database Setup 212

Step 2: Write Down and Inform Administrators of the Password Change 212

Appendix C: The Database Setup Program 213

Database Setup Options Window 213

Database Setup Procedures 214

How to Run the Database Setup Program 214

View the Setup Log 216

View Configuration Information 217

Change the Database or System Account Password 217

Appendix D: Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine 221

Procedures 221

Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine Before Running Database Setup 221

Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine After Running Database Setup 224

Appendix E: Transfer an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database

.....229

Back Up the SQL Server Desktop Engine Database 229

Insure Minimum Server Requirements are Met 229

Install B.A.S.I.S. on the New Server 229

Stop the MSSQLSERVER Service 229

Copy Files from the Old Server to the New Server 230

Restart the MSSQLSERVER Service 230

Change the Database Owner 231

Verify the Database Transfer was Successful 233

Appendix F: Database Installation Utility 235

Database Installation Utility Overview..... 235

Database Installation Utility Window..... 235

Database Installation Utility Window Field Table 236

Database Installation Utility Procedures 237

Attach an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database 237

Appendix G: Change the Database Owner in SQL Server Desktop Engine 241

Appendix H: Configuring a Distributed ID/Mobile Badging System 243

Configure the Server to be a Distributed ID Master 243

Configure a Mobile Badging Station 244

Appendix I: The License Server 249

ACS.INI Settings Related to the License Server 249

License Server Procedures 250

Running the License Server from the Command Line 250

Running the License Server in Windows 250

Determining if the License Server is Running 250

Appendix J: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for Discontinued Hardware 251

Configuring Video Hardware and Software 251

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware 251

Step 2: Set Up the FlashPoint Board 253

Step 3: Install the FlashPoint Video Capture Board 253

Step 4: Install the FlashPoint VGA Display Adapter Driver (Windows 2000) 253

Step 5: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct 255

Step 6: Install FlashPoint software 257

Step 7: Connect Your Video Camera(s) to Your FlashPoint Board 258

Step 8: Verify That Your Video Board and Drivers Are Working Properly 258

Step 9: Video Software Settings 259

Hitachi VK-C77U Camera dip switch settings 262

EHK-283 (Enhance Lighting Kit) 263

Appendix K: The License Administration Application 265

License Administration Procedures 265

Starting the License Administration Application 265

Logging into the License Administration Application 266

Viewing an Installed License 267

Deleting an Installed License 267

Installing a New License 268

Viewing the License Server Log 270

Changing Administrator Properties for the License Administration Application 271

Logging Out of the License Administration Application 271

Appendix L: Room Layout & Lighting Setup for a Capture Station with Discontinued Video Capture Hardware 273

Environmental Considerations Affecting Flash & Camera Capture Quality 273

Capture Station Setup Specifications 273

Basic Camera Setup (VK-C77U) 273

Lighting Setup 274

Basic Flash Setup (EHK-283) 274

Advanced Setup 275

Environmental Considerations and Factors Leading to Poor Lighting 275

Appendix M: Windows Terminal Services/Citrix MetaFrame 277

Windows Terminal Services/Citrix Overview 277

General Issues 278

Implications 278

Procedures 279

Step 1: Installing Required Applications 279

Step 2: Installing Citrix MetaFrame on the Server 279

Step 3: Installing Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2) 280

Step 4: Configuring the Citrix Web Server 280

Creating the Virtual IIS Directory 281

Installing the Java Client 282

Installing Citrix NFuse Web Extensions 283

Installing the NFuse Web Site Wizard 286

Running the Citrix Web Site Wizard 288

Edit the Appembed.htm and Template.ica File 292

Step 5: Installing B.A.S.I.S. on the Server 293

Step 6: Publishing B.A.S.I.S. as a Web Application 294

Is it Working? 297

Installing B.A.S.I.S. Via a Terminal Services Client Window 298

Appendix N: Encryption 299

Encryption Overview 299

Setting Up Encryption for Use with B.A.S.I.S. 302

Step 1: Initial Hardware Configuration 302

Step 2: Configuring the SafeNet/Speed Box 302

Step 3: Installing SafeNet/Soft-PK on the Server and Client 306

Step 4: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Server 309

Step 5: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Workstation 312

Step 6: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Panel Encryption on the Workstation 315

Appendix O: Ports Used by B.A.S.I.S. 319

Recorded Digital Video Ports 321

Index 323

Chapter 1: Before You Begin Installing B.A.S.I.S.

System Setup Checklist

Specific hardware, operating system, database system, and web browser requirements must be met prior to the B.A.S.I.S.® installation. Please refer to the release notes for those requirements. The release notes are located on the root of the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD in a file named **B.A.S.I.S. ET Release Notes.rtf**.

Configure B.A.S.I.S.

The following process outline represents a typical 3-station network configuration. Your installation may differ from this, depending upon the size of your network and the functions performed on each individual station.

Access Control Server/Configuration & Monitoring Station

1. Install Microsoft Windows Server software.
2. Determine whether your database will use Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or the default (SQL Server Desktop Engine) database layout.
3. Configure the computer for TCP/IP. For more information, refer to Chapter 7: Configuring Computers for TCP/IP on page 87.
4. Oracle Server users ONLY: Install Oracle 9*i* Server software. For more information, refer to Chapter 11: Installing & Configuring Oracle 9i Server Software on page 133. Also, please refer to your Oracle user documentation.
5. SQL Server users ONLY: Install Microsoft SQL Server software. For more information, refer to Chapter 9: Installing Microsoft SQL Server on page 107.
6. Install the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition software. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.
   - Select the Server Installation choice.
   - Choose the access control applications.
   - SQL Server users ONLY: choose the MS-SQL Database option.
   - Oracle users ONLY: choose the Oracle option.
7. Attach the Hardware Key.
8. Install the software license. For more information, refer to Appendix K: The License Administration Application on page 265.
9. Run Database Setup. For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.
10. Using the System Administration software, define your access control system hardware and monitoring environment. For more information please refer to the System Administration and Alarm Monitoring User Guides.
11. **If you've purchased the Mobile Badging option:** Configure the server to be a Distributed ID Master Server. For more information, refer to Appendix H: Configuring a Distributed ID/Mobile Badging System on page 243.

Alarm Monitoring Station

1. Install Windows Workstation software.
2. Configure the computer for TCP/IP. For more information, refer to Chapter 7: Configuring Computers for TCP/IP on page 87.
3. Oracle users ONLY: Install and Configure Oracle 9*i* client software. For more information, refer to Chapter 12: Configuring Oracle 9i Client Software on page 159.
4. Install the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition software. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.
   - Select the Client Installation choice.
   - Choose the Alarm Monitoring application.
5. Attach the Hardware Key.
6. Start the Communication Server.

ID Badging Station

Note: If you have purchased the optional Mobile Badging application, you must configure Mobile Badging Stations. For more information, refer to Appendix H: Configuring a Distributed ID/Mobile Badging System on page 243.

1. Install Windows Workstation software.
2. Install an Integral™ Technologies FlashPoint™ video capture board in the computer. For more information, refer to Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup on page 53. Also refer to the FlashPoint user guide.
3. Perform video capture setup. For more information, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station on page 79.
4. Configure the workstation for TCP/IP. For more information, refer to Chapter 7: Configuring Computers for TCP/IP on page 87.
5. Oracle users ONLY: Install and Configure Oracle 9*i* client software. For more information, refer to Chapter 12: Configuring Oracle 9i Client Software on page 159.
6. Install the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition software. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.
   - Select the Client Installation choice.
   - Choose the ID CredentialCenter application.
7. Attach the Hardware Key.
8. Add cardholder records to the database. For more information please refer to the ID CredentialCenter User Guide.

Installation Prerequisites

The following are **required** components that must be installed prior to installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition:

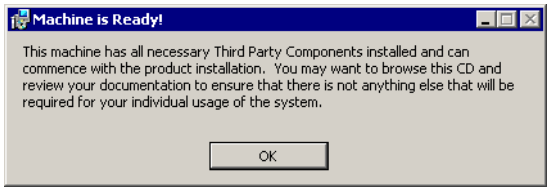
- DirectX 9.0.
- Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 or later, if running Windows 2000.
- Windows XP Service Pack 1a or later, if running Windows XP.
- Adobe Acrobat Reader 6.0 (not required to install B.A.S.I.S., but needed to open the documentation).

These components have been included for your convenience on Disc 2, which accompanies the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition Disc CD-ROM. To determine whether your system has these components installed or install any of these components:

1. Insert the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition Disc 2 CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive on the computer where B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition will be installed.
2. If autorun is enabled, your computer will automatically be checked to determine whether it has all required third party applications installed.

Note: If autorun is not enabled, click the **Run...** popup menu choice. In the Run window, select **setup.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively, you can run Setup from Explorer.

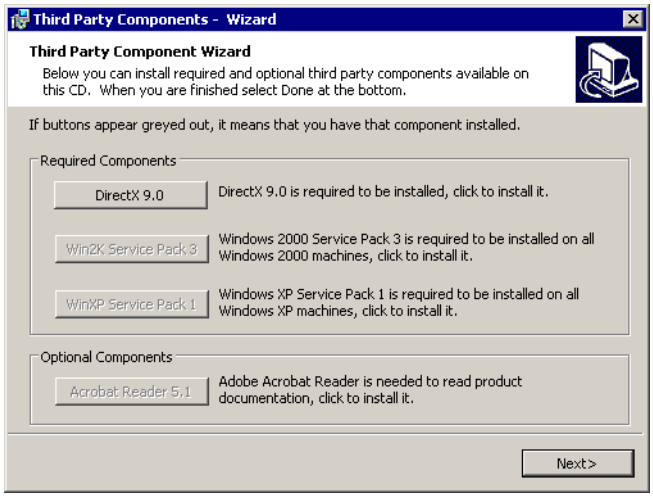
- If all requirements are met, the following message is displayed. Click the [OK] button and proceed to step 5.


Machine is Ready!
This machine has all necessary Third Party Components installed and can commence with the product installation. You may want to browse this CD and review your documentation to ensure that there is not anything else that will be required for your individual usage of the system.
OK

- If there is a requirement that has not been met, the Third Party Components - Wizard window is displayed.

3. In the Third Party Components - Wizard window, all components with grayed out buttons are already installed on the system. In the illustration that

follows, Windows 2000 Service Pack 4, Windows XP Service Pack 1a, and Acrobat Reader 6.0 have already been installed.


Third Party Components - Wizard
Third Party Component Wizard
Below you can install required and optional third party components available on this CD. When you are finished select Done at the bottom.
If buttons appear greyed out, it means that you have that component installed.
Required Components
DirectX 9.0
DirectX 9.0 is required to be installed, click to install it.
Win2K Service Pack 3
Windows 2000 Service Pack 3 is required to be installed on all Windows 2000 machines, click to install it.
WinXP Service Pack 1
Windows XP Service Pack 1 is required to be installed on all Windows XP machines, click to install it.
Optional Components
Acrobat Reader 5.1
Adobe Acrobat Reader is needed to read product documentation, click to install it.
Next>

a. If the [DirectX 9.0] button is not grayed out, click the button and install DirectX 9.0. For more information, refer to Appendix A: Installing DirectX on page 201.

b. If the [Win2K Service Pack 4] button is not grayed out and you are using Windows 2000, click the button and install Windows 2000 Service Pack 4.

c. If the [WinXP Service Pack 1a] button is not grayed out and you are using Windows XP, click the button and install Windows XP Service Pack 1a.

Warning

If you have the full version of Adobe Acrobat installed, do not install the Acrobat 6.0 reader. The installation of the reader will cause the full version of Acrobat to run improperly.

d. If the [Acrobat Reader 6.0] button is not grayed out and you do not have another version of Acrobat or Acrobat Reader installed, click the button to install Acrobat Reader 6.0.

4. After all required components are installed, click [Next >].

5. The Third Party Wizard Completed window is displayed. Click [Exit].

Upgrading to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

Chapter 2: Upgrade Procedures

B.A.S.I.S. Upgrade Checklist

1. The B.A.S.I.S. database must be backed up. It is ***CRITICAL*** that you have an up-to-date backup of the database before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, refer to Chapter 13: Database Backup and Restoration on page 165.
2. All workstations must be upgraded to Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 or later. *Workstations* are any computers where B.A.S.I.S. software is installed, including the Database Server computer, Archive Server computers, License Server computers, Communication Server computers, etc.
3. If using SQL Server, you must upgrade to SQL Server 2000 (Service Pack 3a is also highly recommended). If using Oracle, you must upgrade to 9.2 (9*i*).
4. DirectX 9.0 must be installed on all client computers. The installation will notify you if you do not have DirectX 9.0 installed on the machine. Windows XP comes with DirectX 8.1. Both Windows 2000 and Windows XP users must upgrade to 9.0, which is located on Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. installation disk set. For more information, refer to Appendix A: Installing DirectX on page 201.
5. The latest approved drivers (compatible with Windows 2000) are required for any video capture devices and printers you have installed on workstations.
6. B.A.S.I.S. services should be shut down on all computers. These services must not be restarted until the upgrade is complete. For those services that

are configured for automatic start up, temporarily change them to manual start up. The following services should be shut down:

- LS Communication Server
- LS DataExchange Server
- LS Global Output Server
- LS License Server
- LS Linkage Server
- LS Login Driver
- LS OpenIT Service
- LS Replicator
- LS Video Archive Server

7. Be sure all B.A.S.I.S. applications are closed on all workstations. Users should not run any B.A.S.I.S. applications during the installation process.
8. If there is new firmware for the Lenel Digital Video recorders, upgrade this firmware first.
9. Upgrade the B.A.S.I.S. Database Server before upgrading any client computers.
10. After installing the latest B.A.S.I.S. software on the database server, upgrade the computer that is hosting the LS License Server service.
11. Restart the LS License Server service and change it from manual to automatic start up.
12. For an upgrade between major release versions of B.A.S.I.S., a new license will be required. Be sure to install your new license using License Administration. Otherwise, you will not be able to run Database Setup.
13. Upgrade the B.A.S.I.S. database by running the Database Setup application.
14. All B.A.S.I.S. Client Computers can be upgraded next. This includes all Archive Servers. Software must not be restarted on a client computer until it has been upgraded.
    As client computers are upgraded, B.A.S.I.S. software (including BEST Services) can be restarted. It is not necessary to wait until ALL clients are upgraded to restart software on a client computer that has been upgraded.
15. If you have not already done so, restart all BEST Services. Remember to change the appropriate services from manual to automatic start up.
16. If the new release contains updated BEST controller firmware, this can be downloaded to the BEST controllers. It is not necessary to do this immediately, but it should be done as soon as it is convenient. New features will not be available until the firmware is updated. Sites with a large number of controllers may find it useful to schedule firmware downloads via the Scheduler application.
17. If the new release contains updated BEST interface gateway firmware, this can be downloaded to the interface gateways. It is not necessary to do this immediately, but it should be done as soon as it is convenient.

Upgrading from B.A.S.I.S. 2000 or B.A.S.I.S. 2002

Warning

Before beginning the upgrade process, make sure that you have an up-to-date backup of the B.A.S.I.S. database. For more information, refer to Chapter 13: Database Backup and Restoration on page 165.

The following instructions apply to upgrading from B.A.S.I.S. 2000 or B.A.S.I.S. 2002. Your upgrade procedure may vary slightly depending on what build of B.A.S.I.S. you have installed.

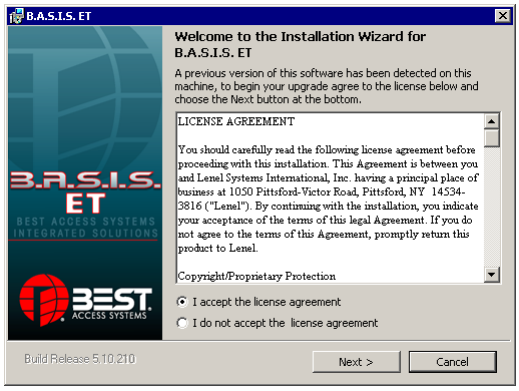
Notes: In order to run B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition, Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 or later is required!

The cardholder, visitor and asset forms have been expanded and improved to accommodate simplified localization, improved readability and expanded contents on each tab. If you have a custom form, you may need to make some cosmetic adjustments to your forms using FormsDesigner after upgrading to take advantage of the new expansion. Note that the horizontal

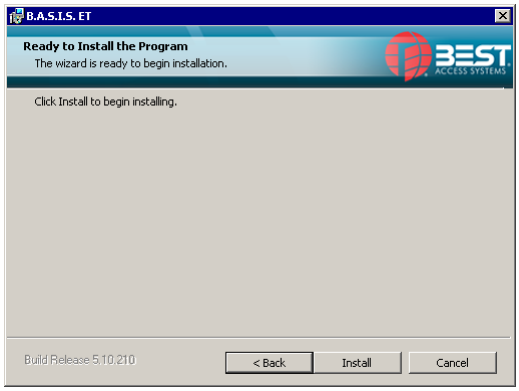
divider bar can now be slightly lowered in FormsDesigner to make more room for controls that are viewable on all pages.

Upgrading B.A.S.I.S.

1. Users upgrading from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine: Make sure that you can successfully log into the current B.A.S.I.S. 2000 system and that the database being used is the database that you want to upgrade.
2. Insert the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD-ROM into a CD-ROM drive on a computer running the Windows operating system.
3. Click the Windows Start button on the taskbar. Click the **Run...** popup menu choice. In the Run window, select **setup.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively, you can run Setup from Explorer.
4. Click the “Install B.A.S.I.S. ET” link.
5. When prompted, read the Software License Agreement. If you agree to its terms:
   a. Select the **I accept the license agreement** radio button.
   b. Click [Next >].

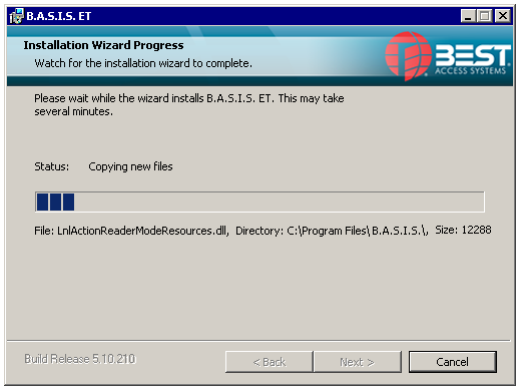

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Welcome to the Installation Wizard for B.A.S.I.S. ET
A previous version of this software has been detected on this machine, to begin your upgrade agree to the license below and choose the Next button at the bottom.
LICENSE AGREEMENT
You should carefully read the following license agreement before proceeding with this installation. This Agreement is between you and Lenel Systems International, Inc. having a principal place of business at 1050 Pittsford-Victor Road, Pittsford, NY 14534-3816 ("Lenel"). By continuing with the installation, you indicate your acceptance of the terms of this legal Agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this Agreement, promptly return this product to Lenel.
Copyright/Proprietary Protection
I accept the license agreement
I do not accept the license agreement
Build Release 5.10.210
Next >
Cancel

6. Click [Install].



7. After Windows configures B.A.S.I.S., B.A.S.I.S. will be upgraded, and the

status and progress bar will be updated as the upgrade progresses.


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Installation Wizard Progress
Watch for the installation wizard to complete.
Please wait while the wizard installs B.A.S.I.S. ET. This may take several minutes.
Status: Copying new files
File: LnlActionReaderModeResources.dll, Directory: C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\, Size: 12288
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

8. Depending on the components that were installed, you may need to reboot the computer. If you are prompted to do so, reboot the computer.

Attach the Hardware Key (B.A.S.I.S. License Server Computer Only)

B.A.S.I.S. software is protected by a hardware security key. There are two types of hardware security keys available for use with B.A.S.I.S.: parallel port and USB. You may request either. Please remember to physically attach the hardware key (“dongle” adapter) directly to the respective port on the computer that has License Server installed in order for the software to run properly.

A hardware dongle is only needed on the server running License Server. Each client computer running B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition uses a software license instead of a hardware dongle.

Start the Communication Server

If you will be performing downloads to a PDA, the Communication Server must be started. To run the Communication Server as an application:

1. Click the Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Communication Server**.
2. The Communication Server will start. An icon will appear in the system tray, and the **Lnlcomsrvr.exe** process will be listed in the Task Manager on the Processes tab.

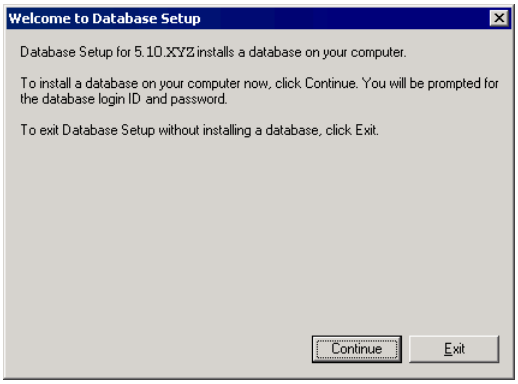
Install the New License

Install your new license using the License Administration application. For more information, refer to Appendix K: The License Administration Application on page 265.

Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. SQL or Oracle Database

After B.A.S.I.S. and the database software have been installed and configured, you must then install the access control-related reports, tables, triggers, and default data. These instructions are for upgrading a B.A.S.I.S. SQL or Oracle database. If you are upgrading an Access database, refer to Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. Access Database on page 30.

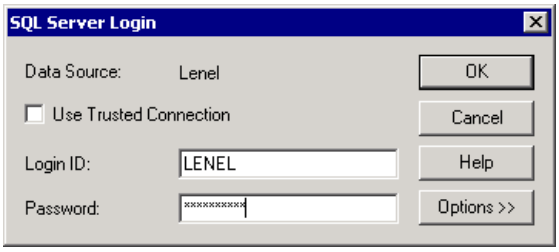
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > B.A.S.I.S. ET > Database Setup**.
2. The Welcome window will be displayed. Click [Continue].


Welcome to Database Setup
Database Setup for 5.10.XYZ installs a database on your computer.
To install a database on your computer now, click Continue. You will be prompted for the database login ID and password.
To exit Database Setup without installing a database, click Exit.
Continue
Exit

3. Type in your B.A.S.I.S. database password. Initially, the password is **MULTIMEDIA**. (The password is case-insensitive for SQL and Oracle, but it is case-sensitive when upgrading from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine.)

Important: It is strongly recommended that you change this password once you are set up.

Click [OK].



4. If the password security feature is enabled, the database password will be analyzed.

Note: This password security feature is enabled by default. To disable it, select the option on the General System Options form in the System Options folder.

This is displayed by selecting **Administration** > **System Options** in System Administration or ID CredentialCenter.

The following rules apply to the B.A.S.I.S. database password:

a. Passwords cannot be blank.

b. Passwords cannot be the same as the user name.

c. Passwords cannot be one of the following keywords:

   1) MULTIMEDIA

   2) PROKUPETS

   3) PROKUPET

   4) BEST

   5) BASIS

   6) PASSWORD

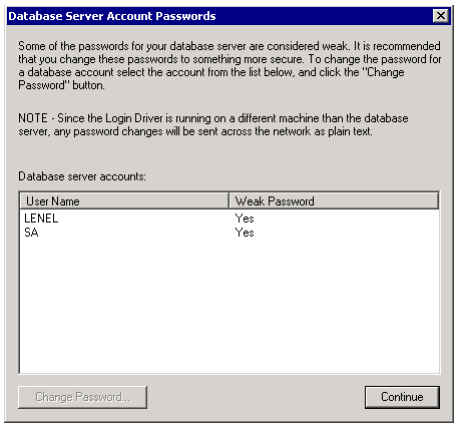
d. The following Oracle database account user name and password pairs are not allowed:

   1) SYSTEM, MANAGER

   2) INTERNAL, ORACLE

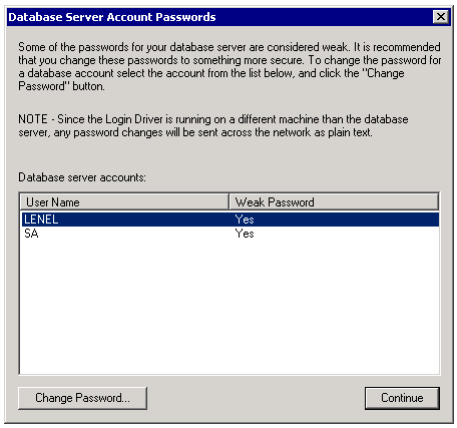
3) SYS, CHANGE_ON_INSTALL

5. If the password is considered weak, the Database Server Account Passwords window is displayed, as shown:


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

6. If you do not wish to change the password at this time, click [Continue] and proceed to step 7. If you wish to change the password for a database server account now, select the account from the list, then click [Change Password].

The note in this message will only appear if the Login Driver and the database server are running on different machines.


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

a. The Change Password window is displayed. In the **Old password** field, type your current password. For security reasons, your password is not displayed as you type it.

The checkbox in this illustration is only displayed when the Login Driver and the database server are running on two different machines.

Change Password
B.A.S.I.S. ET
BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS INTEGRATED SOLUTIONS
Old password:
New password:
Confirm password:
When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.
OK
Cancel

b. In the **New password** field, type the new password.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, type the new password again. Because the password can't be seen while you type, this gives you an extra assurance that you typed it correctly.

d. When the password is changed, it must be changed on the Login Driver and on the database server. If the Login Driver and the database server are running on the same machine, proceed to step e.

If the Login Driver and the database server are not running on the same machine, the **When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.** checkbox appears in the Change Password window.

- If the checkbox is not selected (default), the password will be changed in both places. ***However, the password is sent as plain text over the network. This is the only case where the password is passed across the network in plain text when changing the password.***

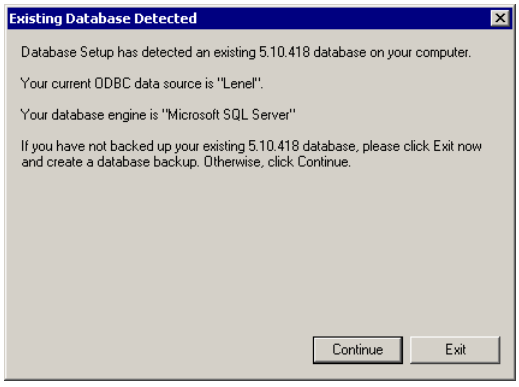
Note: A connection to the Login Driver is required to connect successfully to the database. The Login Driver can be run on either the database server or the license server.

- If the checkbox is selected, the password in the Login Driver will be changed, but you will need to change the password manually on the database server. For more information, refer to Change the BEST Account Password on page 208.

e. Click [OK] to save the new password.

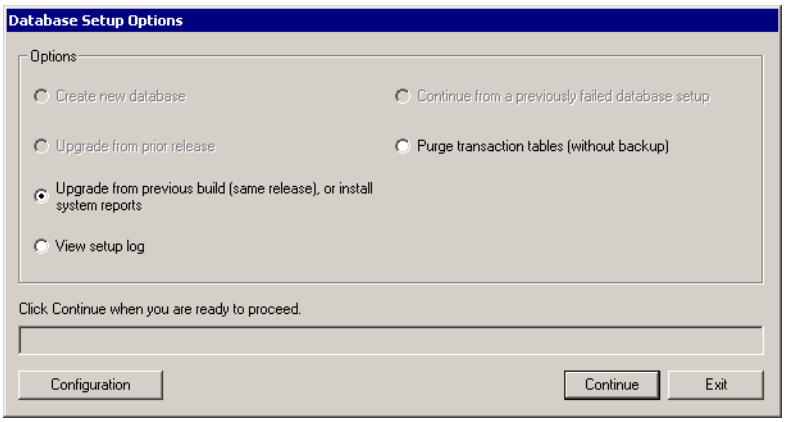
f. Click [Continue].

7. The Existing Database Detected window is displayed. Click [Continue].


Existing Database Detected
Database Setup has detected an existing 5.10.418 database on your computer.
Your current ODBC data source is "Lenel".
Your database engine is "Microsoft SQL Server"
If you have not backed up your existing 5.10.418 database, please click Exit now and create a database backup. Otherwise, click Continue.
Continue
Exit

Note: In B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition, Microsoft Access is not supported. If you were using an Access database prior to this upgrade, your database will be switched to a SQL Server Desktop Engine database.

8. In the Database Setup Options window:
   a. Select the **Upgrade from previous build (same release), or install system reports** radio button.
   b. Click [Continue].



9. Click [Exit] upon successful completion.

Note: If you changed the database password, remember to manually change the password on the database server if you selected the **When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.** checkbox. For more information, refer to Change the BEST Account Password on page 208.

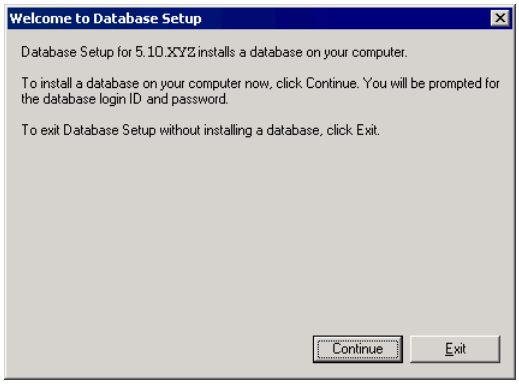
Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. Access Database

After B.A.S.I.S. and the database software have been installed and configured, you must then install the access control-related reports, tables, triggers, and default data. These instructions are for upgrading an Access database to SQL Server Desktop Engine after an upgrade.

- If you have upgraded your operating system or installed a new operating system and you cannot log into B.A.S.I.S. 2000 before upgrading to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition, refer to Appendix D: Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine.

- If you are upgrading a B.A.S.I.S. SQL or Oracle database, refer to Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. SQL or Oracle Database on page 26.

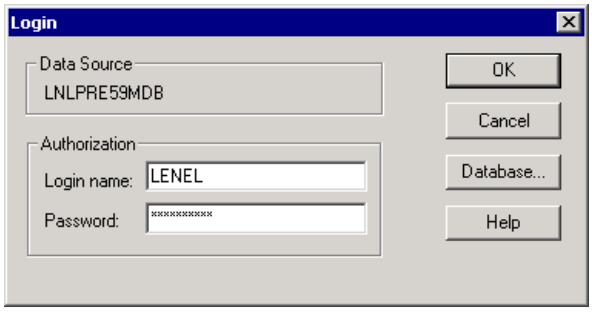
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Database Setup**.
2. The Welcome window is displayed. Click [Continue].


Welcome to Database Setup
Database Setup for 5.10.XYZ installs a database on your computer.
To install a database on your computer now, click Continue. You will be prompted for the database login ID and password.
To exit Database Setup without installing a database, click Exit.
Continue
Exit

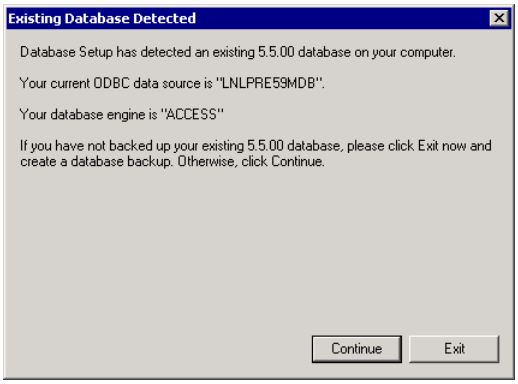
Important: You will need to type in your password to continue. Initially, the password is **MULTIMEDIA**. (The password is case-insensitive for SQL and Oracle, but it is case-sensitive when upgrading from Access to SQL Server Desktop

Engine.) It is strongly recommended that you change this password once you are set up.

Click [OK].

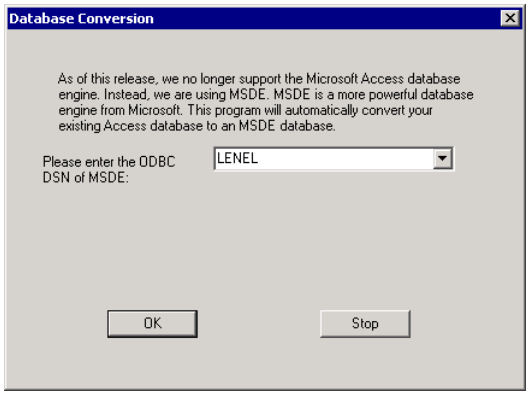


3. Click [Continue].

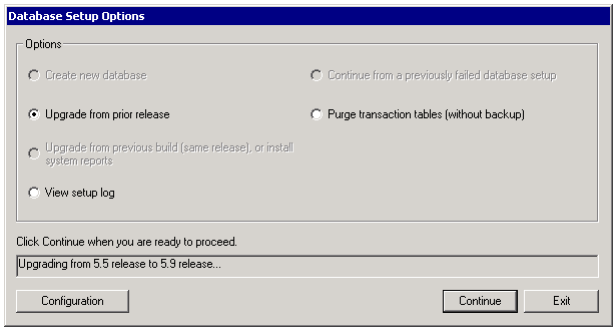

Existing Database Detected
Database Setup has detected an existing 5.5.00 database on your computer.
Your current ODBC data source is "LNLPRE59MDB".
Your database engine is "ACCESS"
If you have not backed up your existing 5.5.00 database, please click Exit now and create a database backup. Otherwise, click Continue.
Continue
Exit

4. In B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition, Microsoft Access is not supported. If you were using an Access database prior to this upgrade, your database will be

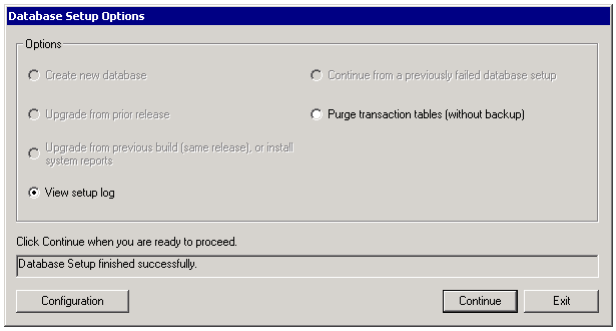
converted to a SQL Server Desktop Engine database.
Click [OK].


Database Conversion
As of this release, we no longer support the Microsoft Access database engine. Instead, we are using MSDE. MSDE is a more powerful database engine from Microsoft. This program will automatically convert your existing Access database to an MSDE database.
Please enter the ODBC DSN of MSDE:
LENEL
OK
Stop

5. In the Database Setup Options window:
   a. Select the **Upgrade from prior release** radio button.
   b. Click [Continue].


Database Setup Options
Options
Create new database
Continue from a previously failed database setup
Upgrade from prior release
Purge transaction tables (without backup)
Upgrade from previous build (same release), or install system reports
View setup log
Click Continue when you are ready to proceed.
Upgrading from 5.5 release to 5.9 release...
Configuration
Continue
Exit

6. Upon successful completion, click [Continue] if you wish to view the setup log. Otherwise, click [Exit].



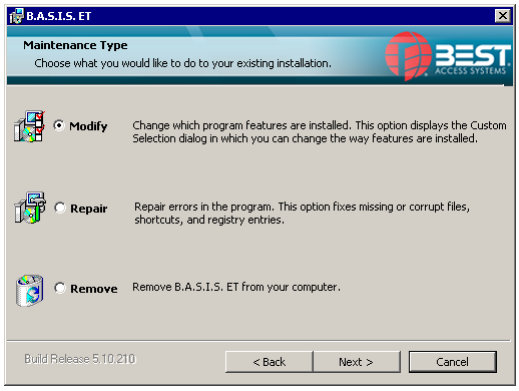
Maintaining and Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

Note: B.A.S.I.S. can be removed more quickly by following the Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition procedure on page 38 instead.

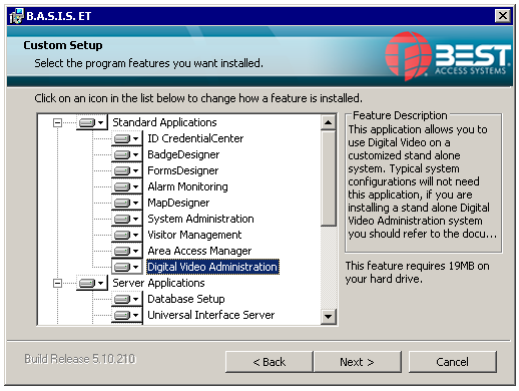
1. To modify, repair, or remove your existing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition installation, insert the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD-ROM into a CD-ROM drive on a computer that has the same build of B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition installed.
   - If autorun is enabled, the Installation & Configuration window will automatically be opened.
   - If the Installation & Configuration window does not automatically appear, click the Windows Start. Click the **Run...** popup menu choice. In the Run window, select **setup.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively, you can run Setup from Explorer.
2. The Maintenance Wizard opens. Click [Next >].
3. The Maintenance Type window opens. Click one of the following radio buttons:
   - Modify – to add or remove programs from the existing build. Select if you want to install components that were previously left uninstalled or remove components that are no longer needed.
   - Repair – to automatically attempt to repair shortcuts, deleted files, etc., that were deleted by the user.
   - Remove – to remove B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition and all of its components from the hard drive.

   If you chose the Modify or Repair option, click [Next>] to continue. If you chose the Remove option, the [Next >] button is replaced by a [Remove >]

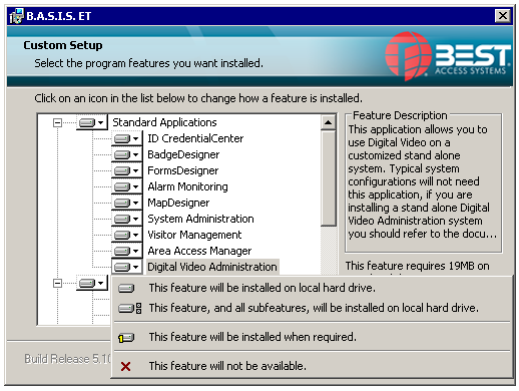
button. Click [Remove >] to remove B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition from your computer.


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Maintenance Type
Choose what you would like to do to your existing installation.
Modify
Change which program features are installed. This option displays the Custom Selection dialog in which you can change the way features are installed.
Repair
Repair errors in the program. This option fixes missing or corrupt files, shortcuts, and registry entries.
Remove
Remove B.A.S.I.S. ET from your computer.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

4. What happens next depends on what option you chose.
   - If you chose the Repair option, click [Install] to repair the program.
   - If you chose the Modify option, the Custom Setup window is displayed. Select the B.A.S.I.S. features you wish to have installed or those you want to remove.
     a. Click the name of a feature on the left to display its description on the right. Below the **Feature Description** the disk space requirements of the selected B.A.S.I.S. feature are displayed.

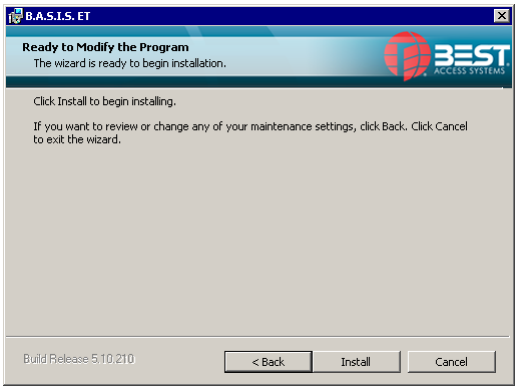

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Custom Setup
Select the program features you want installed.
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed.
Standard Applications
ID CredentialCenter
BadgeDesigner
FormsDesigner
Alarm Monitoring
MapDesigner
System Administration
Visitor Management
Area Access Manager
Digital Video Administration
Server Applications
Database Setup
Universal Interface Server
Feature Description
This application allows you to use Digital Video on a customized stand alone system. Typical system configurations will not need this application, if you are installing a stand alone Digital Video Administration system you should refer to the docu...
This feature requires 19MB on your hard drive.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

b. Click the icon to the left of a feature to display a popup menu of installation choices for that feature, as shown.

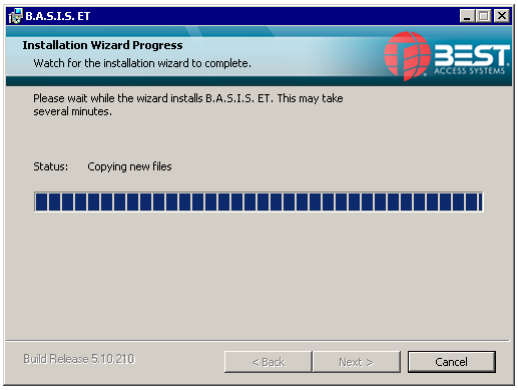

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Custom Setup
Select the program features you want installed.
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed.
Standard Applications
ID CredentialCenter
BadgeDesigner
FormsDesigner
Alarm Monitoring
MapDesigner
System Administration
Visitor Management
Area Access Manager
Digital Video Administration
Feature Description
This application allows you to use Digital Video on a customized stand alone system. Typical system configurations will not need this application, if you are installing a stand alone Digital Video Administration system you should refer to the docu...
This feature requires 19MB on
This feature will be installed on local hard drive.
This feature, and all subfeatures, will be installed on local hard drive.
This feature will be installed when required.
This feature will not be available.

c. Click [Next >] to continue.

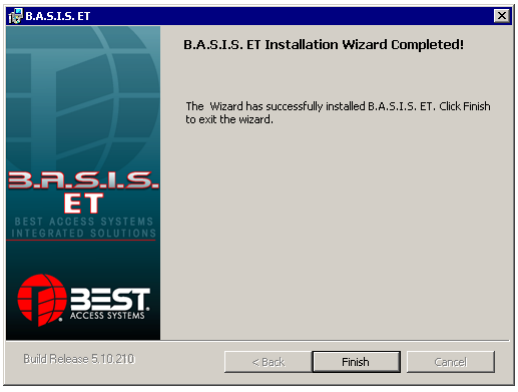
d. The Ready to Modify the Program window is displayed. Click [Install].


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Ready to Modify the Program
The wizard is ready to begin installation.
Click Install to begin installing.
If you want to review or change any of your maintenance settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Install
Cancel

5. A status meter will indicate the progress of the installation or removal.


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Installation Wizard Progress
Watch for the installation wizard to complete.
Please wait while the wizard installs B.A.S.I.S. ET. This may take several minutes.
Status: Copying new files
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Click [Finish].

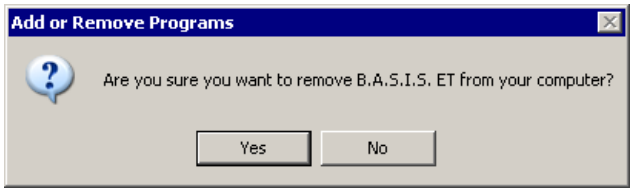


7. Reboot the computer if you are prompted to do so.

Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

There are two ways to remove the B.A.S.I.S. software. The quick way is detailed below. B.A.S.I.S. can also be removed by following the Maintaining and Removing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition procedure on page 34, but the process is more involved.

1. In the Control Panel:
   a. Double-click “Add or Remove Programs”.
   b. In the Currently installed programs listing, select “B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition”.
   c. Click [Remove].
2. The following message is displayed:



3. Click [Yes].

Upgrading from Versions of B.A.S.I.S. Before 5.5E

If you have B.A.S.I.S. version 5.5E or earlier, contact your B.A.S.I.S. Authorized Value Added Reseller for information about upgrading to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition.

New Installations

Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

Installation Procedures

Before installing B.A.S.I.S., the following must be installed:

- DirectX 9.0.
- Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 or later, if running Windows 2000.
- Windows XP Service Pack 1a or later, if running Windows XP.

If any of these are not installed, a message will indicate what needs to be installed, and the B.A.S.I.S. installation will be terminated. To install DirectX 9.0 or a required Windows service pack, refer to Installation Prerequisites on page 16.

The general steps for setting up B.A.S.I.S. include:

1. Install and configure SQL Server or Oracle Server. If you are using SQL Server Desktop Engine, you can skip this step. For more information, refer to Install & Configure SQL Server or Oracle Server (Does Not Apply to SQL Server Desktop Engine Users) on page 41.
2. Install the B.A.S.I.S. software. For more information, refer to Install the B.A.S.I.S. Software on page 42.
3. Attach the hardware key (dongle) to the License Server computer. For more information, refer to Attach the Hardware Key (B.A.S.I.S. License Server Computer Only) on page 47.
4. Install the new B.A.S.I.S. license. For more information, refer to Install the New License on page 51.
5. Set up your B.A.S.I.S. database. For more information, refer to Set Up Your B.A.S.I.S. Database on page 51.
6. (Optional) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader. For more information, refer to Install Acrobat Reader on page 52.

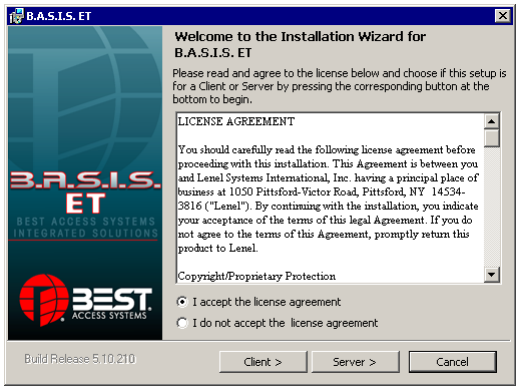
Install & Configure SQL Server or Oracle Server (Does Not Apply to SQL Server Desktop Engine Users)

If you will use an SQL or Oracle database with B.A.S.I.S., you must first install and configure either the SQL Server software or the Oracle Server software.

- SQL Server users: For more information, refer to Chapter 9: Installing Microsoft SQL Server on page 107.
- Oracle users: For more information, refer to Chapter 11: Installing & Configuring Oracle 9i Server Software on page 133.

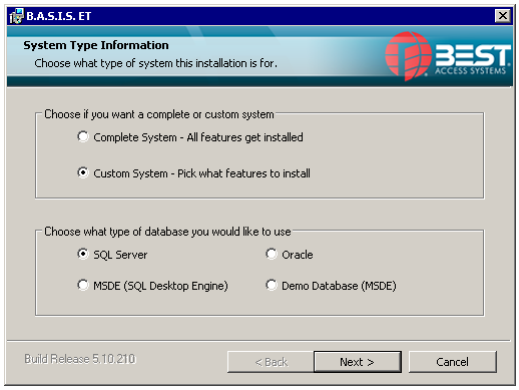
Install the B.A.S.I.S. Software

1. Insert the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD-ROM into a CD-ROM drive on a computer running the Windows operating system.
2. Click the Windows Start button. Click the **Run...** popup menu choice. In the Run window, select **setup.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively, you can run Setup from Explorer.
3. Click the “Install B.A.S.I.S. ET” link.
4. When prompted, read the Software License Agreement. If you agree to its terms:
   a. Select the **I accept the license agreement** radio button.
   b. Click [Server >] or [Client >], depending on the computer on which you are installing.


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Welcome to the Installation Wizard for B.A.S.I.S. ET
Please read and agree to the license below and choose if this setup is for a Client or Server by pressing the corresponding button at the bottom to begin.
LICENSE AGREEMENT
You should carefully read the following license agreement before proceeding with this installation. This Agreement is between you and Lenel Systems International, Inc. having a principal place of business at 1050 Pittsford-Victor Road, Pittsford, NY 14534-3816 ("Lenel"). By continuing with the installation, you indicate your acceptance of the terms of this legal Agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this Agreement, promptly return this product to Lenel.
Copyright/Proprietary Protection
I accept the license agreement
I do not accept the license agreement
Build Release 5.10.210
Client >
Server >
Cancel

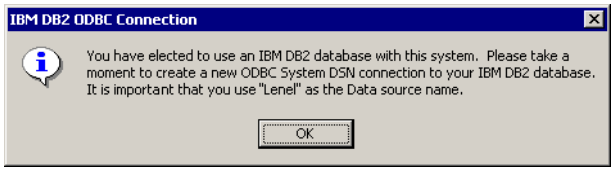
5. Next, you will be prompted to enter the system type information.
   If you would like to install all the features, select the **Complete System** radio button.

   If you would like to include or exclude certain features, select the **Custom System** radio button. If you select this option, a window will appear, allowing you to select your features.

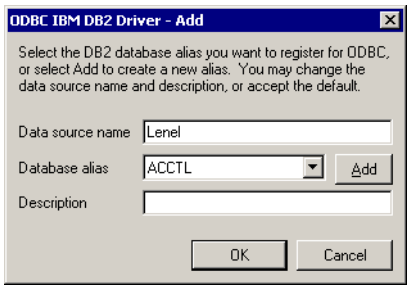

B.A.S.I.S. ET
System Type Information
Choose what type of system this installation is for.
Choose if you want a complete or custom system
Complete System - All features get installed
Custom System - Pick what features to install
Choose what type of database you would like to use
SQL Server
Oracle
MSDE (SQL Desktop Engine)
Demo Database (MSDE)
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Choose your database type that your access control system will use. Choices include SQL Server, SQL Server Desktop Engine, Demo Database (SQL Desktop Engine), Oracle, or IBM DB2.

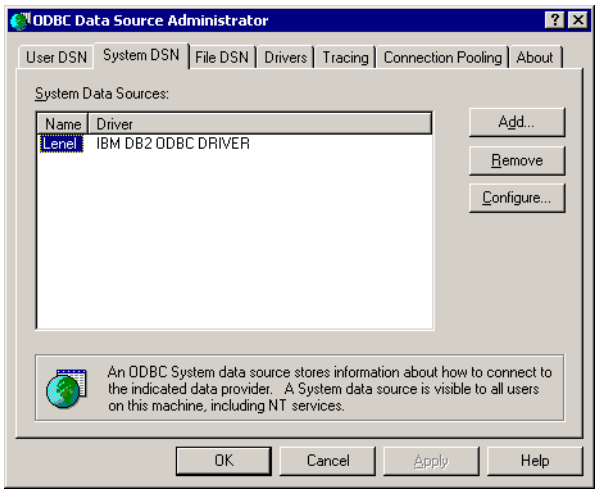
7. Click [Next >].
8. If you selected any database type other than IBM DB2, skip ahead to step 9. If you selected IBM DB2, the following information message is displayed over top of the ODBC Data Source windows:


IBM DB2 ODBC Connection
You have elected to use an IBM DB2 database with this system. Please take a moment to create a new ODBC System DSN connection to your IBM DB2 database. It is important that you use "Lenel" as the Data source name.
OK

   a. Click [OK]. If you need to, move the System Location Information Information window out of the way so that you can see the ODBC Data Source windows.
   b. In the ODBC IBM DB2 Driver - Add window, verify that the Data source name is “Lenel” and the Database alias is “ACCTL”. As long as it is, click [Cancel].


ODBC IBM DB2 Driver - Add
Select the DB2 database alias you want to register for ODBC, or select Add to create a new alias. You may change the data source name and description, or accept the default.
Data source name
Lenel
Database alias
ACCTL
Add
Description
OK
Cancel

   c. In the ODBC Data Source Administrator window, the “Lenel” system data source name should be listed, as shown. Click [OK].



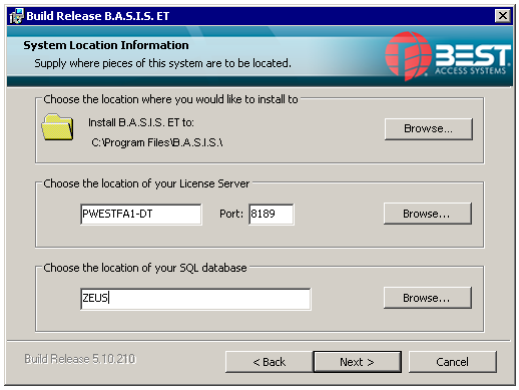
9. In the System Location Information window:
   - Either accept the default installation directory or click [Browse…] and specify a different destination folder.
   - Accept the default location of the License Server or click [Browse…]

and specify a different location.

- In the **Port** field, enter the number of the port to be used for access control system communication. It is recommended that you accept the default value of 8189.

Note: If you accept the default port setting of 8189, it is written into the **ACS.INI** file. If you want to enter a port setting other than 8189, it is written into both the **ACS.INI** file AND the …**B.A.S.I.S.\LicenseServerConfig\Server.Properties** file. This file will only be created during the install *if* the port setting is changed. If you want to change the port setting in the **ACS.INI** file *after* the installation (either to a new setting or back to 8189), then you must also change it in the **Server.Properties** file.

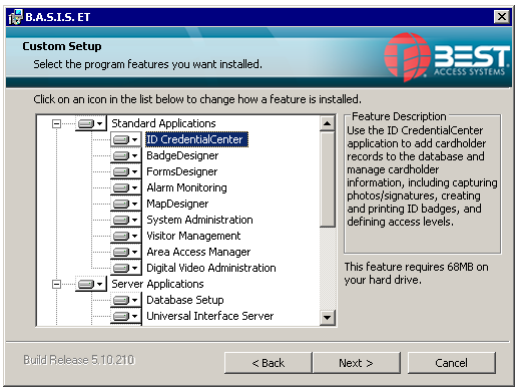
- In the **Choose the location of your [SQL/Oracle/SQL Server Desktop Engine] Database** section, accept the default location or click [Browse…] and specify a different location.
- If you selected the **Complete System** radio button in the previous window, click [Install], and the B.A.S.I.S. installation will begin. Proceed to step 14 on page 46. If you selected the **Custom System** radio button, the [Install] button is replaced by a [Next >] button. Click [Next >].



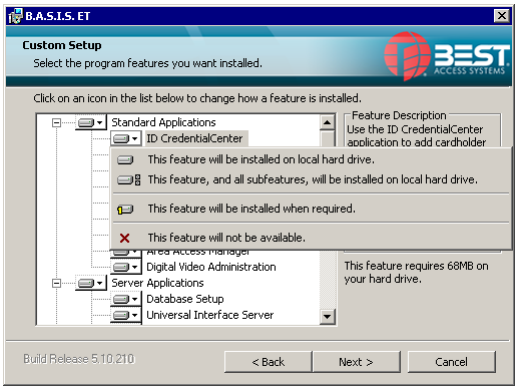
10. The Custom Setup window will be displayed. Select the access control system features you wish to have installed.

Notes: Click the name of a feature on the left to display its description on the right.

Below the **Feature Description** the disk space requirements of the selected feature are displayed.

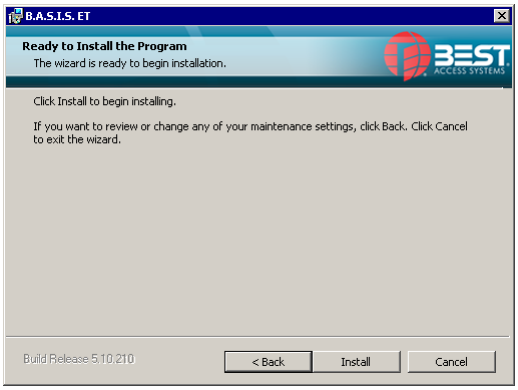

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Custom Setup
Select the program features you want installed.
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed.
Standard Applications
ID CredentialCenter
BadgeDesigner
FormsDesigner
Alarm Monitoring
MapDesigner
System Administration
Visitor Management
Area Access Manager
Digital Video Administration
Server Applications
Database Setup
Universal Interface Server
Feature Description
Use the ID CredentialCenter application to add cardholder records to the database and manage cardholder information, including capturing photos/signatures, creating and printing ID badges, and defining access levels.
This feature requires 68MB on your hard drive.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. Click the icon to the left of a feature to display a popup menu of installation choices for that feature, as illustrated.

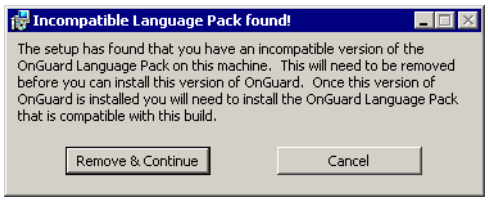

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Custom Setup
Select the program features you want installed.
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed.
Standard Applications
ID CredentialCenter
This feature will be installed on local hard drive.
This feature, and all subfeatures, will be installed on local hard drive.
This feature will be installed when required.
This feature will not be available.
Digital Video Administration
Server Applications
Database Setup
Universal Interface Server
Feature Description
Use the ID CredentialCenter application to add cardholder
This feature requires 68MB on your hard drive.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Click [Next].

12. Click [Install] to begin the installation.

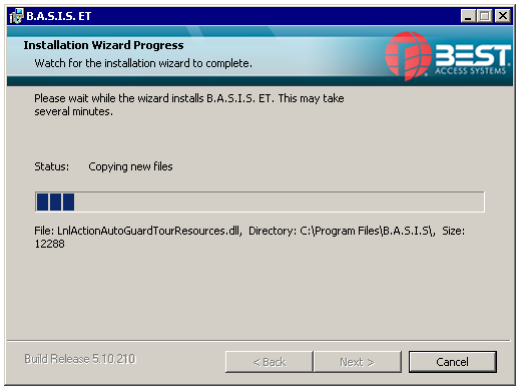

B.A.S.I.S. ET
Ready to Install the Program
The wizard is ready to begin installation.
Click Install to begin installing.
If you want to review or change any of your maintenance settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Install
Cancel

13. A check is performed behind-the-scenes to determine if a language pack is installed. If an old language pack is installed, the following message is displayed:

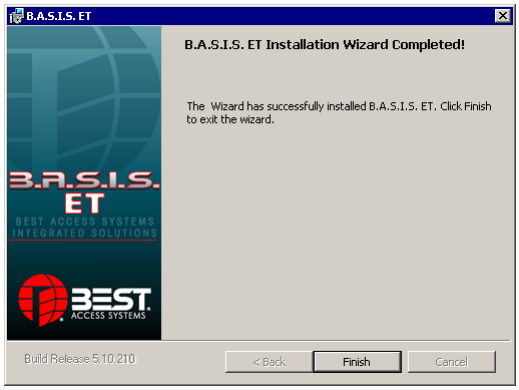

Incompatible Language Pack found!
The setup has found that you have an incompatible version of the OnGuard Language Pack on this machine. This will need to be removed before you can install this version of OnGuard. Once this version of OnGuard is installed you will need to install the OnGuard Language Pack that is compatible with this build.
Remove & Continue
Cancel

- If you wish to cancel the installation and remove the language pack by yourself, click [Cancel].
- If you wish to remove the language pack and continue the installation, click [Remove & Continue].

14. After Windows configures B.A.S.I.S., the status and progress bar will be updated.


B.A.S.I.S. ET
Installation Wizard Progress
Watch for the installation wizard to complete.
Please wait while the wizard installs B.A.S.I.S. ET. This may take several minutes.
Status: Copying new files
File: LnlActionAutoGuardTourResources.dll, Directory: C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S\, Size: 12288
Build Release 5.10.210
< Back
Next >
Cancel

15. Click [Finish].



16. Depending on the components that you chose to install, you may need to reboot the computer. If you are prompted to do so, reboot the computer.

Attach the Hardware Key (B.A.S.I.S. License Server Computer Only)

B.A.S.I.S. software is protected by a hardware security key. There are two types of hardware security keys available for use with B.A.S.I.S.: parallel port and USB. You may request either. Please remember to physically attach the hardware key ("dongle" adapter) directly to the respective port on the computer that has License Server installed in order for the software to run properly.

A hardware key is only needed on the server running License Server. Each client computer running B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition uses a software license instead of a hardware key.

Configuring a Parallel Port Hardware Key

If you are using a hardware key that attaches to the parallel port, no special configuration is needed for the hardware key; simply attach the hardware key to the parallel port.

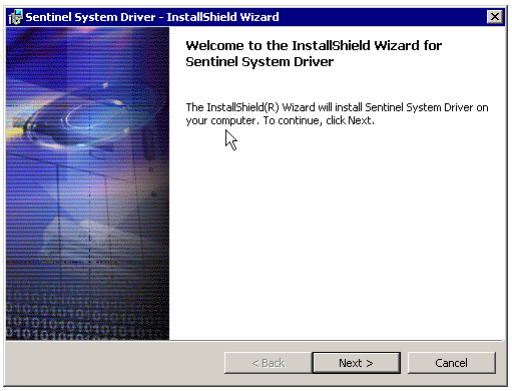
Configuring a USB Hardware Key

If you are using a hardware key that attached to the parallel port, then you must install a driver in order for Windows to recognize the device.

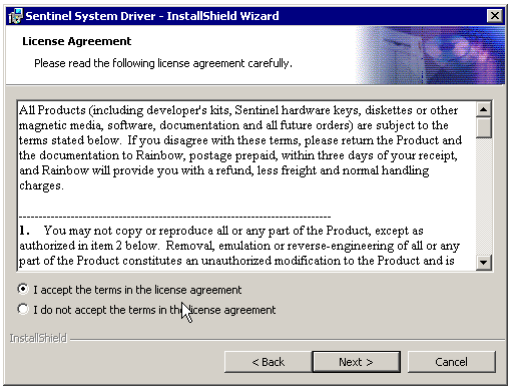
Important: You must install the driver for the hardware key BEFORE attaching the hardware key to the PC.

To configure a USB hardware key:

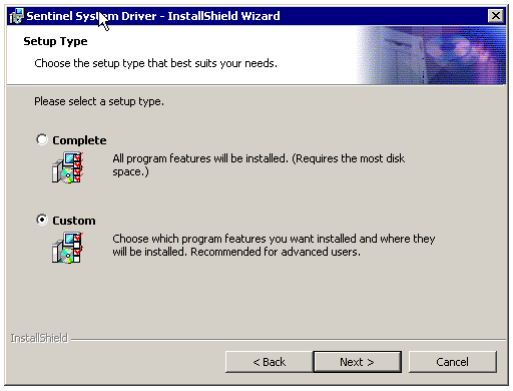
1. Install the Rainbow USB hardware key driver by doing the following:
   a. Navigate to the **Rainbow** directory on Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation disk set, and then double-click the **RainbowSSD5.2.exe** file.
   b. The InstallShield Wizard starts. Click [Next].


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Sentinel System Driver
The InstallShield(R) Wizard will install Sentinel System Driver on your computer. To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

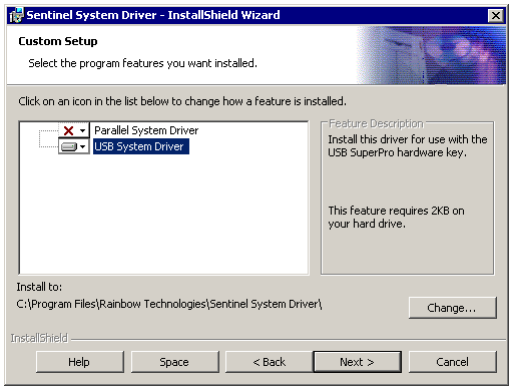
   c. The wizard continues, and the License Agreement window opens. Select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** radio button, and then click [Next].


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement carefully.
All Products (including developer's kits, Sentinel hardware keys, diskettes or other magnetic media, software, documentation and all future orders) are subject to the terms stated below. If you disagree with these terms, please return the Product and the documentation to Rainbow, postage prepaid, within three days of your receipt, and Rainbow will provide you with a refund, less freight and normal handling charges.
1. You may not copy or reproduce all or any part of the Product, except as authorized in item 2 below. Removal, emulation or reverse-engineering of all or any part of the Product constitutes an unauthorized modification to the Product and is
I accept the terms in the license agreement
I do not accept the terms in the license agreement
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

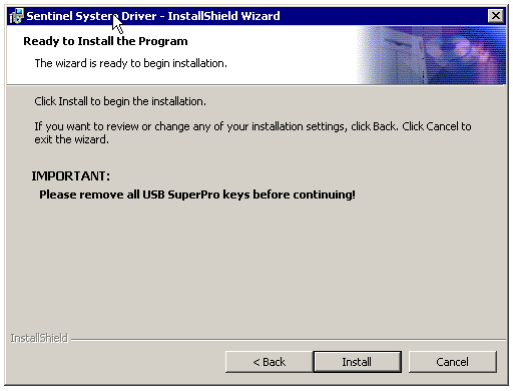
d. The wizard continues, and the Setup Type window opens. Select the **Custom** radio button, and then click [Next].


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
Setup Type
Choose the setup type that best suits your needs.
Please select a setup type.
Complete
All program features will be installed. (Requires the most disk space.)
Custom
Choose which program features you want installed and where they will be installed. Recommended for advanced users.
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

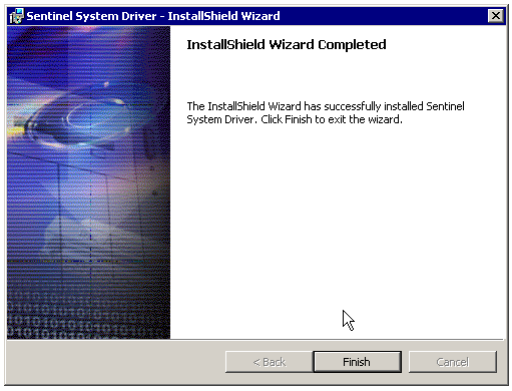
e. On the custom screen make sure that only the USB driver is selected for installation. Click [Next].


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
Custom Setup
Select the program features you want installed.
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is installed.
Parallel System Driver
USB System Driver
Feature Description
Install this driver for use with the USB SuperPro hardware key.
This feature requires 2KB on your hard drive.
Install to:
C:\Program Files\Rainbow Technologies\Sentinel System Driver\
Change...
InstallShield
Help
Space
< Back
Next >
Cancel

f. A message warning that you must not have the hardware key attached to the PC displays. Make sure that the hardware key is not attached to the PC, and then click [Install].


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
Ready to Install the Program
The wizard is ready to begin installation.
Click Install to begin the installation.
If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.
IMPORTANT:
Please remove all USB SuperPro keys before continuing!
InstallShield
< Back
Install
Cancel

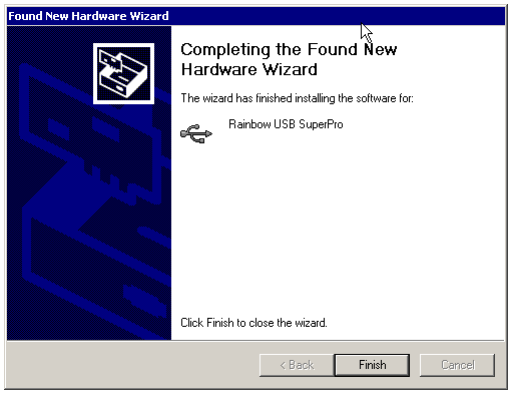
g. The wizard completes. Click [Finish] to exit the wizard.


Sentinel System Driver - InstallShield Wizard
InstallShield Wizard Completed
The InstallShield Wizard has successfully installed Sentinel System Driver. Click Finish to exit the wizard.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

2. Install the USB hardware key by doing the following:
   a. Attach the USB hardware key to any available USB port.
   b. The Found New Hardware wizard starts. Click [Next].

Found New Hardware Wizard
Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard
This wizard helps you install software for:
Rainbow USB SuperPro
If your hardware came with an installation CD or floppy disk, insert it now.
What do you want the wizard to do?
Install the software automatically (Recommended)
Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)
Click Next to continue.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

   c. The hardware is detected, and the Found New Hardware wizard completes. Click [Finish]. The hardware key is now configured and ready to be used.



3. Depending on your configuration, you may need to restart your PC so that License Administration recognizes the hardware key. Otherwise, you may receive an error in License Administration saying that the necessary hardware device was not found.

You are now ready to install the software license!

Start the Communication Server

If you will be performing downloads to a PDA, the Communication Server must be started. To run the Communication Server as an application:

1. Click the Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Communication Server**.
2. The Communication Server will start. An icon will appear in the system tray, and the **Lnlcomsrvr.exe** process will be listed in the Task Manager on the Processes tab.

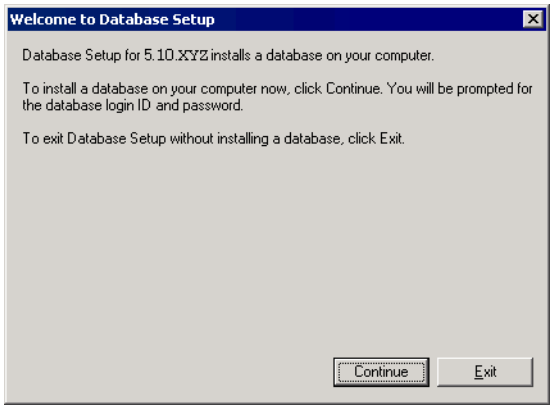
Install the New License

Install your new license using the License Administration application. For more information, refer to Appendix K: The License Administration Application on page 265.

Set Up Your B.A.S.I.S. Database

After B.A.S.I.S. and the database software have been installed and configured, you must then install the access control-related reports, tables, triggers, and default data. For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > B.A.S.I.S. ET > Database Setup**.
2. The Welcome window will be displayed. Click [Continue].


Welcome to Database Setup
Database Setup for 5.10.XYZ installs a database on your computer.
To install a database on your computer now, click Continue. You will be prompted for the database login ID and password.
To exit Database Setup without installing a database, click Exit.
Continue
Exit

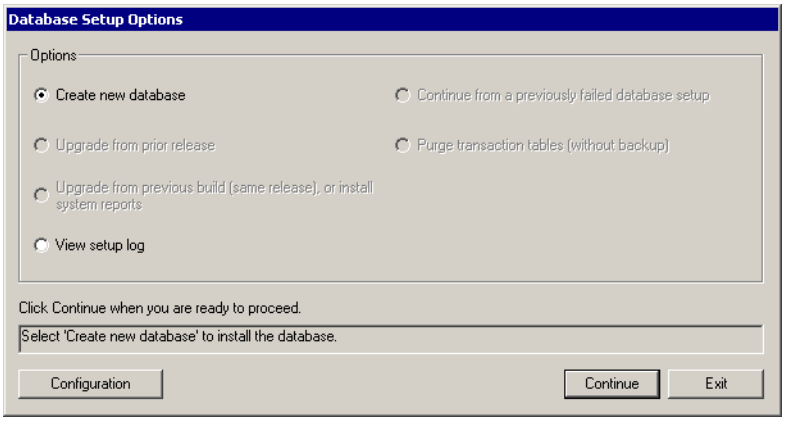
3. You will need to type in your password to continue. Initially, the password is **MULTIMEDIA**. (The password is case-insensitive for SQL and Oracle, but

it is case-sensitive when upgrading from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine.)

Important: It is strongly recommended that you change this password once you are set up. For more information, refer to Change the Database Password on page 206.

Click [OK].

4. In the Database Setup Options window:
   a. Select the **Create new database** option if you don't already have a database. This option will install the access control-related reports, tables, triggers, and default data.
   b. Click [Continue].


Database Setup Options
Options
Create new database
Continue from a previously failed database setup
Upgrade from prior release
Purge transaction tables (without backup)
Upgrade from previous build (same release), or install system reports
View setup log
Click Continue when you are ready to proceed.
Select 'Create new database' to install the database.
Configuration
Continue
Exit

5. Click [Exit] upon successful completion. You can now proceed to the System Administration or ID CredentialCenter application to configure your software for your organization's needs.

Install Acrobat Reader

Warning

If you have the full version of Adobe Acrobat installed, do not install the Acrobat 6.0 reader. The installation of the reader will cause the full version of Acrobat to run improperly.

Adobe Acrobat Reader is required to view the B.A.S.I.S. user manuals. If you do not already have Adobe Acrobat Reader version 6.0 installed, install it. The Acrobat installation file can be found on the B.A.S.I.S. Disc 2 CD. Navigate to the **Adobe Acrobat Reader 6.0** folder on **Disc 2** of the B.A.S.I.S. CD set and double-click on the **AcroReader60_enu_full.exe** file to begin the installation.

Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup

Configuring Video Hardware & Software

This procedure will verify that your system video capture board and required Windows drivers are configured properly for live video capture/CCTV video with one of the following Integral Technologies video capture boards:

- FlashPoint 3Dx Lite PCI
- FlashPoint 3Dx Pro PCI
- FlashPoint 3D Plus PCI 8 MB
- FlashPoint 3D Pro PCI

Those with other capture boards should refer to Appendix J: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for Discontinued Hardware. Be sure to perform Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware through Step 3: Install the FlashPoint VGA Display Adapter Driver **before** you install any Integral™ Technologies FlashPoint™ software. The latest FlashPoint 3Dx software is available for download from Integral's web site: http://www.integraltech.com/support.html. The most current version is 2.03, which is what the 3Dx systems ship with.

The FlashPoint User's Manual and accompanying Setup software diskettes are required for the procedures outlined in this chapter. (The FlashPoint User's Manual referenced in this user guide is the September 2001 version.) You may also need your Windows 2000/Windows XP CD or a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette from Integral Technologies.

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware

Refer to the "FlashPoint Cables" chapter of the FlashPoint User's Manual for the video input cable requirements of your board.

If you're setting up a capture station you need the following hardware:

Hardware included with different image capture packages

	CCP601 Digital Zoom	1/4 inch color CCD camera with autofocus/Iris 32X zoom lens	450 lines	S-Video camera with built-in 16X AF lens	Fixed diffused light with tilt head	Camera and light 110 VAC power supplies	Camera and light 220 VAC power supplies	S-Video Cable 12-foot length	Image capture card	USB adapter kit	Tripod with pan tilt mounts	Tripod with pan tilt mounts with European plugs and cables
CAM-CCP500K	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X		X	
CAM-CCP500K-EU	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X			X
CAM-500K-USB	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		X	X	
CAM-500K-USB-EU	X	X	X	X	X		X	X		X		X

Note: This chapter is for configuring the CAM-CCP500K and CAM-CCP500K-EU. To configure the CAM-500K-USB or the CAM-500K-USB-EU, please refer to Chapter 5: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for USB Devices on page 65.

- **Replacement fixed diffused light with power supply.**
- **DPS060200-P5:** Replacement camera power supply for CAM-CCP-500K.
- **EHK-K42U-A Professional Continuous Lighting Kit:** Two 600-watt quartz lights, two bounce back white umbrellas, two stands, mounting brackets and carrying case.

If you're setting up a CCTV video station you need the following hardware:

- **CCD Video camera:** The camera must output video in one of the following formats:
  - RGB**:** The FlashPoint Lite 3D and FlashPoint 3D Plus do not support this format.
  - NTSC S-Video
  - NTSC Composite
  - PAL S-Video
  - PAL Composite
- **Video cable(s) and possible CCTV switcher:** The cable(s) needed depend on the model of FlashPoint board you have, the number of CCTV cameras the computer is supposed to connect to and the video format being used. The

most common cable is **# HOC-3610**, expanded cable [RGBS (DB-9)] composite, S-Video, photo coupler.

Note: Although FlashPoint boards have multiple video inputs (the number depends on the model of FlashPoint board), Alarm Monitoring stations are configured to use only one FlashPoint video input at a time. Therefore, if a monitoring station is to use multiple CCTV video cameras, the FlashPoint board must be connected to a CCTV switcher (instead of directly to the cameras), a cable must be run from the switcher to each CCTV video camera and each camera must be output video in the same format.

Step 2: Install the FlashPoint Video Capture Board

Install the FlashPoint board into the computer as directed in your Integral Technologies FlashPoint User's Manual. You will need to install the FlashPoint card into PCI slot 1. Make sure your computer boots properly when you are done.

If you installed the FlashPoint video capture board on the Dell Optiplex GX260, you must disable the onboard Intel 82845G/GL Graphics Controller. To do this:

1. Start the computer up in VGA mode.
2. Delete the following drivers:
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a302.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a303.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a304.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a305.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a306.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a307.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a308.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\a309.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\ialmkchw.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\ialmnt.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\ialmsbw.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\vch.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\wa301a.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\wa301b.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\wa310a.sys
   - C:\\WINNT\system32\drivers\wa310b.sys
3. Restart the computer.
4. In the Device Manager, disable the Intel 82845G/GL Graphics Controller.

Step 3: Install the FlashPoint VGA Display Adapter Driver

For FlashPoint 3D and 3Dx boards, refer to Chapter 2 of the FlashPoint 3D Installation Guide. Those with all other models, refer to Appendix J: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for Discontinued Hardware.

If you are using the FlashPoint 3Dx Lite PCI [**# HO-3280** with Dell OptiPlex GX400 (config. 6) or Dell Precision 340 (config. 1 and config. 3)], you may use the following procedure to install the device driver.

1. When the operating system has finished booting, you will see the "Found New Hardware Wizard." Choose [Next >] when prompted to begin the driver installation.
2. Choose the option for "Display a list of known drivers for this device" and choose [Next >] to continue.
3. Select "Display Adapter" from the hardware list and choose [Next >] to continue.
4. Select the "Have Disk" option and browse to the location of the device drivers (the driver will be found in the BETA directory of the flashpoint driver disk). Once the driver file is found, select OK to continue.
5. In the driver window, choose the driver that is labeled "S3 Inc. Savage/IX Display Driver Version xx.xxx.xx" and choose [Next >] to continue.
6. Choose [Yes] when the "Update Driver Warning" appears (the warning is telling the user that this driver has not been evaluated by Microsoft and may not work correctly with your hardware device).
7. Choose [Next >] to agree to the driver install (the driver and all related files will be loaded onto the PC).
8. Choose [Finish] to complete the driver installation.

Note: You do not need to reboot the machine at this point. The machine will be rebooted after the display settings are configured (see Step 4: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct on page 56).

Step 4: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct

To perform the following steps you **MUST** know the model of FlashPoint board you have and how much VGA frame buffer memory it has. The FlashPoint 3Dx

Lite PCI and the FlashPoint 3Dx Pro PCI both have 8 MB; older boards may have between 1 MB and 8 MB.

1. Start the Windows Control Panel. Double-click on the Display program icon. The Display Properties folder will appear. You may also select **Start > Settings > Control Panel > Display**.
2. Click on the Settings tab to switch to the Settings form.
3. **Take note of the following before proceeding**:
   - FlashPoint 3D/3Dx Lite supports video capture in all VGA models with ≥ 256 colors, *except* for the following:
     – 16.7 million color models with desktops that are > 1152 x 864 pixels
     – 65536 color models with desktops that are > 1152 x 864 pixels
     – 256 color models with desktops that are < 800 x 600 pixels or 1152 x 864 pixels
   - Savage 3D VGA display driver does not allow you to select a 16-color VGA mode.
   - The quality of live video is poor when the VGA mode is 256 colors (because the 16.7 million color video frames are displayed on the screen via ordered dithering) *so be sure to always use either 65536 color or 16.7 million color VGA modes.*
   - A desktop area of at least 800 x 600 pixels is required.
   - Captured video quality is the same for all VGA modes (16.7 million colors).
4. Change the “Screen Area” setting to 800 x 600.
5. Change the “Colors” setting to True Color (32-bit).
6. Select “Small Fonts” in the **Font Size** field. ***B.A.S.I.S. does not support large fonts.*** B.A.S.I.S. dialog text fields and controls do not line up correctly when “Large Fonts” is selected
7. Click [Close] or [OK].
8. If you made any changes to the form:
   - You may be prompted to restart your computer. If so, select [Yes] Windows will start up with the newly selected Windows color palette, desktop area and refresh frequency.
   - If you are not prompted to restart your computer, Windows will adjust the display to have the newly selected Windows color palette, desktop area and refresh frequency. (You may be asked if the new settings look okay and if you want to keep the new settings.)
9. You will now need to reboot the machine to complete the driver installation.

Step 5: Install FlashPoint Software

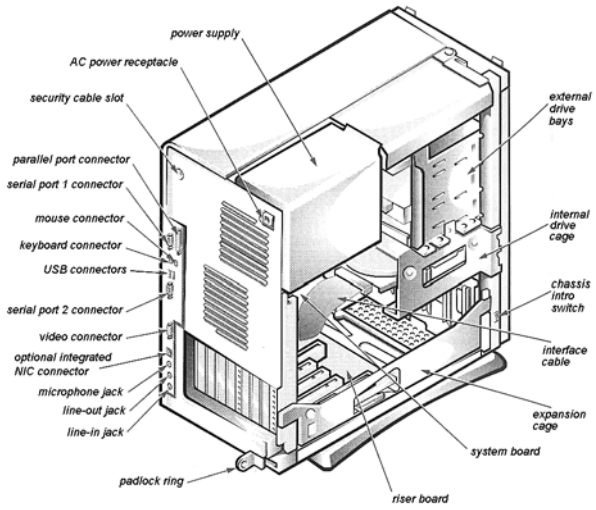
1. If you have not already done so, run **setup.exe** from the first FlashPoint setup disk. In the Select Components dialog, select ***only*** the FlashPoint FPG3D Capture Application.
2. Reboot your computer if prompted to do so.

Step 6: Connect Your Video Camera(s) to Your FlashPoint 3D Board

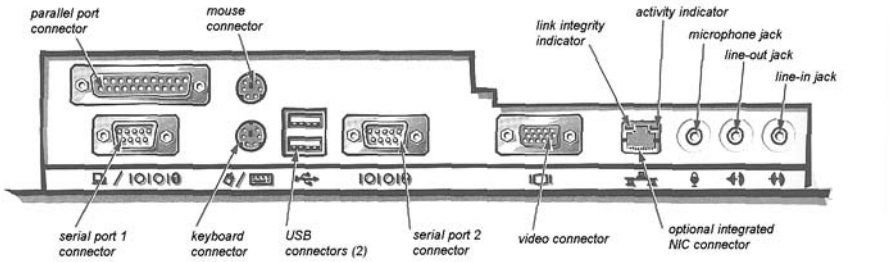
The FlashPoint board connections diagram that follows applies only to the Lite version of Flashpoint 3D. Connect your camera(s) to your FlashPoint 3D Lite board using the cable(s) identified in Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware on page 53. Refer to your FlashPoint User's Manual and camera user guide for assistance.

Notes: The board must be installed into Slot # 1 or it will not work!

Be sure to also connect your SVGA monitor to the FlashPoint 3D board, NOT to the on-board video port!



Dell GX1 Chassis



I/O Ports and Connectors

Step 7: Verify That Your Video Board and Drivers Are Working Properly

This can be done easily and quickly using the FPG3D32 application which ships with your FlashPoint board. Note that if FPG3D32 is unable to display video, neither will B.A.S.I.S.; i.e., the FPG3D32 application can be used for testing your video hardware and driver setup like the Windows test print feature can be used to test your printer hardware and driver setup.

1. Terminate any currently running B.A.S.I.S. application.

Warning

The FlashPoint capture driver allows more than one of the following FlashPoint video windows to be open, with unpredictable side effects. This means you can use only one of the following at a time:

- FPG3D32 application.
- Video Verification feature.
- Multimedia Capture module with the Video Capture Source selected.

2. Power your camera on. It should always be powered with a power pack.
3. Launch the FPG3D32 application by clicking the Windows Start button, then selecting **Programs** > **FlashPoint 3D** > **FPG3D32**.
4. Make sure you see a live video image which fills the FPG3D32 window and that the image is in full color if using a color camera or in gray scale if you are using a black and white camera. Do the following if this is not the case:
   - Select “Setup” and then “Video...” from the main menu. The Video Setup window will appear off to the side.
   - Select the video input standard and type as per your camera and video cabling. Note that the FPG3D32 application provides no way to specify the video source (input connector #) because the application assumes you are using the first video input which supports the specified input format. (Consult the cable wiring diagrams located in Appendix B of your FlashPoint 3D User’s Manual.)
   - Consult the CCP601 manual override settings portion of the Default Camera Settings section in this chapter. For more information, refer to CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default) on page 63.
   - If you see just black or discolored video make sure the color adjustments have reasonable settings. If you are unsure which adjustments to use press the Video Setup window’s [Reset] button and then re-select the video input standard and format again.
   - If you still see just black or discolored video consult the Default Camera Settings section at the end of this chapter. Your camera’s white point balance and/or iris level may not be set correctly. For more information, refer to CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default) on page 63.

Step 8: Video Software Settings

Video Software Settings for a CCTV Station

- **Video Source, Input Standard and Input Format.** Video Verification uses the video source, input standard and input format configured on the Workstations form of ID CredentialCenter's/System Administration's Workstations folder. Consult the ID CredentialCenter/System Administration User Guide on how to make those adjustments in the Workstations folder.

- **Video Colors and Video Sync Mode.** Video Verification displays live video using the color adjustments and sync mode configured in the FPG3D32 application which shipped with your FlashPoint board. Consult your FlashPoint User's Manual on how to make those adjustments. (The sync mode option is configured in the FPG3D32 application's Advanced Configuration window. When enabled it causes unstable video coming from a VCR to stop jumping up and down and settle down into a stable picture, though there will be a narrow strip of static across the bottom.)

Video Software Settings for a Capture Station

The Multimedia Capture window has its own set of Video Source, Input Standard, Input Format, Color and Sync Mode settings completely separate from the FPG3D32 application. To adjust the Multimedia Capture settings, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station. More information is available in the BadgeDesigner User Guide, the ID CredentialCenter User Guide and the System Administration User Guide.

- **Default Camera Settings.** The following settings are for a normal office environment. They may need to be changed based on several variables in the capture environment (distance, lighting, backgrounds, wall color, etc.).

  Consult your camera user guide for information about manual overrides to the CCP601 camera. For most applications, the camera comes preset from the factory. If you want to change the factory settings, you can purchase the CON-500 CCP Camera Controller Programming Unit from BEST.

  It is recommended that you use the EHK-K42U-A (Professional Continuous Lighting Kit) if you want the best quality capture lighting. For more information, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station on page 79.

- **Multimedia Capture Settings.** In the Multimedia Capture module of the ID CredentialCenter, System Administration and BadgeDesigner applications, the following settings are made at the factory. If you have not pressed the save user defaults button, the following settings default to values suitable for the CCP601 camera.

FlashPoint/MCI Video Settings Form

Section/Field	Value
Video Board	FlashPoint
Input Format	S Video
Input Standard	NTSC
Video Source	1
Alternate Sync Mode	unchecked
High Resolution Capture	checked
Flash Type	None
Flash Field Delay	N/A
The video board name to use for the FlashPoint 3D/3Dx is just “FlashPoint.” (The capture dialog auto-detects which type of FlashPoint board you have installed.)	

FlashPoint/MCI Video I/O Settings Form

Field	Value
Flash Brightness	539
Flash Contrast	555
Live Brightness	539
Live Contrast	555
Hue	0
Red	N/A
Green	N/A
Blue	N/A
Saturation	507
Sharpness	0
Gain	N/A
Gamma	N/A
Offset	N/A
Video Output Settings	N/A to FlashPoint boards

If your situation requires that you configure these settings yourself, you must click [Save User Defaults] to save the settings. Note that BadgeDesigner has its own set of Multimedia Capture module settings apart from the set shared by ID CredentialCenter and System Administration.

- **Chromakey form.** Preset to 30% tolerance
- **Effects Gallery form.** *New* installations default to having the following six image processing profiles:

Effects Gallery Form

Profile name	Adjustment
Increase Hue	+7%
Decrease Hue	-7%
Increase Saturation	+7%
Decrease Saturation	-7%
Increase Contrast	+7%
Decrease Contrast	-7%

General Settings Form

Field	Value
Show Settings by default	checked
Default Capture Source	Video Capture
Default Processing Profile	none
Compression Amount	10%
Enabled	checked
Sizable	checked
Maintain Aspect	checked
Units	Inches
Left	0.467”
Top	0.0
Width	1.2”*
Height	1.6”*
Note: * To take advantage of the B.A.S.I.S. software’s new high resolution capture capability, the crop window should be sized to be at least 1” wide and 1.5” tall.	

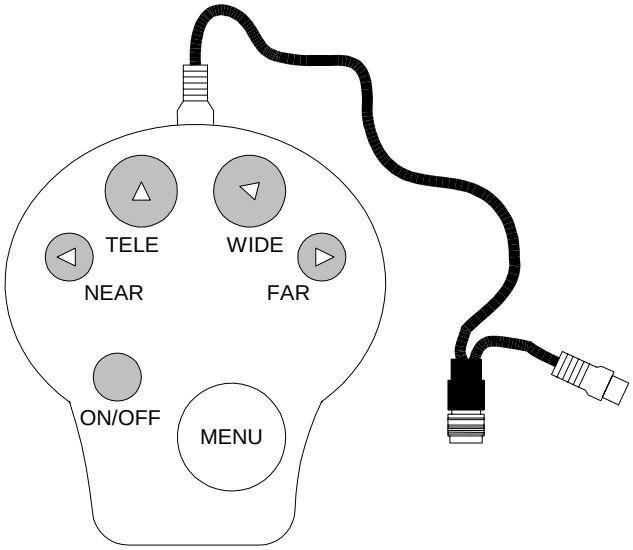
- For instructions on how to automatically load these defaults without having to type them in, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station.

CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default)

Menu 1:	
• Initial Set	Off
• Back Light	On
• Color	On
• Negative	Off
• Focus	Auto/Mnl
• Flickerless	Off
• WBC Mode	Auto
Menu 2:	
• Camera ID	Off
• Sharpness	11
• Brightness	48
• AE Mode	Manual
• Shutter	Normal
• Iris	199
• AGC	60

If you want to change the factory settings, you can purchase the CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit from BEST.

CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit



Chapter 5: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for USB Devices

Live video capture can be supported via the USB port instead of a video card. The Belkin USB VideoBus™ II (VideoBus) will accept any NTSC composite video input and convert it into PC-compatible digital video and image formats. It connects directly to the USB port. There is no need to open the computer to install or configure cards. No power supply is needed - VideoBus is powered by the USB connection.

Configuring Video Hardware & Software

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware

This step lists the hardware required to set up a capture station or set up a CCTV video station. Refer to the appropriate list.

If you're setting up a capture station you need the following hardware:

- **CAM-CCP-500KUSB Windows 2000 Image Capture Kit:** CCP601 Digital Zoom (a 1/4-inch color CCD camera with auto focus/iris 32X zoom lens, 450 lines, S-Video camera with built-in 16X AF lens, fixed diffused light with tilt head, 110 VAC camera and light power supplies, 12-foot S-Video cable, tripod with pan tilt mounts, USB adapter kit).

Note: The **CAM-500KUSB-EU Image Capture Kit** contains everything listed above, except that it contains European cables and the tripod has European threads.

- **Replacement fixed diffused light with power supply.**
- **DPS060200-P5:** Replacement camera power supply for CAM-CCP-500KUSB.
- **EHK-K42U-A Professional Continuous Lighting Kit:** Two 600-watt quartz lights, two bounce back white umbrellas, two stands, mounting brackets and carrying case.

If you're setting up a CCTV video station you need the following hardware:

- **CCD Video camera:** The camera must output video in one of the following formats:
  - RGB
  - NTSC S-Video
  - NTSC Composite
  - PAL S-Video
  - PAL Composite

- **Video cable(s) and possible CCTV switcher:** The cable(s) needed depend on the number of CCTV cameras the computer is supposed to connect to and the video format being used. The most common cable is **# HOC-3610**, expanded cable [RGBS (DB-9)] composite, S-Video, photo coupler.

Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows XP)

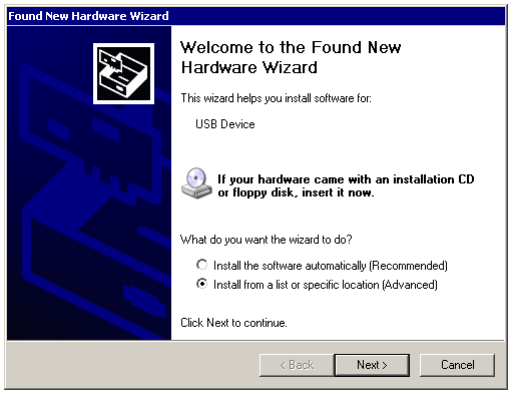
Notes: This procedure is for installing on Windows XP only. For Windows 2000 installation procedures, please refer to Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows 2000) on page 70.

Do NOT use the USB VideoBus II Installation CD. Instead, use the drivers on Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation Disk Set. The Windows XP drivers are located in the **Belkin F5U208 USB Drivers\Windows XP** directory.

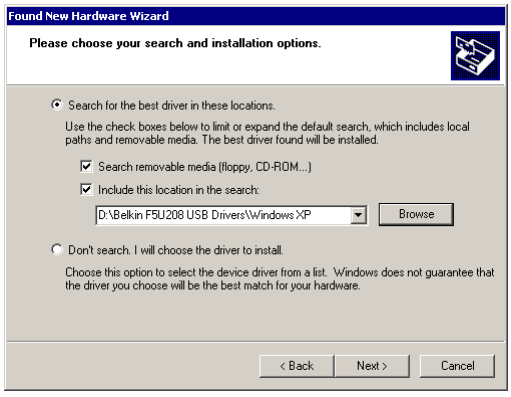
If you ever need to uninstall the Belkin VideoBus II, please refer Belkin's instructions. The instruction file is named **F5U208WinXPInstallation.htm**,

and it is also located in the **Belkin F5U208 USB Drivers\Windows XP** directory on Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation Disk Set.

1. CLOSE ALL WINDOWS PROGRAMS before installing the VideoBus software. The installation will not work correctly if any other Windows programs are open during the installation.
2. Connect the camera and CCTV switcher (if necessary) to the Belkin USB VideoBus II.
3. Connect the Belkin USB VideoBus II to a free USB port on your computer, and then connect the camera to a power source.
4. The hardware wizard will recognize the device, and the Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard window opens.


Found New Hardware Wizard
Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard
This wizard helps you install software for:
USB Device
If your hardware came with an installation CD or floppy disk, insert it now.
What do you want the wizard to do?
Install the software automatically (Recommended)
Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)
Click Next to continue.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

   a. Select the **Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].
5. The **Please choose your search and installation options** window is displayed.


Found New Hardware Wizard
Please choose your search and installation options.
Search for the best driver in these locations.
Use the check boxes below to limit or expand the default search, which includes local paths and removable media. The best driver found will be installed.
Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM...)
Include this location in the search:
D:\Belkin F5U208 USB Drivers\Windows XP
Browse
Don't search. I will choose the driver to install.
Choose this option to select the device driver from a list. Windows does not guarantee that the driver you choose will be the best match for your hardware.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

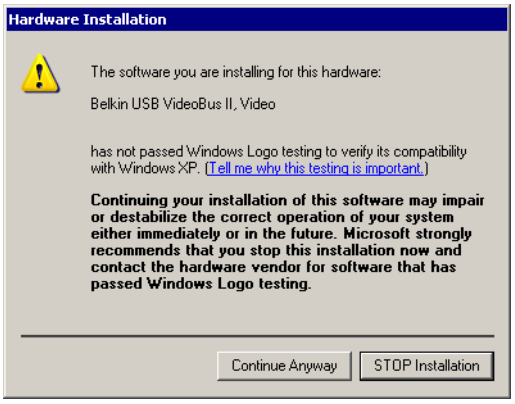
   a. Verify that the **Search for the best driver in these locations** radio button is selected.
   b. Insert Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation Disk Set into the CD-ROM. (Depending on how your system is configured, the setup application for

Disc 2 may run and open the Third Party Components Wizard. If this happens, close the wizard.)

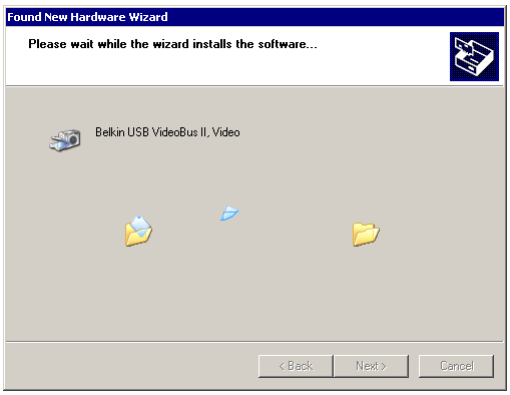
c. Click [Browse], navigate to the **D:\Belkin F5U208 USB Drivers\Windows XP** directory, where **D:** is your CD-ROM drive, and then click [OK].

d. Click [Next].

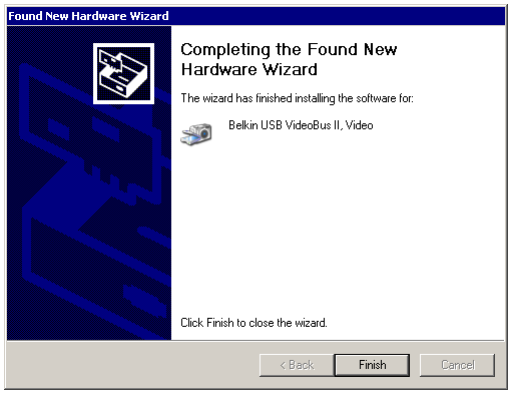
6. A warning stating that the Belkin USB VideoBus II, Video has not passed Windows Logo testing. Click [Continue Anyway].


Hardware Installation
The software you are installing for this hardware:
Belkin USB VideoBus II, Video
has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP. (Tell me why this testing is important.)
Continuing your installation of this software may impair or destabilize the correct operation of your system either immediately or in the future. Microsoft strongly recommends that you stop this installation now and contact the hardware vendor for software that has passed Windows Logo testing.
Continue Anyway
STOP Installation

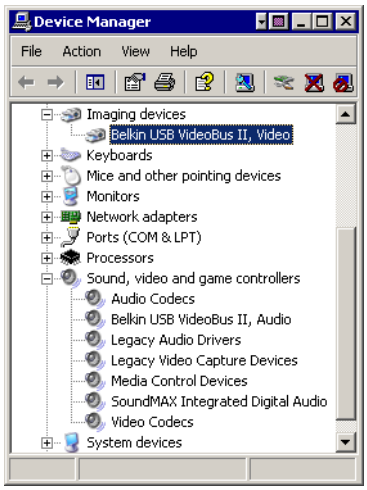
7. The Please wait while the wizard installs the software window is displayed.



8. The Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard window is displayed. Click [Finish].


Found New Hardware Wizard
Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard
The wizard has finished installing the software for:
Belkin USB VideoBus II, Video
Click Finish to close the wizard.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

9. The installation process will automatically restart because there are two components (audio and video) that must be installed. Repeat steps 4-8, and then proceed to step 10.
10. Installation of the Belkin VideoBus II is now complete.
11. To insure that your installation was successful and complete:
    a. Click the Windows Start button, then right-click on **My Computer** and select **Properties** from the right-click menu.
    b. Click the Hardware tab.
    c. Click [Device Manager].
    d. If you expand “Imaging devices”, “Belkin USB VideoBus II, Video” should now be listed. If you expand “Sound, video and game controllers”, “Belkin USB VideoBus II, Audio” should be listed.



Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows 2000)

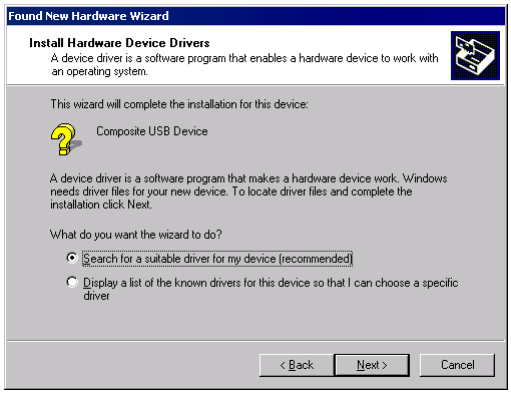
Notes: This procedure is installing on Windows 2000 only. For Windows XP installation procedures, please refer to Step 2: Install the F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows XP) on page 66.

Do NOT use the USB VideoBus II Installation CD. Instead, use the drivers on Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation Disk Set. The Windows 2000 drivers are located in the **D:\Belkin F5U208 USB Drivers\Windows 2000** directory, where **D:** is your CD-ROM drive.

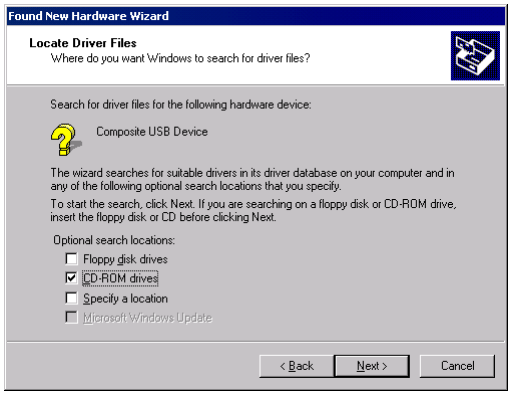
1. CLOSE ALL WINDOWS PROGRAMS before installing the VideoBus software. The installation will not work correctly if any other Windows programs are open during the installation.
2. Connect the camera and CCTV switcher (if necessary) to the Belkin USB VideoBus II.
3. Connect the Belkin USB VideoBus II to a free USB port on your computer, and then connect the camera to a power source.
4. The hardware wizard will recognize the device, and the Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard window opens. Click [Next].

Found New Hardware Wizard
Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard
This wizard helps you install a device driver for a hardware device.
To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

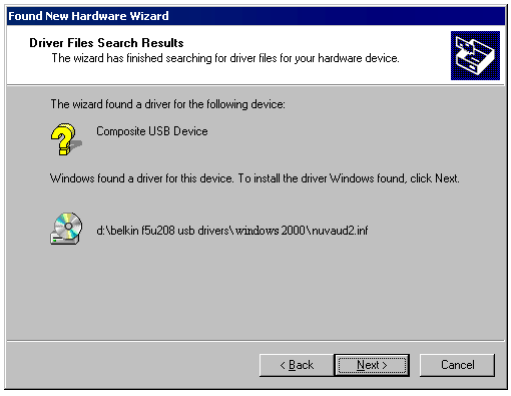
5. Verify the **Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)** radio button is selected and click [Next].


Found New Hardware Wizard
Install Hardware Device Drivers
A device driver is a software program that enables a hardware device to work with an operating system.
This wizard will complete the installation for this device:
Composite USB Device
A device driver is a software program that makes a hardware device work. Windows needs driver files for your new device. To locate driver files and complete the installation click Next.
What do you want the wizard to do?
Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)
Display a list of the known drivers for this device so that I can choose a specific driver
< Back
Next >
Cancel

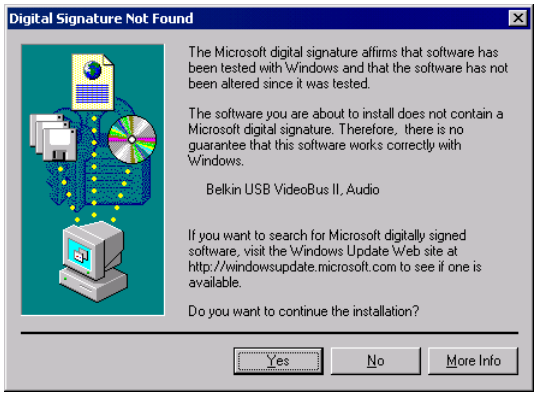
6. Insert Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation Disk Set into the CD-ROM. (Depending on how your system is configured, the setup application for Disc 2 may run and open the Third Party Components Wizard. If this happens, close the wizard.) Select the **CD-ROM drive** checkbox and click [Next].


Found New Hardware Wizard
Locate Driver Files
Where do you want Windows to search for driver files?
Search for driver files for the following hardware device:
Composite USB Device
The wizard searches for suitable drivers in its driver database on your computer and in any of the following optional search locations that you specify.
To start the search, click Next. If you are searching on a floppy disk or CD-ROM drive, insert the floppy disk or CD before clicking Next.
Optional search locations:
Floppy disk drives
CD-ROM drives
Specify a location
Microsoft Windows Update
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. The Driver Files Search Results window will display. Click [Next].


Found New Hardware Wizard
Driver Files Search Results
The wizard has finished searching for driver files for your hardware device.
The wizard found a driver for the following device:
Composite USB Device
Windows found a driver for this device. To install the driver Windows found, click Next.
d:\belkin f5u208 usb drivers\windows 2000\nuvaud2.inf
< Back
Next >
Cancel

8. After clicking [Next], the computer will display a dialog box stating that there is no digital signature found. Click [Yes] to continue with the installation.


Digital Signature Not Found
The Microsoft digital signature affirms that software has been tested with Windows and that the software has not been altered since it was tested.
The software you are about to install does not contain a Microsoft digital signature. Therefore, there is no guarantee that this software works correctly with Windows.
Belkin USB VideoBus II, Audio
If you want to search for Microsoft digitally signed software, visit the Windows Update Web site at http://windowsupdate.microsoft.com to see if one is available.
Do you want to continue the installation?
Yes
No
More Info

9. Windows will finish installing software for the device. Click [Finish].

Found New Hardware Wizard
Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard
Belkin USB VideoBus II, Audio
Windows has finished installing the software for this device.
To close this wizard, click Finish.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

10. The installation process will automatically restart because there are two components (audio and video) that must be installed. Repeat step 4 through 9.

Step 3: Video Software Settings

Video Software Settings for a CCTV Station

- **Video Source, Input Standard and Input Format.** Video Verification uses the video source, input standard and input format configured in the Workstations form of ID CredentialCenter's/System Administration's Workstations folder. Consult the ID CredentialCenter/System Administration User Guide on how to make those adjustments in the Workstations folder.

- **Video Colors and Video Sync Mode.** Video Verification displays live video using the color adjustments and sync mode configured in the FPG3D32 application which shipped with your FlashPoint board. Consult your FlashPoint User's Manual on how to make those adjustments. (The sync mode option is configured in the FPG3D32 application's Advanced Configuration window. When enabled it causes unstable video coming from a VCR to stop jumping up and down and settle down into a stable picture, though there will be a narrow strip of static across the bottom.)

Video Software Settings for a Capture Station

The Multimedia Capture window has its own set of Video Source, Input Standard, Input Format, Color and Sync Mode settings completely separate from the FPG3D32 application. To adjust the Multimedia Capture settings, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station. More information is available in the BadgeDesigner User Guide, the ID CredentialCenter User Guide and the System Administration User Guide.

- **Default Camera Settings.** The following settings are for a normal office environment. They may need to be changed based on several variables in the capture environment (distance, lighting, backgrounds, wall color, etc.).

  Consult your camera user guide for information about manual overrides to the CCP601camera. For most applications, the camera comes preset from the factory. If you want to change the factory settings, you can purchase the CON-500 CCP Camera Controller Programming Unit from BEST.

  It is recommended that you use the EHK-K42U-A (Professional Continuous Lighting Kit) if you want the best quality capture lighting. For more information, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station on page 79.

- **Multimedia Capture Settings.** In the Multimedia Capture module of the ID CredentialCenter, System Administration and BadgeDesigner applications, the following settings are made at the factory. If you have not pressed the save user defaults button, the following settings default to values suitable for the CCP601camera.

FlashPoint/MCI Video Settings Form

Section/Field	Value
Video Board	FlashPoint
Input Format	S Video
Input Standard	NTSC
Video Source	1
Alternate Sync Mode	unchecked
High Resolution Capture	checked
Flash Type	None
Flash Field Delay	N/A
The video board name to use for the FlashPoint 3D/3Dx is just “FlashPoint.” (The capture dialog auto-detects which type of FlashPoint board you have installed.)	

FlashPoint/MCI Video I/O Settings Form

Field	Value
Flash Brightness	539
Flash Contrast	555
Live Brightness	539
Live Contrast	555
Hue	0
Red	N/A
Green	N/A
Blue	N/A
Saturation	507
Sharpness	0
Gain	N/A
Gamma	N/A
Offset	N/A
Video Output Settings	N/A to FlashPoint boards

If your situation requires that you configure these settings yourself, you must click on the [Save Defaults] push button to save the settings. Note that BadgeDesigner has its own set of Multimedia Capture module settings apart from the set shared by ID CredentialCenter and System Administration.

- **Chromakey form.** Preset to 30% tolerance
- **Effects Gallery form.** *New* installations default to having the following six image processing profiles:

Effects Gallery Form

Profile name	Adjustment
Increase Hue	+7%
Decrease Hue	-7%
Increase Saturation	+7%
Decrease Saturation	-7%
Increase Contrast	+7%
Decrease Contrast	-7%

General Settings Form

Field	Value
Show Settings by Default	checked
Default Capture Source	Video Capture
Default Processing Profile	none
Compression Amount	10%
Crop Window	
Enabled	checked
Sizable	checked
Maintain Aspect	checked
Units	Inches
Left	0.467”
Top	0.0
Width	1.2”*
Height	1.6”*
Note: * To take advantage of the B.A.S.I.S. software’s new high resolution capture capability, the crop window should be sized to be at least 1” wide and 1.5” tall.	

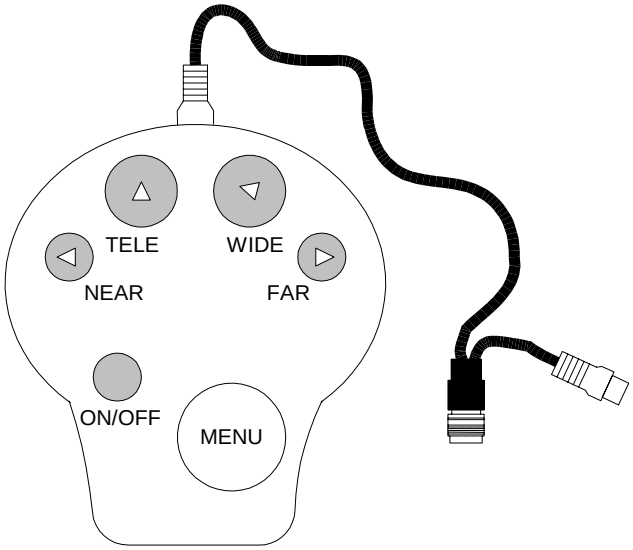
- For instructions on how to automatically load these defaults without having to type them in, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station.

CCP601 Manual Override Settings (Factory Default)

Menu 1:	
• Initial Set	Off
• Back Light	On
• Color	On
• Negative	Off
• Focus	Auto/Mnl
• Flickerless	Off
• WBC Mode	Indoor
Menu 2:	
• Camera ID	Off
• Sharpness	11
• Brightness	48
• AE Mode	Manual
• Shutter	Normal
• Iris	199
• AGC	60

If you want to change the factory settings, you can purchase the CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit from BEST.

CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit



Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station

Environmental Considerations Affecting Flash & Camera Capture Quality

There are several factors to consider when selecting your capture station environment. Lighting is the most important factor and the most difficult to provide setup instructions for, because every site's capture environment is unique. B.A.S.I.S. ships with the optimal hardware setting defaults already set. The important items to consider when setting up the capture environment are the flash and camera settings based on environmental considerations.

Setting Up the B.A.S.I.S. Capture Dialog

You will initially need to set up the B.A.S.I.S. capture dialog with factory default settings that are appropriate for your capture hardware. Once that is done, you can make minor adjustments to accommodate your specific capture devices and capture environments.

1. Launch the application you'll be using to capture photos/signatures/badge layout graphics.
2. Launch the capture dialog from within that application by selecting the [Capture] button on a form that accesses the Multimedia Capture module.
3. Repeat the following procedure for each outer capture form:
    a. If configuring cardholder photo capture, select the Photo tab. If configuring cardholder signature capture, select the Signature tab. If you are using the BadgeDesigner application, you only have the Graphic tab.
    b. Configuring the capture dialog with settings that are appropriate for your capture hardware is easily done via the factory defaults profile procedure. Use the following procedure to configure capture from sources other than the File Import capture source:
        1) Click [Load Factory Defaults]. The "Load Factory Defaults" dialog will open.
        2) Select the factory defaults profile that most closely matched your capture device. The default capture source (configured on the General Settings form) will be automatically set to the capture source associated with that device. The crop window (configured on the General Settings form) will be automatically set to a size appropriate for the profile you select.

3) Click [OK].

c. If you want to capture images with the “File Import” capture source:

1) From the capture source drop-down list, select **File Import**.

2) Click on the File I/O Settings tab.

3) Set the file import directory to the directory where you store all of your photo files.

4) Click [Save User Defaults].

d. If you want to capture images with the “Video Capture” capture source but you have the following discontinued hardware, refer to Appendix J: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for Discontinued Hardware:

– **CAM-77U CCD Image Capture Kit**: Hitachi VKC-77U Camera, auto iris lens, power supply, S-Video cable, Integral FlashPoint Lite 128 image capture card, Tripod with pan tilt mounts. (Replaced by CAM-CCP-500K.)

– **EHK-283 Enhanced Lighting Kit:** Vivitar automatic flash unit, VP-1 flash manual override (adjustment sensor), flash sync cable (#HOC-3653), flash softbox, flash mount, flash/camera bracket, flash power supply.

(Replaced by existing EHK-K42U-A Professional Continuous Lighting Kit.)

e. If you want to capture images with USB camera, configure the multimedia capture module for the following settings instead of loading the default settings:

1) From the capture source drop-down list, select **WDM Video**.

2) Click the WDM Video Settings Device tab.

3) Select **USB Video Bus II, Video** from the Device drop-down box.

4) Click [Video Input].

5) The Video Input Properties window displays.

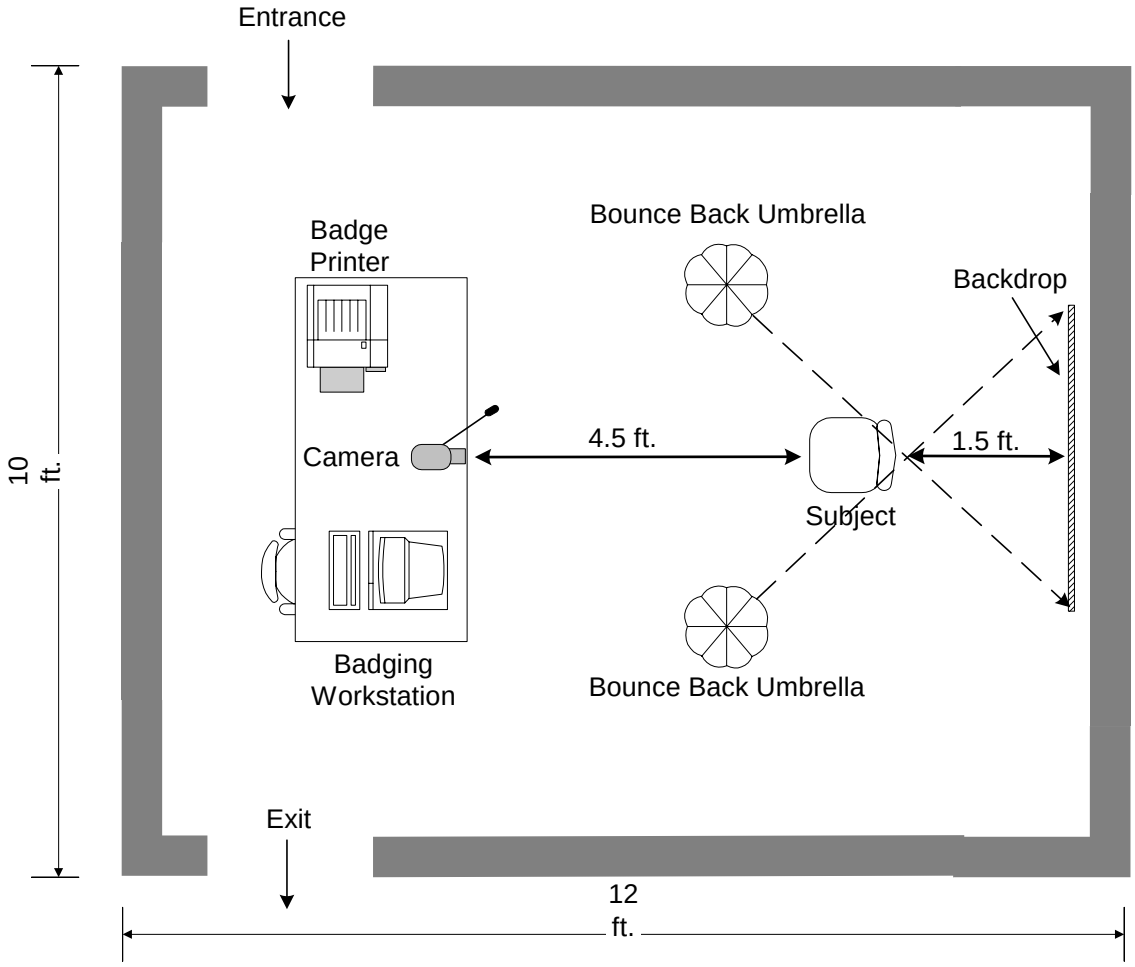
6) Select **1:VideoSVideo In** from the Input drop-down menu.

Capture Station Setup Specifications

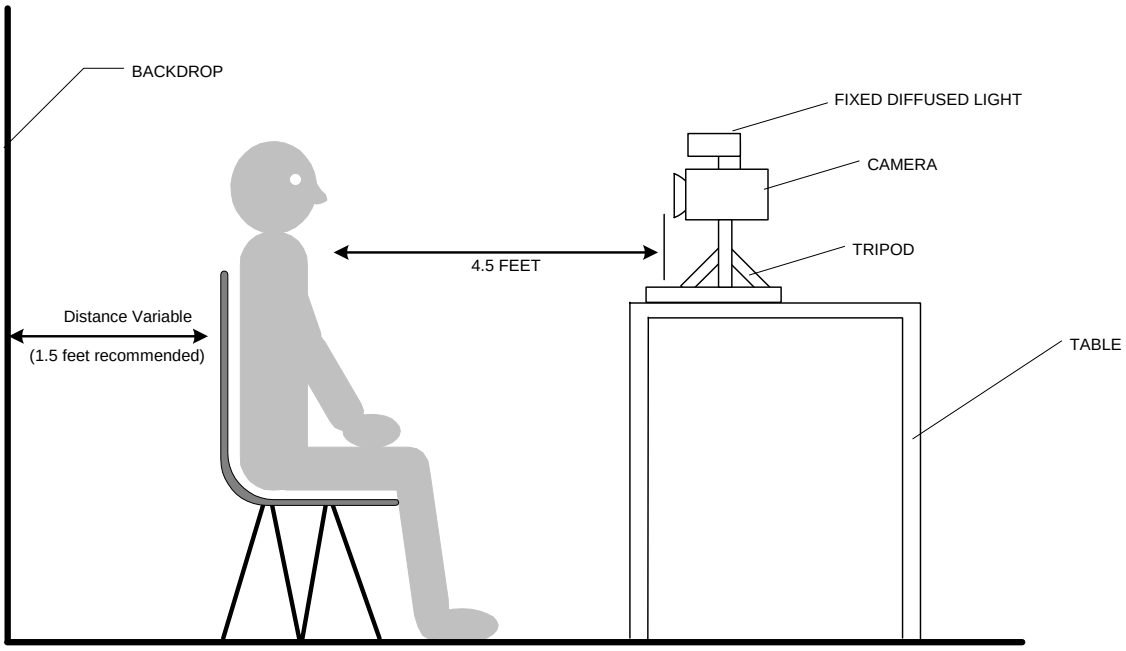
For every capture station the equipment should be setup as close as possible to the following specifications:

The backdrop should be approximately 1.5 feet behind the subject. The camera and flash apparatus should be at least 4.5 feet in front of the subject at an average height (the height should be adjustable for obvious reasons). The capture area requires approximately 10 to 12 feet of floor space with appropriate width.

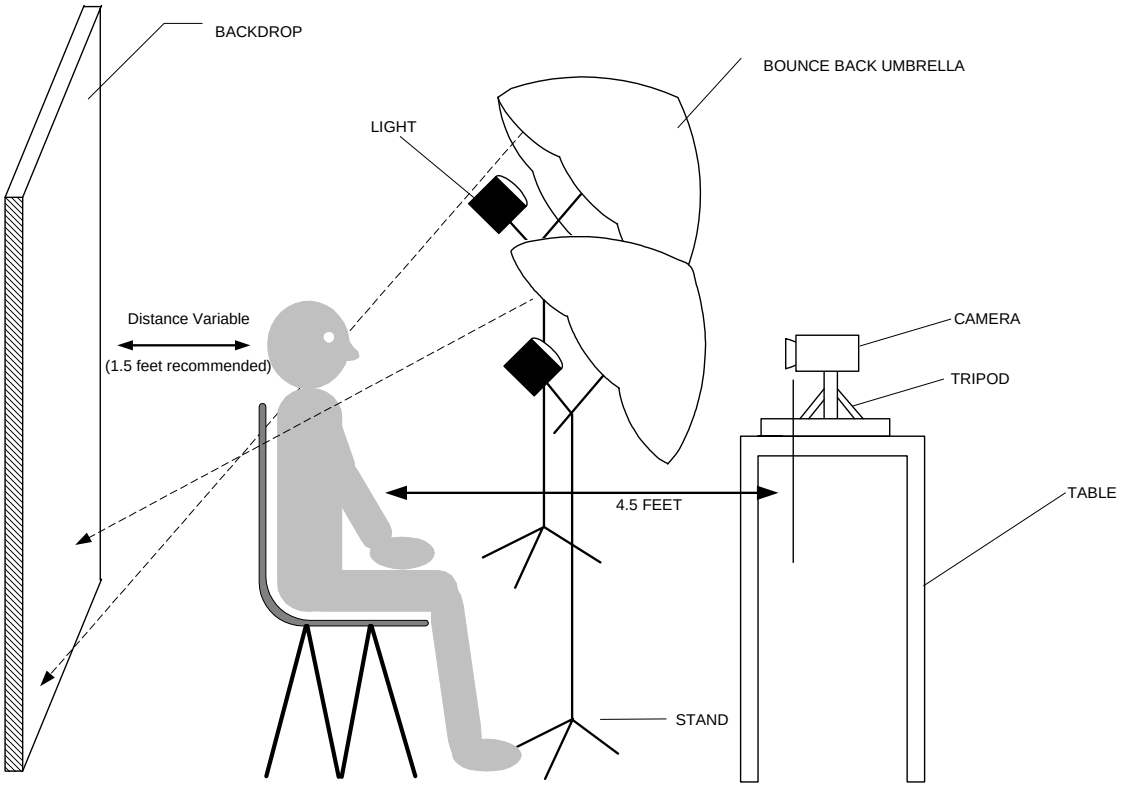
Recommended Badging Room Layout



Final Adjustments for Fixed Diffused Lighting



Final Adjustments for Continuous Lighting



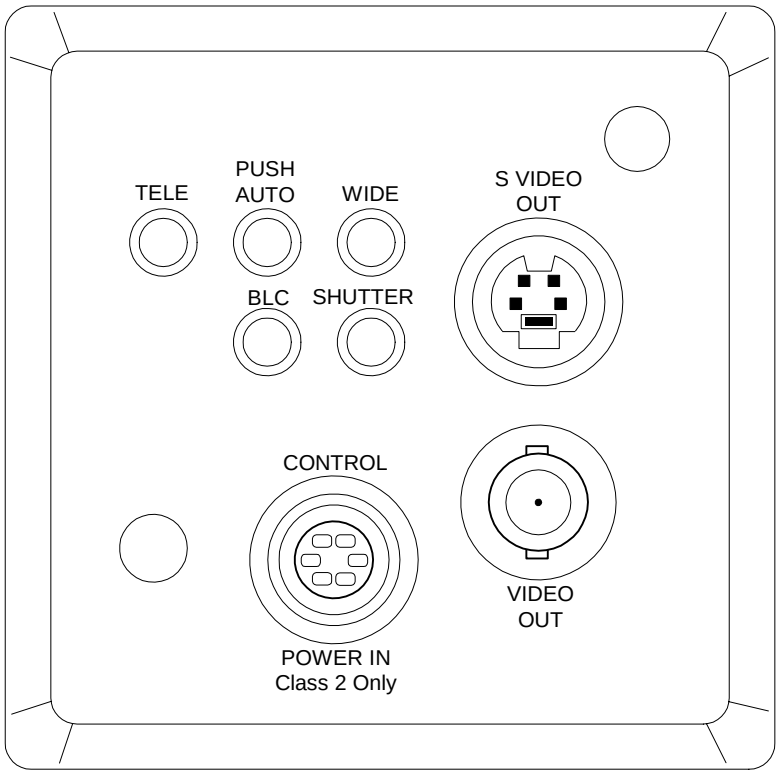
Basic Camera Setup (CAM-CCP-500K)

Setup the DSP32X manual override settings. If you want to change the factory settings, you can purchase the CON-500 CCP Camera Controller Programming Unit from BEST (see CON-500 Camera Controller Programming Unit on page 64 for a diagram of the CON-500).

Menu 1:		**Menu 2:**	
Initial Set	Off	Camera ID	Off
Back Light	Off	Sharpness	11
Color	On	Brightness	48
Negative	Off	AE Mode	Manual
Focus	Auto/Man	Shutter	Normal
Flickerless	Off	Irish Adjust	199
WBC Mode	Indoor	AGC Adjust	60

CCP-500 (Back View)

1. **Tele Button –** (Telephoto) Press this button to zoom in.



2. **Push Auto Button** – (Auto Focus) Press and hold this button to activate the auto focus function.
3. **Wide Button** – (Wide Angle) Press this button to zoom out.
4. **BLC –** (Back Light Compensation) If you press this button while viewing a backlight subject, the camera will adjust itself to the high contrast lighting.
   - BLC mode is switched between ON and OFF by pressing this button.
   - If you hold the button down for more than 2 seconds and then release, the BLC will change to AUTO BLC mode.
5. **Shutter Speed Button –** Use to select the shutter speed.
6. **Power In** and **Control** – Insert the DC power cable here to connect the camera to the DC power source (DC 12V). You can control the Zoom and Focus Lens to use Controller.
7. **Video Out terminal** - Connect this terminal to the video input terminal or an external input, such as a monitor, TV or VCR.
8. **S-Video Out terminal** – This is an output terminal for separate Y/C video signals.

The CAM-CCP-500K camera zooms to X32, but the recommended zoom area should be less than X16. This is because the zoom past X16 is digital and the

picture captured becomes rough (pixilated). The subject should be within X1 to X12 zoom for optimal results. The subject should nominally fill the pre-sized crop window if adjusted properly. Always leave on “Maintain Aspect Ratio”

To adjust the zoom, set the selector switch to zoom (all the way to the right). Adjust the camera apparatus for the center of the subject. With the arrows located to the bottom left of the rear of the camera, zoom in all the way and then zoom back to determine the approximate center point of the zoom (remember: you do not want to zoom past X12, the halfway point). Then, zoom into the subject until the desired capture frame is attained. The arrows located at the bottom of the camera can be use in one of two manors. If you push and hold the arrow, it will zoom all the way in or out. If you push the arrow button momentarily, it will move in and out incrementally.

Note: Optimally the subject should fill the pre-sized crop window, so no additional cropping adjustments need be made.

Why manual white balance? With light or gray colors the Auto White Balance adjusts incorrectly. That is why the CAM-CCP-500K should be setup for Manual White Balance. It is necessary to White balance the camera to obtain a default white balance setting and is maintained for consistent picture quality.

Lighting Setup

Basic Continuous Lighting Setup (EHK-K42U-A)

The EHK-K42U-A kit is designed to help eliminate shadows that may appear behind the subject that you are capturing, or under the subject’s chin (known as bearding). Most capture environments have adequate light to capture a subject with the CAM-CCP-500K capture kit, but to enhance the colors (more real life), and to eliminate shadows, the capture kit is necessary.

Advanced Setup

After the capture station has been setup, some testing must be performed to determine the optimal illumination settings for image capture. You may have to adjust the lights, drapes, or other elements in the capture environment.

With a test subject, view the live image on the screen with all the room lights on. Set the selector switch on the back of the camera to iris (all the way to the left). With the arrows on back of the camera adjust the iris all the way down, the live image on the screen should become dark if not black. The arrows located at the bottom of the camera can be use in one of two manners. If you push and hold the arrow, it will zoom all the way in or out. If you push the arrow button momentarily, it will move in and out incrementally. While viewing the screen, increase the iris until the subject is visible. Increase the iris a little more, until the screen image is about the same brightness as the real view of the subject. Take a

test picture. Label this “test 1, all lights”. From here we will adjust the room environments lighting and make minor adjustments to the iris if needed while continuing to save the sample captures at (test 2, test 3 etc.).

Steps to improving capture quality:

1. Turn on all the lights in the room.
2. Open the Capture dialog and center on a test subject with the camera.
3. Adjust the iris all the way down, and then adjust it until the screen image is about the same brightness as the real viewable image.
4. Set the White Balance. (Set the selector switch on the back of the camera to WB. Hold a white piece of paper in front of the camera so there is only white showing on the screen. Using the arrows on the back of the camera adjust the white balance until the image in the capture window is white.)
5. Take a test picture. Save this as a cardholder labeled “Test1: all lights”.
6. Turn off all the lights.
7. Take another picture. Save this as a cardholder labeled “Test2: no lights”.
8. Continue testing until a desired lighting quality is captured on the screen. Be sure to label each test with a number and a description of what you did.

Adjust your environments based on the environmental considerations below. Continue to take pictures, save them, and use them as references until the best conditions are determined.

Environmental Considerations and Factors Leading to Poor Lighting

Environmental factors to consider when setting up a capture station include:

- Is there a different amount of sunlight entering the area through out the day?
- Is the station next to a window or under a skylight?
- Are the wall colors dark or light or bright colors? If they are light they will reflect more light or change your white balance setup.
- Is the ceiling low or cathedral like? The lower the ceiling the more light will reflect.
- What types of lights are used in the room? Incandescent or florescent (cool white or colored) or direct spots?
- Is there any direct lighting of the subject? Is the room evenly illuminated? Direct lighting will over expose the subject.
- What is the color of reflective shields around the lights? For example, gold reflective surface shields illuminate the subject in yellow highlights.

This is just a partial list of possible factors leading to poor image lighting quality. There may be other features of your site that will affect the image capture that may need to be considered.

Chapter 7: Configuring Computers for TCP/IP

At a Windows 2000 or Windows XP installation, each B.A.S.I.S. computer must be configured for the TCP/IP network protocol prior to installation of the B.A.S.I.S. software. Even on a computer that is not connected to a network, a network board must be installed and the TCP/IP protocol must be configured. Each computer must be given a fixed TCP/IP address. B.A.S.I.S. requires the TCP/IP protocol on all its workstations.

Configuring TCP/IP in Windows 2000

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings** > **Control Panel**.
2. Select **Network and Dialup Connections**.
3. Select **Local Area Connection**.
4. The Local Area Connection Status window opens. Click [Properties].
5. If an “Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)” entry is **not** listed, perform the following steps to add it:
    a. Click [Install...].
    b. In the Select Network Component Type window, choose “Protocol.” Click [Add…].
    c. In the Select Network Protocol window, choose “Internet Protocol (TCP/IP).”
    d. Click [Have Disk...] and type the location (drive and directory) of the protocol file. You may also be prompted to insert the Windows 2000 installation CD-ROM. Click [OK].
6. If a “Computer Browser” entry is **not** listed, perform the following steps to add it:
    a. Click [Install...].
    b. In the Select Network Component Type window, choose “Service.” Click [Add…].
    c. In the Select Network Service window, choose “Computer Browser.”
    d. Click [Have Disk...] and type the drive and directory of the location of the browser file. You may also be prompted to insert the Windows 2000 installation CD-ROM. Click [OK].
7. In the Control Panel, open **System**. Click the Network Identification tab.
8. The form indicates the full computer name as it appears across the network, the domain, and the name of the workgroup of which this computer is a member. Click [Properties] if you wish to change any of these values.

Chapter 8: Installing and Configuring WirelessOffice Messaging Software Version 5.0

WirelessOffice Messaging Software Overview

WirelessOffice Messaging Software was formerly named Motorola Air Apparent. Using WirelessOffice, an e-mail and/or page can be sent for an alarm from the B.A.S.I.S. software. Manual or automatic e-mail/paging can be used.

Manual E-mail/Paging

Manual e-mail/paging consists of right-clicking on an alarm in Alarm Monitoring and sending a message via the “Send E-Mail” or “Send Page” menu option. The process that occurs for the message to be sent is as follows:

1. An alarm is displayed on the Alarm Monitoring screen.
2. The alarm is right-clicked on, and the “Send E-Mail” or “Send Page” menu option is selected.
3. One or more recipients must be selected.
4. That message is sent to the LS Global Output Server service, which then sends it to a temporary directory.
   The temporary directory is specified in the following places:
   - For WirelessOffice, in **File Messenger** on the Directories tab. For more information, refer to Configure File Messenger on page 99.
   - For B.A.S.I.S., in the **Spooler Directory** field on the Paging Devices form. For more information please refer to “Add a Paging Device” in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.
5. The File Messenger service checks the temporary directory and retrieves the message.
6. The File Messenger service sends the message to the WirelessOffice Server service.
7. The WirelessOffice Server service uses the modem to send the message to the e-mail/paging service specified.

Automatic E-mail/Paging

In automatic e-mail/paging, an alarm definition is associated with a specified e-mail/page address, and a message is sent automatically sent to that address when

the alarm type specified in the alarm definition is generated. The process that occurs for the message to be sent is as follows:

1. The LS Communication Server service monitors for alarms. When an alarm is received, it sends the alarm to the Alarm Monitoring screen and to the Linkage Server.
2. The LS Linkage Server service sends the message to the LS Global Output Server service.
3. The LS Global Output Server service sends the message to the temporary directory.
   The temporary directory is specified in the following places:
   - For WirelessOffice, in File Messenger on the Directories tab. For more information, refer to Configure File Messenger on page 99.
   - For B.A.S.I.S., in the **Spooler Directory** field on the Paging Devices form. For more information please refer to “Add a Paging Device” in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.
4. The File Messenger service checks the temporary directory and retrieves the message.
5. The File Messenger service sends the message to the WirelessOffice Server service.
6. The WirelessOffice Server service uses the modem to send the message to the e-mail/paging service specified.

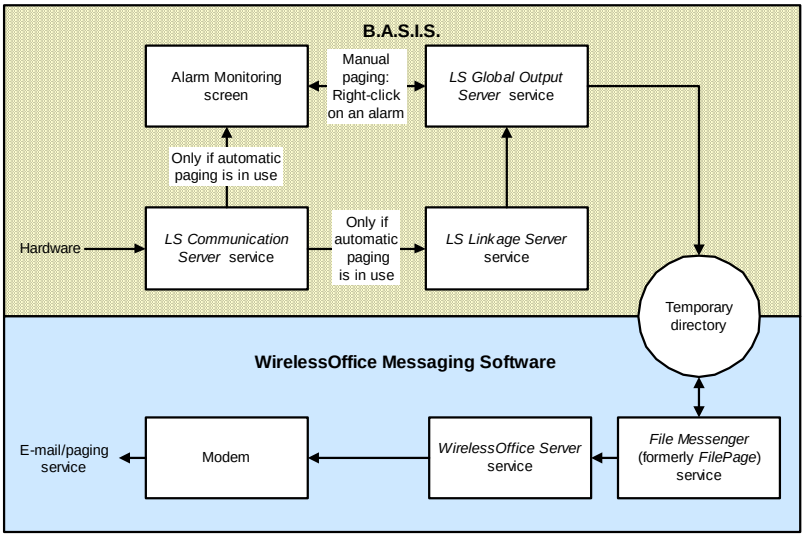
The following illustration shows the manual and automatic e-mail and paging processes.

E-mail/Paging Setup Checklist

The following steps are necessary to install and configure WirelessOffice Messaging Software for use with B.A.S.I.S.:

1. Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.
2. Run Database Setup. For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.
3. Install WirelessOffice. For more information, refer to Install WirelessOffice Messaging Software on page 93.
4. Configure WirelessOffice for use with the B.A.S.I.S. software.
   - Configure the modem. For more information, refer to Configure the Modem on page 98.
   - Configure the carrier that will be used. For more information, refer to Configure the Carrier on page 99.
   - Test connectivity. For more information, refer to step 9 on page 101.
   - Verify that the “File Messenger” and “WirelessOffice Server” services are started and automatic. For more information, refer to step 7 on page 101.
5. In System Administration, configure B.A.S.I.S. for use with WirelessOffice.
   - Set up a paging device or devices. For more information please refer to “Add a Paging Device” in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.
   - Create a recipient. For more information please refer to “Add a Recipient” in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.
6. Set up manual paging, and then verify that the “LS Global Output Server” service is started and automatic. For more information, refer to Set Up Manual Paging on page 103.
7. (Optional) Set up automatic paging. For more information, refer to Set Up Automatic Paging on page 103. If automatic paging is not set up, manual paging can still be done.
8. Verify that the “LS Linkage Server” service is started and automatic. For more information, refer to Set Up Automatic Paging on page 103.

E-mail and Paging Process Flow



E-Mail/Paging Setup Procedures

Prerequisites

Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.

Run Database Setup

Run Database Setup. For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.

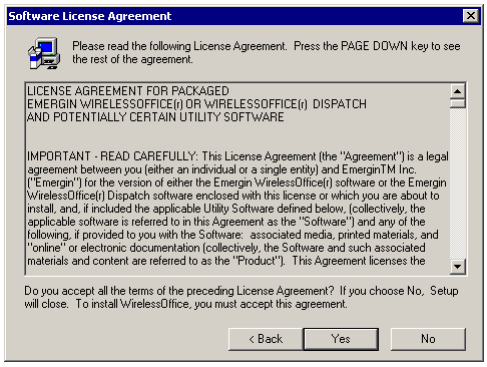
WirelessOffice Procedures

Install WirelessOffice Messaging Software

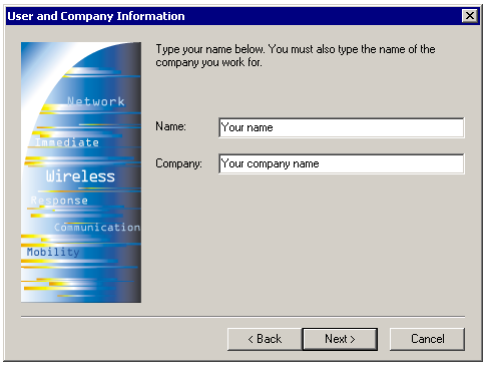
1. Insert the WirelessOffice Messaging Software Version 5.0 CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.
   - If AutoPlay is enabled, this will launch the Autorun program.
   - If AutoPlay is not enabled, click the Windows Start, then select **Run…** In the **Open** field of the Run window, type `D:\Setup.exe`, where D:\ is the letter of your CD-ROM drive. Click [OK].
2. The Welcome window will be displayed. Click [Next >].

Welcome
Welcome to the WirelessOffice Setup program. This program will install WirelessOffice on your computer.
WirelessOffice
Messaging Software
Network
Immediate
Wireless
Response
Communication
Mobility
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

3. The Software License Agreement window will be displayed. Click [Yes] if you agree to the terms of the license.

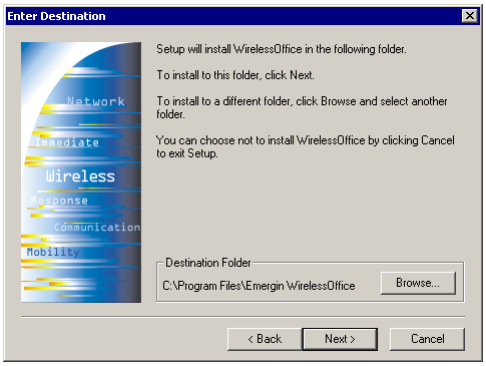

Software License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement.
LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR PACKAGED
EMERGIN WIRELESSOFFICE(r) OR WIRELESSOFFICE(r) DISPATCH
AND POTENTIALLY CERTAIN UTILITY SOFTWARE
IMPORTANT - READ CAREFULLY: This License Agreement (the "Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and EmerginTM Inc. ("Emergin") for the version of either the Emergin WirelessOffice(r) software or the Emergin WirelessOffice(r) Dispatch software enclosed with this license or which you are about to install, and, if included the applicable Utility Software defined below, (collectively, the applicable software is referred to in this Agreement as the "Software") and any of the following, if provided to you with the Software: associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation (collectively, the Software and such associated materials and content are referred to as the "Product"). This Agreement licenses the
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, Setup will close. To install WirelessOffice, you must accept this agreement.
< Back
Yes
No

4. The User and Company Information window will be displayed.
   a. In the **Name** field, type your name.
   b. In the **Company** field, type the name of your company.
   c. Click [Next >].

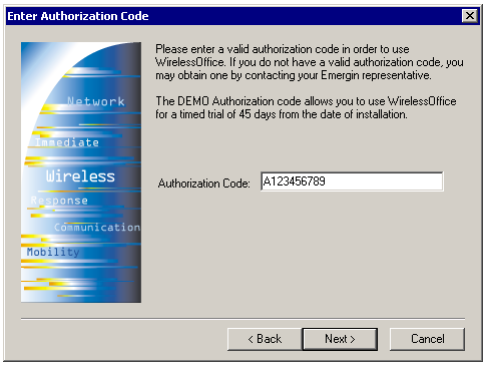

User and Company Information
Type your name below. You must also type the name of the company you work for.
Name:
Your name
Company:
Your company name
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you click [Back], be aware that the default settings for that window will be selected and you will have to choose the settings you wish to use again.

5. The Enter Destination window will be displayed.
   - By default, WirelessOffice is installed to **C:\Program Files\Emergin WirelessOffice**.
   - Click [Next >].


Enter Destination
Setup will install WirelessOffice in the following folder.
To install to this folder, click Next.
To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder.
You can choose not to install WirelessOffice by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
Destination Folder
C:\Program Files\Emergin WirelessOffice
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

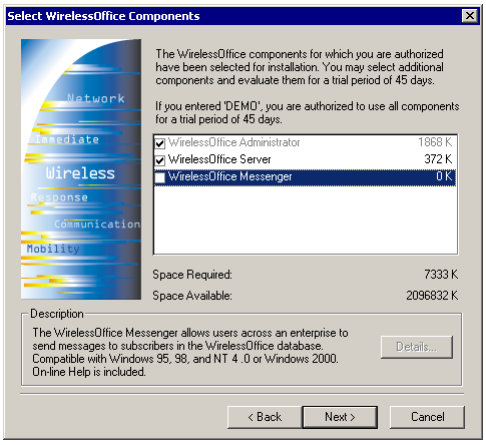
6. The Enter Authorization Code window will be displayed.
   a. In the **Authorization Code** field, enter your authorization code, which is found inside the CD jewel case.
   b. Click [Next >].


Enter Authorization Code
Please enter a valid authorization code in order to use WirelessOffice. If you do not have a valid authorization code, you may obtain one by contacting your Emergin representative.
The DEMO Authorization code allows you to use WirelessOffice for a timed trial of 45 days from the date of installation.
Authorization Code:
A123456789
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. The Select WirelessOffice Components window will be displayed.
   a. Select the following components. Only the components listed should be selected - if others are selected, deselect them before proceeding.
      – WirelessOffice Administrator

– WirelessOffice Server

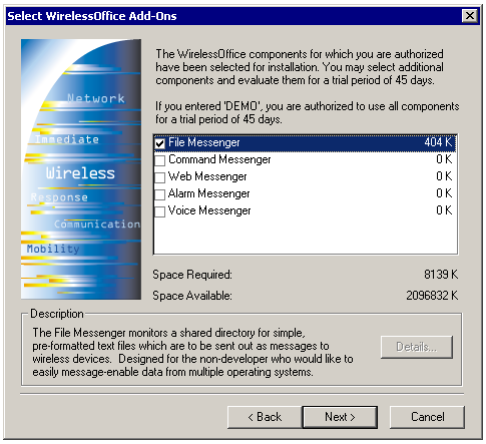
b. Click [Next >].


Select WirelessOffice Components
The WirelessOffice components for which you are authorized have been selected for installation. You may select additional components and evaluate them for a trial period of 45 days.
If you entered 'DEMO', you are authorized to use all components for a trial period of 45 days.
WirelessOffice Administrator 1868 K
WirelessOffice Server 372 K
WirelessOffice Messenger 0 K
Space Required: 7333 K
Space Available: 2096832 K
Description
The WirelessOffice Messenger allows users across an enterprise to send messages to subscribers in the WirelessOffice database. Compatible with Windows 95, 98, and NT 4 .0 or Windows 2000. On-line Help is included.
Details...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

8. The Select WirelessOffice Add-Ons window will be displayed.

   a. Only the File Messenger component should be selected. If if others are selected, deselect them before proceeding.

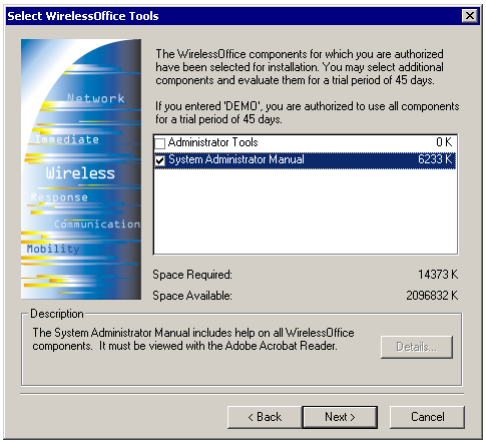
   b. Click [Next >].


Select WirelessOffice Add-Ons
The WirelessOffice components for which you are authorized have been selected for installation. You may select additional components and evaluate them for a trial period of 45 days.
If you entered 'DEMO', you are authorized to use all components for a trial period of 45 days.
File Messenger 404 K
Command Messenger 0 K
Web Messenger 0 K
Alarm Messenger 0 K
Voice Messenger 0 K
Space Required: 8139 K
Space Available: 2096832 K
Description
The File Messenger monitors a shared directory for simple, pre-formatted text files which are to be sent out as messages to wireless devices. Designed for the non-developer who would like to easily message-enable data from multiple operating systems.
Details...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

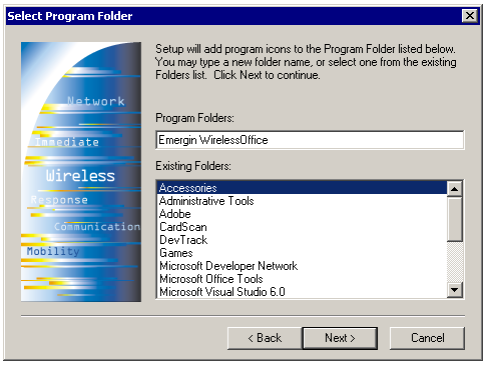
9. The Select WirelessOffice Tools window will be displayed.

   a. Select the System Administrator Manual component.

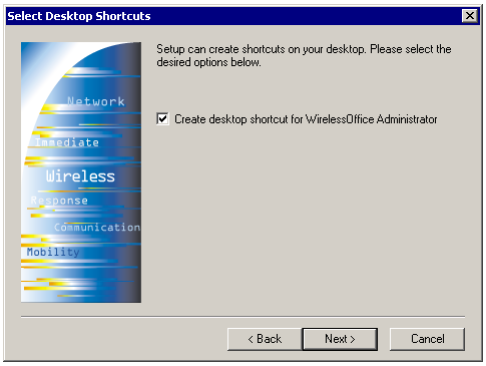
   b. Click [Next >].


Select WirelessOffice Tools
The WirelessOffice components for which you are authorized have been selected for installation. You may select additional components and evaluate them for a trial period of 45 days.
If you entered 'DEMO', you are authorized to use all components for a trial period of 45 days.
Administrator Tools 0 K
System Administrator Manual 6233 K
Space Required: 14373 K
Space Available: 2096832 K
Description
The System Administrator Manual includes help on all WirelessOffice components. It must be viewed with the Adobe Acrobat Reader.
Details...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

10. The Select Program Folder window will be displayed. Click [Next >] to accept the default folders.

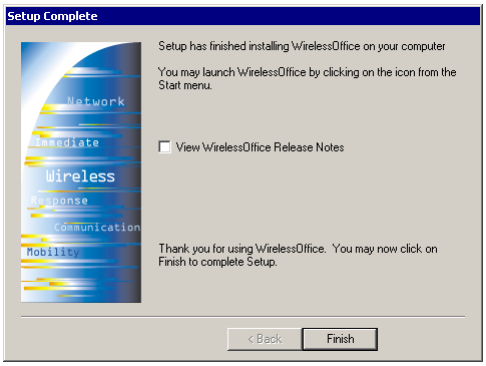


11. The Start Copying Files window will be displayed. Verify that the settings are correct, then click [Next >].
12. A progress indicator will be displayed, and the system will copy files onto your computer.
13. The Setup Desktop Shortcuts window will be displayed. Select the **Create desktop shortcut for WirelessOffice Administrator** checkbox if you wish to have a shortcut created. Click [Next >].

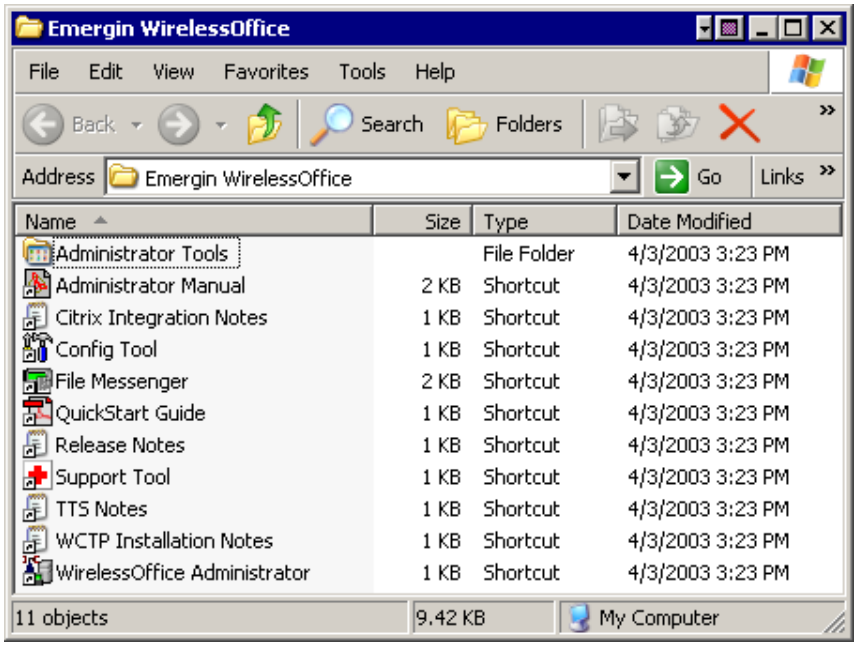

Select Desktop Shortcuts
Setup can create shortcuts on your desktop. Please select the desired options below.
Create desktop shortcut for WirelessOffice Administrator
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. The Setup Complete window will be displayed. Select the **View**

WirelessOffice Release Notes checkbox if you wish to automatically view the release notes after the installation finishes.


Setup Complete
Setup has finished installing WirelessOffice on your computer
You may launch WirelessOffice by clicking on the icon from the Start menu.
View WirelessOffice Release Notes
Thank you for using WirelessOffice. You may now click on Finish to complete Setup.
< Back
Finish

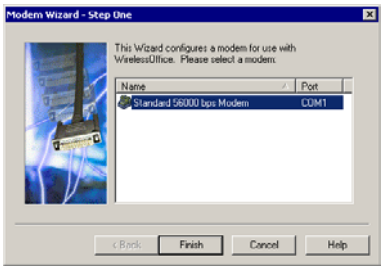
15. Click [Finish].
16. The program folder will appear on the desktop, and will contain the WirelessOffice shortcut icons.


Emergin WirelessOffice
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Folders
Address Emergin WirelessOffice
Go Links
Name Size Type Date Modified
Administrator Tools File Folder 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
Administrator Manual 2 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
Citrix Integration Notes 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
Config Tool 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
File Messenger 2 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
QuickStart Guide 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
Release Notes 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
Support Tool 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
TTS Notes 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
WCTP Installation Notes 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
WirelessOffice Administrator 1 KB Shortcut 4/3/2003 3:23 PM
11 objects 9.42 KB My Computer

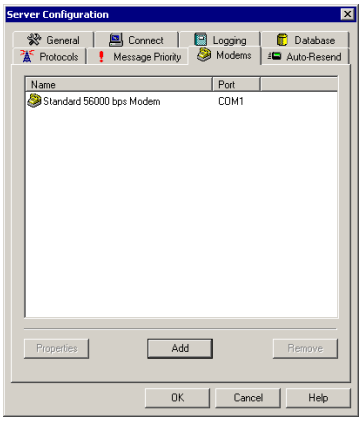
Configure the Modem

Important: The modem must already be added to your computer via the Windows Control Panel before it can be used by WirelessOffice.

1. In the program folder, double-click on **WirelessOffice Administrator**.
2. From the **Tools** menu, select **Server Configuration**.
3. The **Server Configuration Wizard** window will open. Click the Modems tab.
4. Make sure that the modem is available, and then click [Add].
5. The Modem Wizard - Step One window opens. Select the modem, and then click [Finish].



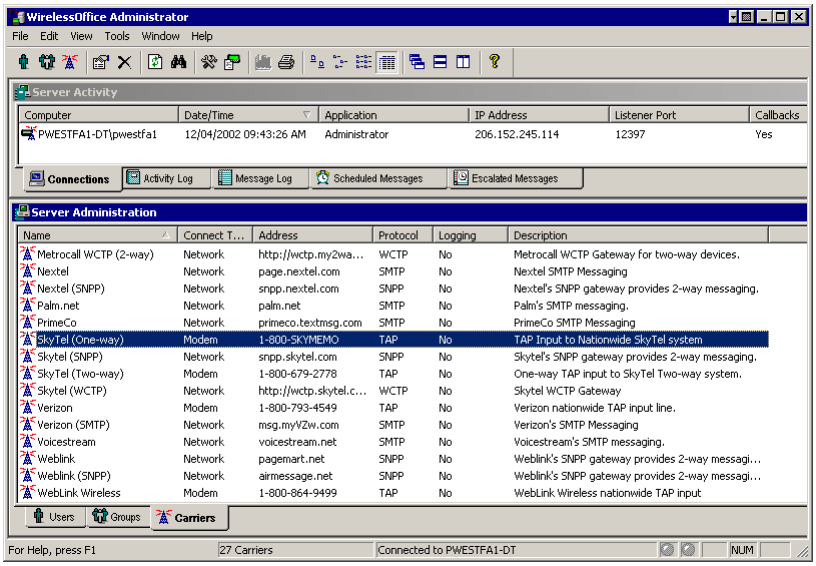
6. The modem will now be listed on the Modems tab. Click [OK] to close the Server Configuration window.



Configure the Carrier

The carrier is the paging service that transmits messages to subscribers. To configure the carrier:

1. In the main application window of WirelessOffice Administrator, click the **Carriers** tab.
2. WirelessOffice lists a number of carriers (paging services) that it supports in the **Carriers** pane.
   - If the carrier you wish to use is in that list, you do not need to do anything more on the **Carriers** tab.
   - If the carrier you wish to use is not listed, you must add it. To do this, right-click in the open area of the **Carriers** tab and select "New Carrier…". (Please refer to "Defining a New Carrier" on page 32 in the WirelessOffice Messaging Software System Administrator's manual for complete instructions.)
3. Make note of the exact name of the carrier, which is listed in the **Name** column of the **Carriers** pane. You will need this later to add a recipient in the B.A.S.I.S. software. For more information please refer to "Add a Recipient" in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.

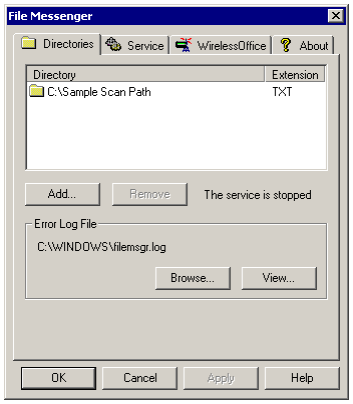

WirelessOffice Administrator
File Edit View Tools Window Help
Server Activity
Computer Date/Time Application IP Address Listener Port Callbacks
PWESTFA1-DT\pwestfa1 12/04/2002 09:43:26 AM Administrator 206.152.245.114 12397 Yes
Connections Activity Log Message Log Scheduled Messages Escalated Messages
Server Administration
Name Connect T... Address Protocol Logging Description
Metrocall WCTP (2-way) Network http://wctp.my2wa... WCTP No Metrocall WCTP Gateway for two-way devices.
Nextel Network page.nextel.com SMTP No Nextel SMTP Messaging
Nextel (SNPP) Network snpp.nextel.com SNPP No Nextel's SNPP gateway provides 2-way messaging.
Palm.net Network palm.net SMTP No Palm's SMTP messaging.
PrimeCo Network primeco.textmsg.com SMTP No PrimeCo SMTP Messaging
SkyTel (One-way) Modem 1-800-SKYMEMO TAP No TAP Input to Nationwide SkyTel system
Skytel (SNPP) Network snpp.skytel.com SNPP No Skytel's SNPP gateway provides 2-way messaging.
SkyTel (Two-way) Modem 1-800-679-2778 TAP No One-way TAP input to SkyTel Two-way system.
Skytel (WCTP) Network http://wctp.skytel.c... WCTP No Skytel WCTP Gateway
Verizon Modem 1-800-793-4549 TAP No Verizon nationwide TAP input line.
Verizon (SMTP) Network msg.myVZw.com SMTP No Verizon's SMTP Messaging
Voicestream Network voicestream.net SMTP No Voicestream's SMTP messaging.
Weblink Network pagemart.net SNPP No Weblink's SNPP gateway provides 2-way messagi...
Weblink (SNPP) Network airmessage.net SNPP No Weblink's SNPP gateway provides 2-way messagi...
WebLink Wireless Modem 1-800-864-9499 TAP No WebLink Wireless nationwide TAP input
Users Groups Carriers
For Help, press F1
27 Carriers
Connected to PWESTFA1-DT
NUM

Configure File Messenger

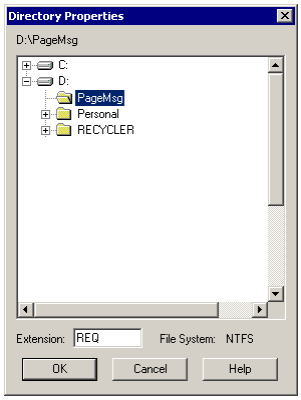
File Messenger, formerly named FilePage, is a WirelessOffice client that provides a simple interface to the WirelessOffice server. Using the File Messenger service, B.A.S.I.S. can send pages through the WirelessOffice server by writing message files to a shared temporary directory that File Messenger can access. File Messenger checks the temporary directory that B.A.S.I.S. puts messages in. If a message is in the directory, it sends it to WirelessOffice server

and then deletes it from the shared temporary directory. To configure File Messenger:

1. Close the WirelessOffice Administrator window.
2. In the program folder, double-click on **File Messenger**. The File Messenger window will open, and the Directories tab will be displayed.



3. The **Directory** is the location of the temporary directory that File Messenger will check for message files. This is the same directory that B.A.S.I.S. will send messages to. The default **Directory** entry that is listed specifies an **Extension** of TXT. This entry must be removed. To do this:
   a. Click on the default **Directory** entry to highlight it.
   b. Click [Remove].
   c. Click [Yes] to confirm the removal.
4. Add a new directory with an extension of REQ. To do this:
   a. Click [Add…]. The following window will be displayed:



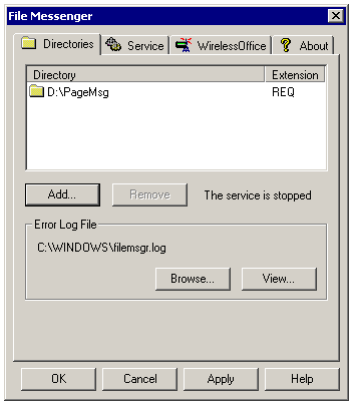
   b. Select the directory that File Messenger will check for files. The **Extension** specified must be **REQ**.

Note: If you configure automatic e-mail/paging, this same directory must be specified in the **Spooler Directory** field on the Paging Devices form in System Administration. For more information please refer to “Add a Paging

Device" in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.

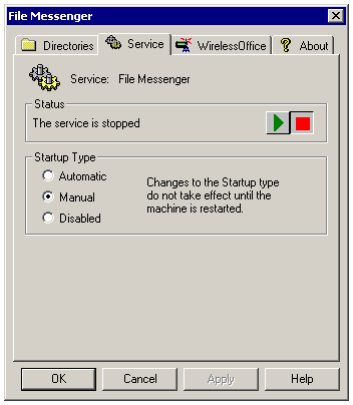
c. Click [OK].

5. The **Directory** listed should now have an extension of REQ, as shown below.



6. Click the **Service** tab.

7. Stop the service by clicking the button, if it isn't already stopped.



8. Restart the service by clicking the button.

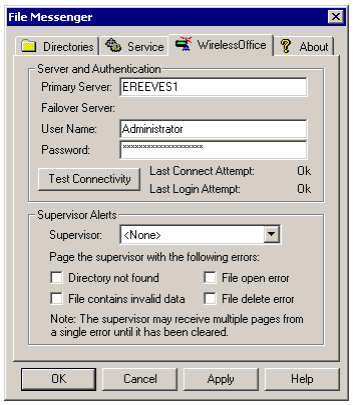
9. Click on the WirelessOffice tab.

   a. In the **User Name** field enter a valid user name for WirelessOffice. The first time you login, use `Administrator`.

   b. In the **Password** field, enter a valid password for WirelessOffice. In the **Primary Server** field, enter the name or IP address of the server. The **Primary Server** specified here must also be specified later in the

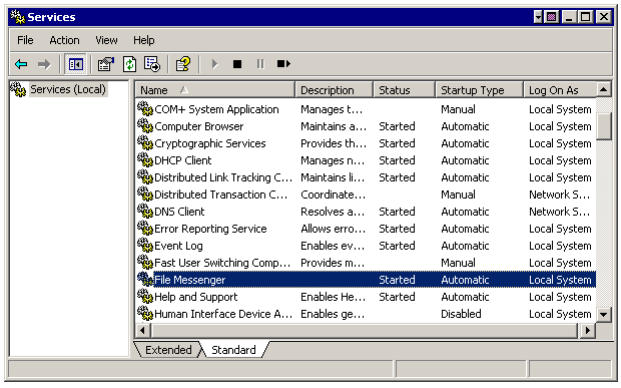
Linkage Server Host section on the System Options form in System Administration. For more information, refer to step 7 on page 104.

10. Click [Test Connectivity…].
11. If all goes well, the **Last Connect Attempt** and **Last Login Attempt** will be updated to 'OK'. Your window should look like the following:



Note: If the test for connectivity fails, it is possible that name resolution is not setup on your network. Try specifying the IP Address of the server instead of the name in the **Server** field on the **WirelessOffice** tab.

12. Verify that the "File Messenger" and "WirelessOffice Server" services have a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup** value of "Automatic". To do this:
    a. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings** > **Control Panel**.
    b. Open the **Administrative Tools** folder and double-click on the **Services** icon, and the Services window (shown) will be displayed.



    c. Scroll through the **Name** column. The "File Messenger" and "WirelessOffice Server" services should have a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup Type** value of "Automatic". If they do not:
        – To change the **Startup** value to "Automatic", select the service that needs to be changed, right-click on the service and select

Properties from the pop-up menu. Under the General tab, select **Automatic** from the **Startup Type** drop-down list, and click [OK].

– To change the **Status** to "Started", select the service that needs to be changed, then click the [Start Service] button in the Services window.

B.A.S.I.S. Procedures

Set Up Manual Paging

1. Open System Administration. To do this, click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **System Administration**.
2. In System Administration, set up a paging device or devices. (To display the Paging Devices form, select **Global Output Devices…** from the **Administration** menu, then click on the Paging Devices tab. For more information please refer to "Add a Paging Device" in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.)
3. In System Administration, create a recipient. (To display the Recipients form, select **Global Output Devices…** from the **Administration** menu, then click on the Recipients tab. For more information please refer to "Add a Recipient" in the Global Output Devices Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.)
4. Confirm that the "LS Global Output Server" service has a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup Type** value of "Automatic". To do this:
   a. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings > Control Panel**.
   b. Double-click the **Administrative Tools** icon.
   c. Double-click the **Services** icon.
   d. Scroll through the **Name** column. The "LS Global Output Server" service should have a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup** value of "Automatic". If it does not:
      – To change the **Startup** value to "Automatic" select the "LS Global Output Server" service, right-click on the service and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu. Under the General tab, select "Automatic" from the **Startup Type** drop-down list, and click [OK].
      – To change the **Status** to "Started" select the "LS Global Output Server" service, then click the [Start Service] button in the Services window.

Set Up Automatic Paging

1. Before setting up automatic paging, set up manual paging. (For more information, refer to Set Up Manual Paging on page 103.) This will insure that the paging devices and recipients that are needed for automatic paging get set up.
2. In System Administration, create a custom alarm definition. (To display the Alarm Definitions form, select **Alarms…** from the **Monitoring** menu, then click on the Alarm Definitions tab. For more information please refer to

"Add a Custom Alarm" in the Alarm Configuration Folder chapter in the System Administration User Guide.)

3. Click the **Messages** tab.
4. Add an automatic page message. For more information please refer to "Add an Automatic Page Message" in the Installation & Setup User Guide.
5. Select **System Options** from the **Administration** menu.
6. Click [Modify].
7. In the **Workstation** field in the Linkage Server Host section, specify the name of the computer that the "LS Linkage Server" service will run on.
   - If the wrong server is selected in the **Workstation** field, the "LS Linkage Server" service will not be able to be started.
   - The **Workstation** must be the same computer that was specified in File Messenger in the **Primary Server** field on the **WirelessOffice** tab.
8. Click [OK].
9. Confirm that the "LS Linkage Server" service has a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup** value of "Automatic". To do this:
   a. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings > Control Panel > Administrative Tools**.
   b. Double-click on the **Services** icon.
   c. Scroll through the Service column. The "LS Linkage Server" service should have a **Status** of "Started" and a **Startup** value of "Automatic". If it does not:
      – To change the **Startup** value to "Automatic", select the "LS Linkage Server" service, right-click on the service and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu. Under the General tab, select "Automatic" from the **Startup Type** drop-down list, and click [OK].
      – To change the **Status** to "Started", click the [Start Service] button in the Services window.

Note: If the "LS Linkage Server" service fails to start, the wrong server was selected as the Linkage Server Host. To fix this, repeat steps 4-7, selecting the **Workstation** that the "LS Linkage Server" service will run on in step 7.

Database Management Systems

Chapter 9: Installing Microsoft SQL Server

SQL Server Support Overview

B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition supports Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (version 8.x). There are three different editions of SQL Server 2000: Enterprise edition, Standard edition, and Personal edition. **BEST supports the all three editions, but only distributes the Standard edition or Personal edition, depending on the operating system you use**. SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 3a should also be installed. Before you attempt to install SQL Server, make sure that your system meets the following hardware and operating system requirements.

Hardware Requirements

The following table shows the hardware requirements that must be met by the computer that SQL Server will be installed on. Note that more memory may be required depending on the operating system requirements. Actual hard disk requirements depend on the applications and features that you choose to install.

Operating System Requirements

Hardware	Minimum requirements
Computer	Intel® or compatible Pentium 166 MHz or higher.
Memory (RAM)	Enterprise Edition: 64 MB minimum, 128 MB or more recommended Standard Edition: 64 MB minimum Personal Edition: 64 MB minimum on Windows 2000, 32 MB minimum on all other operating systems Developer Edition: 64 MB minimum Desktop Engine: 64 MB minimum on Windows 2000, 32 MB minimum on all other operating systems
Hard disk space	SQL Server database components: 95 to 270 MB, 250 MB typical Analysis Services: 50 MB minimum, 130 MB typical English Query: 80 MB Desktop Engine only: 44 MB

There are different operating system installation requirements for each edition. They are:

SQL Server edition	Operating system requirement
Enterprise Edition	Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Advanced Server, and Windows 2000 Data Center Server. Note that Microsoft Windows 2000 Server (any version) is required for some SQL Server 2000 features.
Standard Edition	Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Advanced Server, and Windows 2000 Data Center Server.
Personal Edition	Microsoft Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows 2000 Server, and all the more advanced Windows operating systems.

Installing SQL Server 2000 (New Installations)

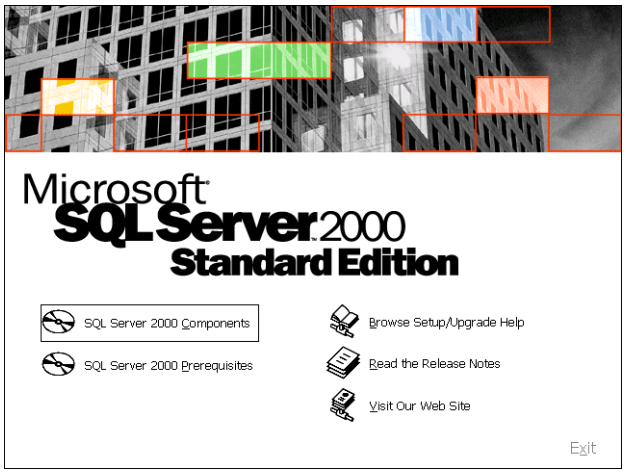
The installation for SQL Server 2000 Standard and Personal editions are very similar. The instructions that follow are for the Standard edition, with differences between the Personal edition installation noted. The Standard edition and the Personal edition are located on different CD-ROMs. Use the Standard edition CD-ROM to install Standard edition, and the Personal edition CD-ROM to install Personal edition.

Installing SQL Server 2000

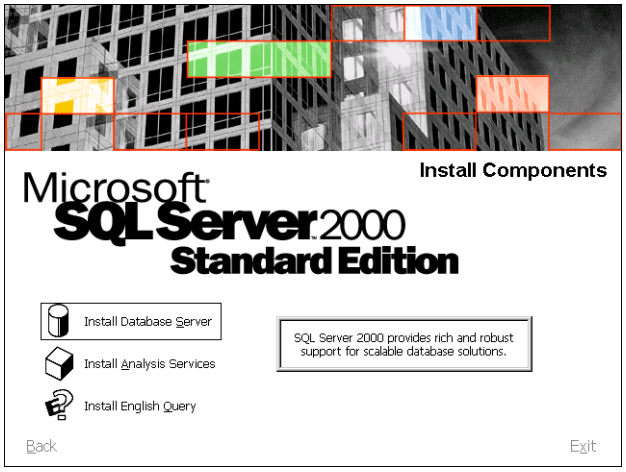
1. Insert the SQL Server 2000 CD-ROM into a CD-ROM drive on a computer running the Windows operating system.
   - If autorun is enabled, the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen is automatically opened.
   - If the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen does not automatically appear, click the Windows Start button, then select **Run...** In the Run window, select **autorun.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively,

you can run **autorun.exe** from Explorer. The Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen is displayed.

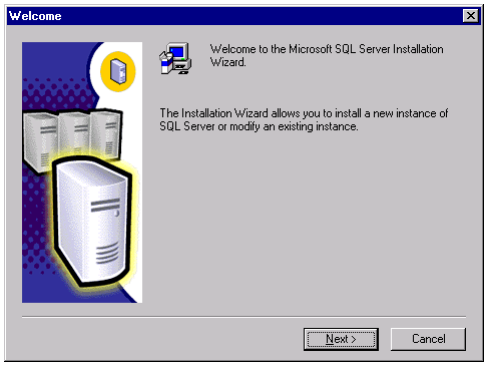
2. Click **SQL Server 2000 Components**.
   Personal edition users: The Personal Edition splashscreen will be displayed instead. It is functionally the same.



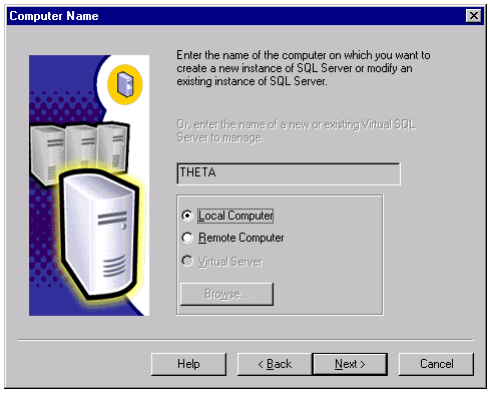
3. Click **Install Database Server**.
   Personal edition users: The Personal Edition Install Components window will be displayed instead. It is functionally the same.



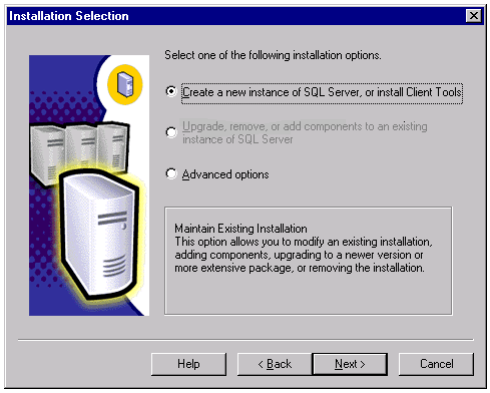
4. In the Welcome window click [Next >].


Welcome
Welcome to the Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard.
The Installation Wizard allows you to install a new instance of SQL Server or modify an existing instance.
Next >
Cancel

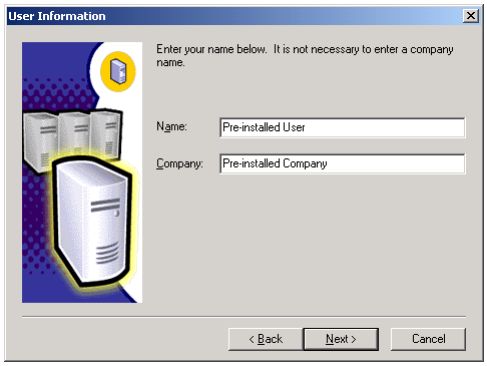
5. In the Computer Name window click [Next >].


Computer Name
Enter the name of the computer on which you want to create a new instance of SQL Server or modify an existing instance of SQL Server.
Or, enter the name of a new or existing Virtual SQL Server to manage.
THETA
Local Computer
Remote Computer
Virtual Server
Browse...
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

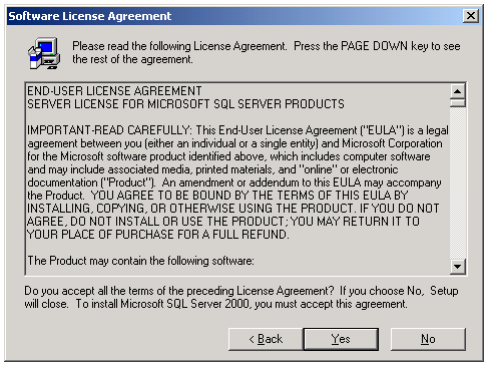
6. In the Installation Selection window:
   - Select the **Create a new instance of SQL Server, or install Client Tools** radio button
   - Click [Next >].


Installation Selection
Select one of the following installation options.
Create a new instance of SQL Server, or install Client Tools
Upgrade, remove, or add components to an existing instance of SQL Server
Advanced options
Maintain Existing Installation
This option allows you to modify an existing installation, adding components, upgrading to a newer version or more extensive package, or removing the installation.
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

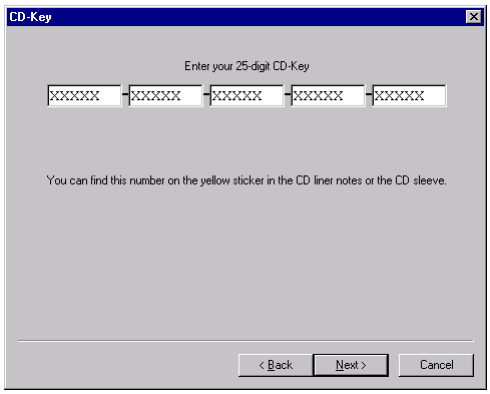
7. In the User Information window:
   - Type your **Name** and **Company**.
   - Click [Next >].



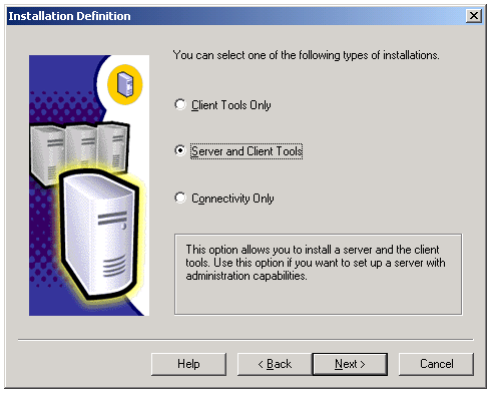
8. In the Software License Agreement window, click [Yes] to agree to the license.


Software License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement.
END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT
SERVER LICENSE FOR MICROSOFT SQL SERVER PRODUCTS
IMPORTANT-READ CAREFULLY: This End-User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Microsoft Corporation for the Microsoft software product identified above, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("Product"). An amendment or addendum to this EULA may accompany the Product. YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS EULA BY INSTALLING, COPYING, OR OTHERWISE USING THE PRODUCT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT INSTALL OR USE THE PRODUCT; YOU MAY RETURN IT TO YOUR PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR A FULL REFUND.
The Product may contain the following software:
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, Setup will close. To install Microsoft SQL Server 2000, you must accept this agreement.
< Back
Yes
No

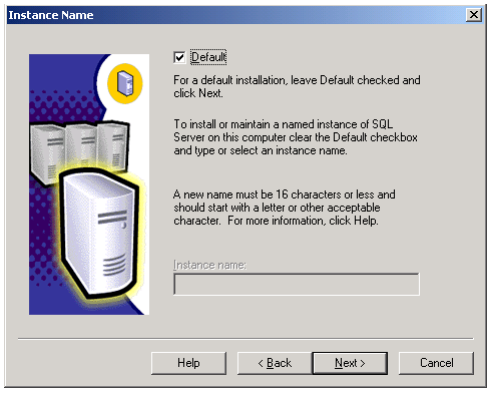
9. In the CD Key window:
   - Type the CD key.
   - Click [Next >].



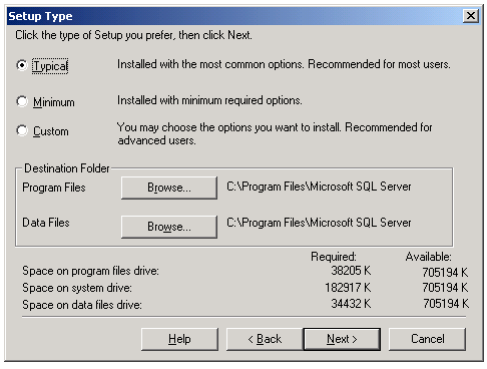
10. In the Installation Definition window, accept the defaults and click [Next >].


Installation Definition
You can select one of the following types of installations.
Client Tools Only
Server and Client Tools
Connectivity Only
This option allows you to install a server and the client tools. Use this option if you want to set up a server with administration capabilities.
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

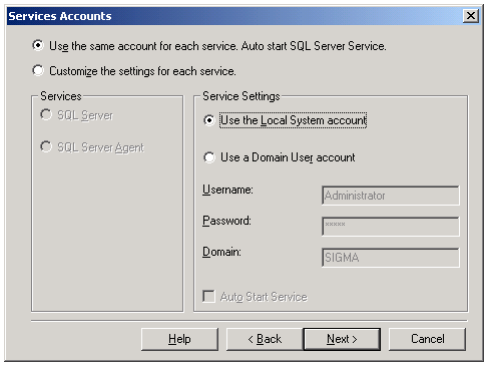
11. In the Instance Name window click [Next >].


Instance Name
Default
For a default installation, leave Default checked and click Next.
To install or maintain a named instance of SQL Server on this computer clear the Default checkbox and type or select an instance name.
A new name must be 16 characters or less and should start with a letter or other acceptable character. For more information, click Help.
Instance name:
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

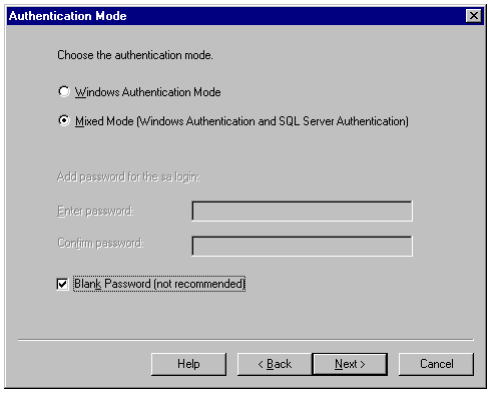
12. In the Setup Type window, accept the defaults and click [Next >].



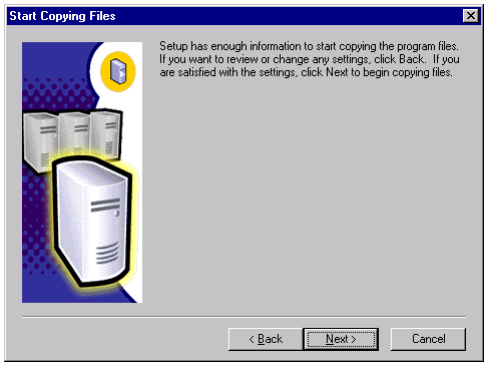
13. In the Services Accounts window:
    - Select the **Use the Local System account** radio button.
    - Click [Next >].



14. In the Authentication Mode window:
    - Select the **Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)** radio button.
    - Select the **Blank Password (not recommended)** checkbox.
    - Click [Next >].



15. In the Start Copying Files window, click [Next >].

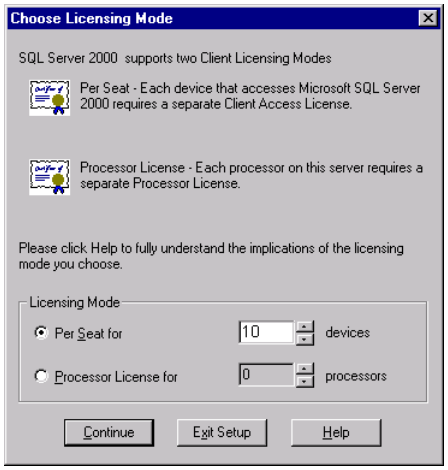

Start Copying Files
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

16. In the Choose Licensing Mode window:
    - Select the **Per Seat for** radio button.
    - Enter the number of **devices**.

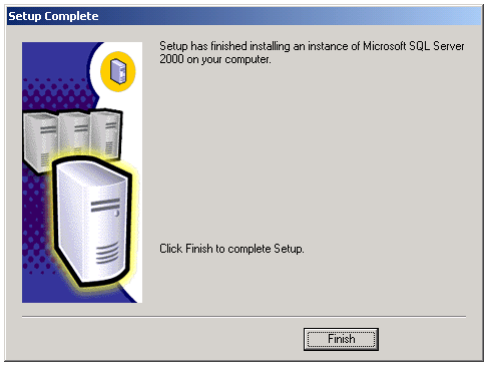
Note: BEST's standard offering of SQL Server is **Per Seat**. Microsoft offers licensing on a **Per Processor** basis, which may be more cost effective depending on the potential size of your system. Please contact your BEST system vendor if you have questions regarding which licensing method best suits your needs.

- Click [Continue].

Personal edition users: This screen will not be displayed.


Choose Licensing Mode
SQL Server 2000 supports two Client Licensing Modes
Per Seat - Each device that accesses Microsoft SQL Server 2000 requires a separate Client Access License.
Processor License - Each processor on this server requires a separate Processor License.
Please click Help to fully understand the implications of the licensing mode you choose.
Licensing Mode
Per Seat for
10
devices
Processor License for
0
processors
Continue
Exit Setup
Help

17. In the Setup Complete window, click [Finish].
    - Personal edition users: This screen will look a little different.

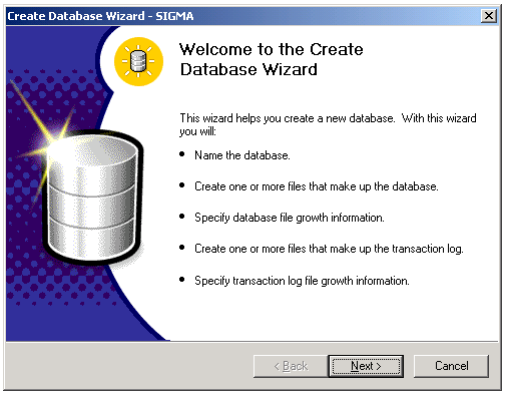

Setup Complete
Setup has finished installing an instance of Microsoft SQL Server 2000 on your computer.
Click Finish to complete Setup.
Finish

18. Reboot the computer, even if you are not prompted to do so. This completes the installation of SQL Server 2000. You can now go on to configure SQL Server 2000.

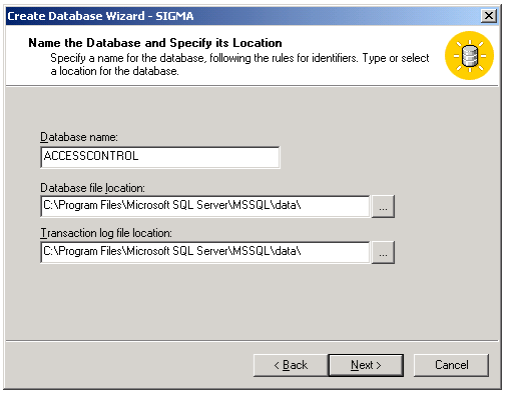
Configuring SQL Server 2000

Create the Database

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **Microsoft SQL Server** > **Enterprise Manager**. This launches the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.
2. In the left pane, expand the entries and select the name of your SQL server.
3. Select the **Tools** > **Wizards**… menu option. In the Select Wizards window:
   - Expand the **Database** entry.
   - Select the **Create Database Wizard**.
   - Click [OK].
4. The Create Database Wizard will begin. Click [Next >].

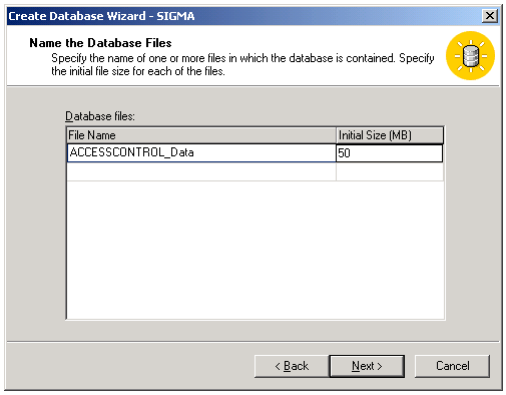

Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Welcome to the Create Database Wizard
This wizard helps you create a new database. With this wizard you will:
Name the database.
Create one or more files that make up the database.
Specify database file growth information.
Create one or more files that make up the transaction log.
Specify transaction log file growth information.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. In the Name the Database and Specify its Location window:
   - In the **Database Name** field, type `ACCESSCONTROL` (this is case-insensitive).
   - Accept the default file locations, or change them as you wish.
   - Click [Next >].

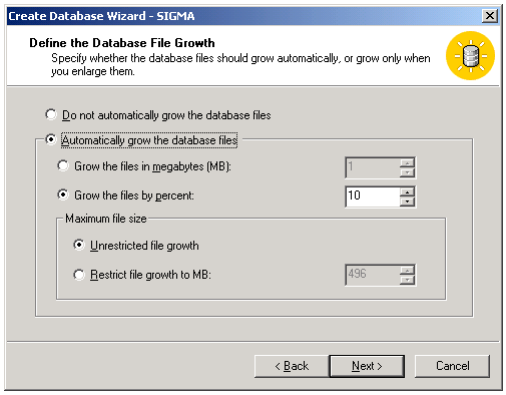

Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Name the Database and Specify its Location
Specify a name for the database, following the rules for identifiers. Type or select a location for the database.
Database name:
ACCESSCONTROL
Database file location:
C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\data\
Transaction log file location:
C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\data\
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. In the Name the Database Files window:
   - Set the **Initial Size (MB)** to **50**.

- Click [Next >].

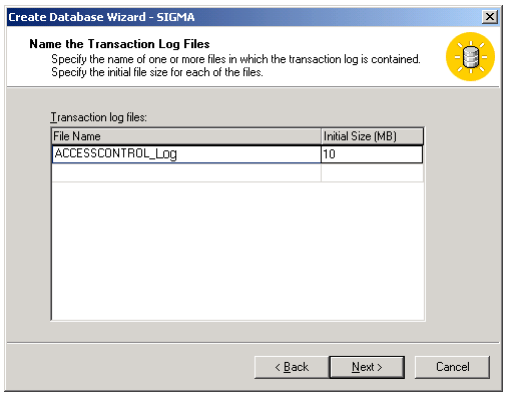

Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Name the Database Files
Specify the name of one or more files in which the database is contained. Specify the initial file size for each of the files.
Database files:
File Name
Initial Size (MB)
ACCESSCONTROL_Data
50
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. In the Define the Database File Growth window, accept the default values and click [Next >].


Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Define the Database File Growth
Specify whether the database files should grow automatically, or grow only when you enlarge them.
Do not automatically grow the database files
Automatically grow the database files
Grow the files in megabytes (MB):
1
Grow the files by percent:
10
Maximum file size
Unrestricted file growth
Restrict file growth to MB:
496
< Back
Next >
Cancel

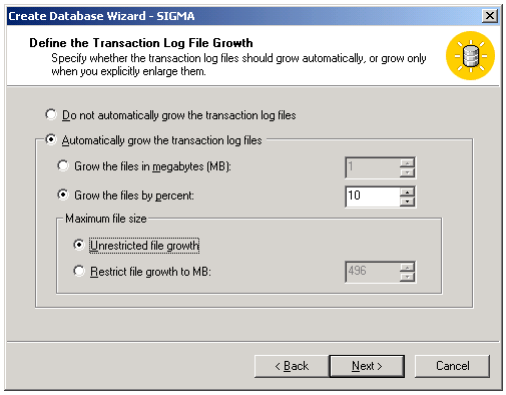
8. In the Name the Transaction Log Files window:
   - We recommend that you set **Initial size (MB)** value to **10**.

     This value can always be changed later.
   - Accept the default log file name.
   - Click [Next >].

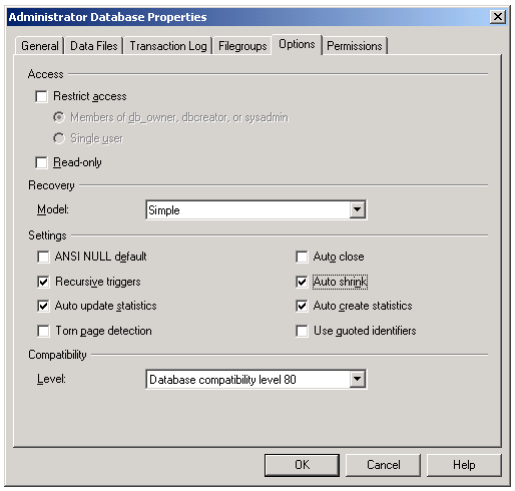

Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Name the Transaction Log Files
Specify the name of one or more files in which the transaction log is contained. Specify the initial file size for each of the files.
Transaction log files:
File Name
Initial Size (MB)
ACCESSCONTROL_Log
10
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. In the Define the Transaction Log File Growth window, accept the default

values and click [Next >].


Create Database Wizard - SIGMA
Define the Transaction Log File Growth
Specify whether the transaction log files should grow automatically, or grow only when you explicitly enlarge them.
Do not automatically grow the transaction log files
Automatically grow the transaction log files
Grow the files in megabytes (MB):
1
Grow the files by percent:
10
Maximum file size
Unrestricted file growth
Restrict file growth to MB:
496
< Back
Next >
Cancel

10. Click [Finish] when prompted.
11. Click [OK] when you see the message “The database was successfully created.”
12. If you are asked to create a maintenance plan for the database, click [No].
13. You will be returned to the SQL Server Enterprise Manager.
    - In the left side of the window, expand your SQL Server’s entry in the tree.
    - Right-click the ACCESSCONTROL entry listed under “Databases” in the tree and select **Properties** from the displayed popup menu.
    - The ACCESSCONTROL Properties folder is displayed.
    - Click the Options tab to switch to the Options form. Select only the options shown in the screenshot that follows:



Use the following table as a guide to completing this form:

Checkboxes	Setting
Restrict access Read only	Must be Deselected for B.A.S.I.S. to work correctly.
Recursive triggers Auto update statistics Auto shrink Auto create statistics	Selection Recommended for B.A.S.I.S. to work most efficiently and without incident. Unless you are a database administrator onsite, and fully understand the ramifications of these options, we **strongly** urge you to follow our recommendation and select these options.
ANSI NULL Default Torn page detection Auto close Use quoted identifiers	Deselection Recommended for B.A.S.I.S. to work most efficiently and without incident. Unless you are a database administrator onsite, and fully understand the ramifications of the options, we **strongly** urge you to follow our recommendation and deselect these options

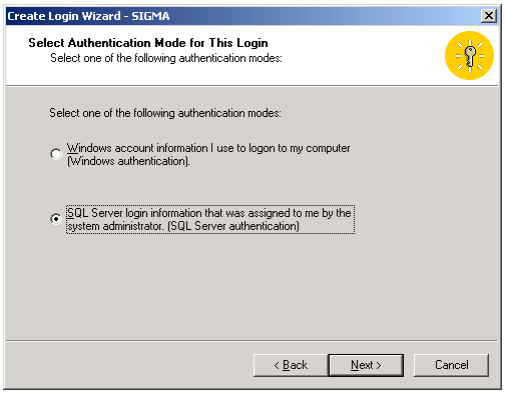
- Click [OK] to close the ACCESSCONTROL Properties folder.

Create a Login

1. In the SQL Server Enterprise Manager, highlight the ACCESSCONTROL database in the left pane.
2. Select the **Tools** > **Wizards…** menu option. In the Select Wizards window:
   - Expand the **Database** entry.
   - Select the **Create Login Wizard**.
   - Click [OK].
3. The Create Login Wizard opens. Click [Next >].

Create Login Wizard - SIGMA
Welcome to the Create Login Wizard
This wizard helps you grant SQL Server login access to a user. With this wizard, you can:
Select an authentication mode.
Grant access to security roles.
Grant access to databases.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

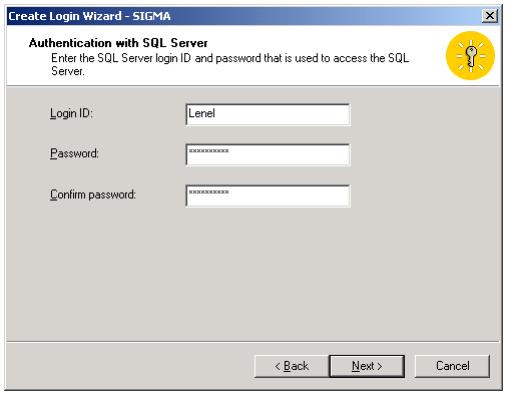
4. In the Select Authentication Mode for This Login window:
   - Select the **SQL Server login information that was assigned to me by the system administrator. (SQL Server authentication)** radio button.
   - Click [Next >].


Create Login Wizard - SIGMA
Select Authentication Mode for This Login
Select one of the following authentication modes:
Select one of the following authentication modes:
Windows account information I use to logon to my computer (Windows authentication).
SQL Server login information that was assigned to me by the system administrator. (SQL Server authentication)
< Back
Next >
Cancel

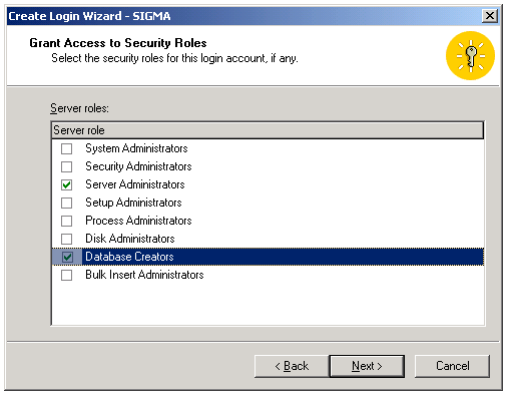
5. In the Authentication with SQL Server window:
   - For **Login ID**, type `LENEL`
   - For **Password**, type `MULTIMEDIA`
   - For **Confirm Password**, type `MULTIMEDIA`

Note: These are all case-insensitive.

- Click [Next >].


Create Login Wizard - SIGMA
Authentication with SQL Server
Enter the SQL Server login ID and password that is used to access the SQL Server.
Login ID:
Lenel
Password:
Confirm password:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

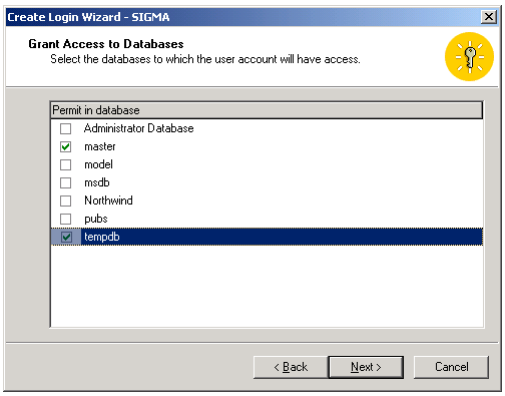
6. In the Grant Access to Security Roles window:
   - We recommend that you select (check):
     - **Server Administrators**
     - **Database Creators**
   - Click [Next >].



7. In Grant Access to Databases window:
   - Select the following databases:
     - **master**

- **tempdb**

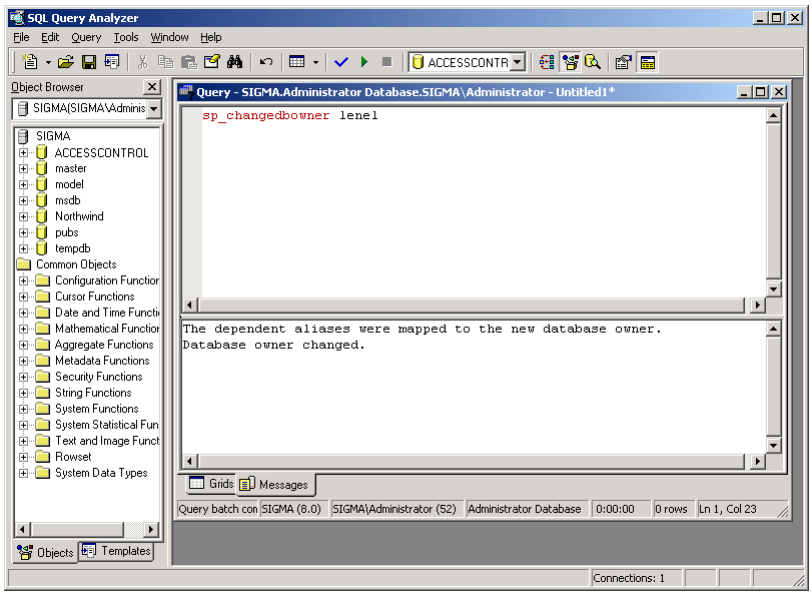
- Click [Next >].



8. Click [Finish].
9. Click [OK] when you see the message “The login was successfully created.”

Run Query Analyzer

1. In the left pane, highlight the ACCESSCONTROL database.
2. Select the **Tools** > **SQL Query Analyzer** menu option. The SQL Query Analyzer window is displayed.



   a. Select the “ACCESSCONTROL” entry from the database drop-down list.
   b. In the text window, type `sp_changedbowner lenel`
   c. Press <F5> to execute the command you typed.
   d. The message “Database owner changed” is displayed in the Results tab window.
   e. In the text window, type `sp_dboption AccessControl,”Trunc. Log on ChkPt.”,true`
   f. Press <F5> to execute the command you typed.
   g. The message “The command(s) completed successfully” is displayed in the Results tab window.
3. Click the close (“X”) button to close the Query folder, then click [No] when prompted if you want to save the changes.

Chapter 10: Upgrading Microsoft SQL Server

Upgrading from SQL Server 7.0 to SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition

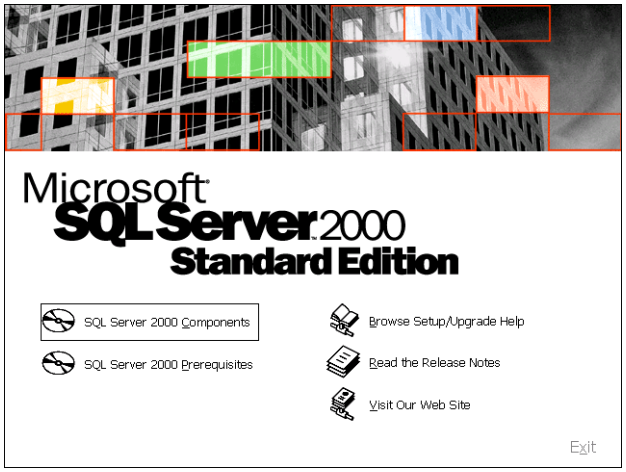
Important: **Before going through this process, be sure to back up your database!**

When performing an upgrade, there should be nothing connected, i.e. no clients logged on. There can be no software connections to the database when the upgrade is performed, so any B.A.S.I.S. LS services including the LS Communication Server must be stopped. Since SQL 7.0 is already installed, you will only need to run the upgrade wizard.

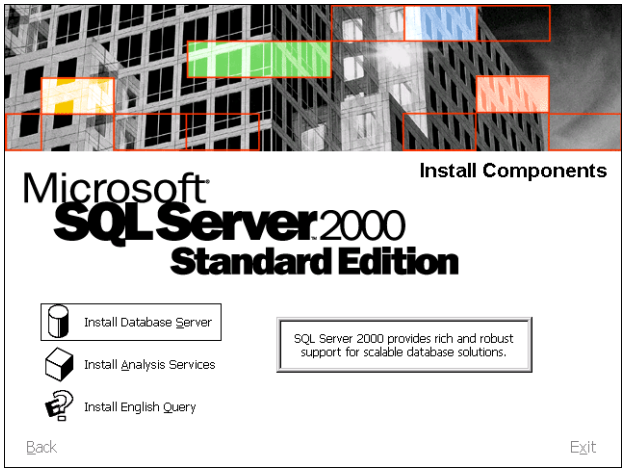
1. Insert the SQL Server 2000 CD-ROM into a CD-ROM drive on a computer running the Windows operating system.
   - If autorun is enabled, the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen is automatically opened.
   - If the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen does not automatically appear, click the Windows Start button, then select **Run...** In the Run window, select **autorun.exe** from the CD-ROM drive. Alternatively,

you can run autorun.exe from Explorer. The Microsoft SQL Server 2000 splashscreen is displayed.

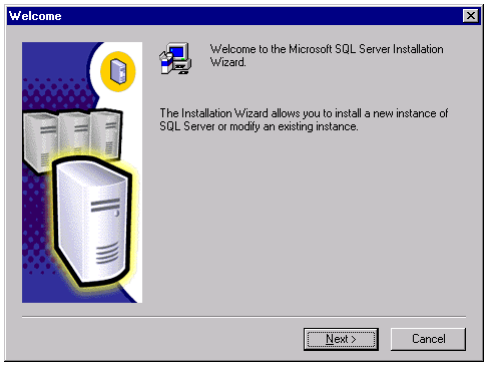
2. Click **SQL Server 2000 Components**.



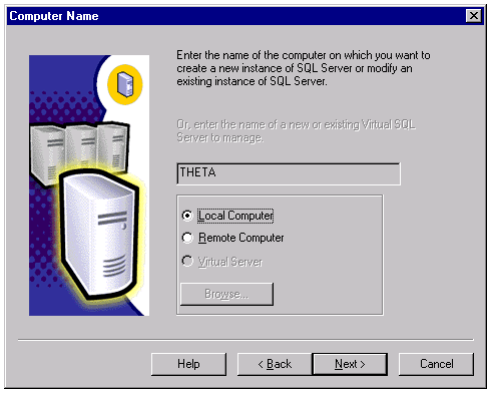
3. Click **Install Database Server**.



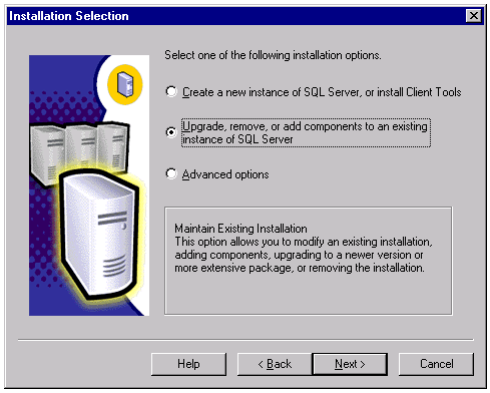
4. In the Welcome window click [Next >].


Welcome
Welcome to the Microsoft SQL Server Installation Wizard.
The Installation Wizard allows you to install a new instance of SQL Server or modify an existing instance.
Next >
Cancel

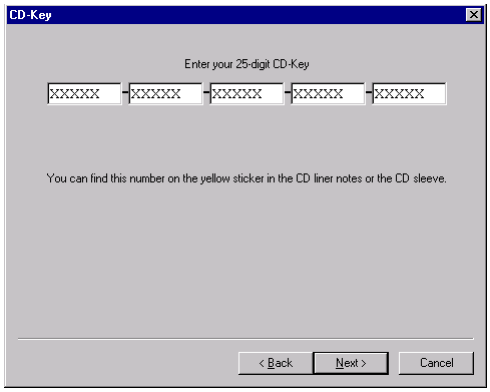
5. In the Computer Name window click [Next >].


Computer Name
Enter the name of the computer on which you want to create a new instance of SQL Server or modify an existing instance of SQL Server.
Or, enter the name of a new or existing Virtual SQL Server to manage.
THETA
Local Computer
Remote Computer
Virtual Server
Browse...
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

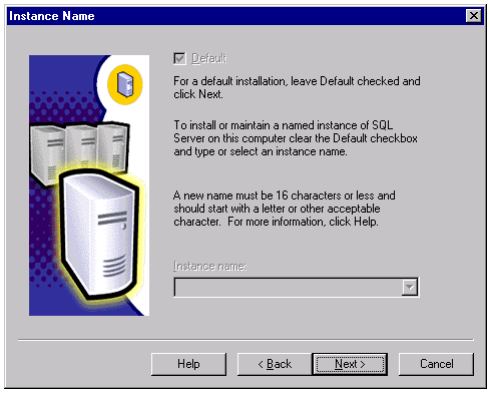
6. In the Installation Selection window:
   - Select the **Upgrade, remove, or add components to an existing instance of SQL Server** radio button.
   - Click [Next >].


Installation Selection
Select one of the following installation options.
Create a new instance of SQL Server, or install Client Tools
Upgrade, remove, or add components to an existing instance of SQL Server
Advanced options
Maintain Existing Installation
This option allows you to modify an existing installation, adding components, upgrading to a newer version or more extensive package, or removing the installation.
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

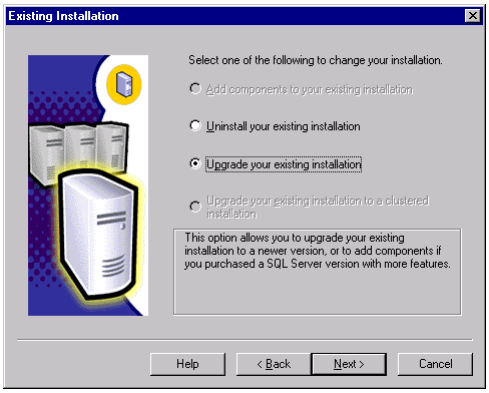
7. In the CD Key window:
   - Type the CD key.
   - Click [Next >].



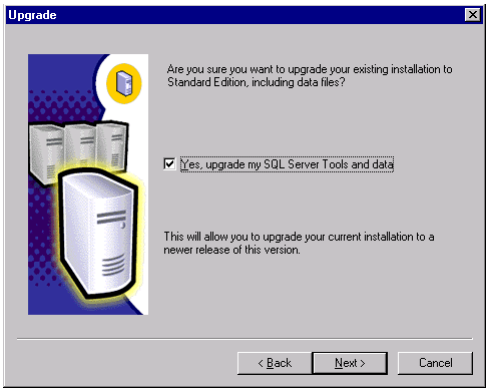
8. In the Instance Name window click [Next >].


Instance Name
Default
For a default installation, leave Default checked and click Next.
To install or maintain a named instance of SQL Server on this computer clear the Default checkbox and type or select an instance name.
A new name must be 16 characters or less and should start with a letter or other acceptable character. For more information, click Help.
Instance name:
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. In the Existing Installation window:
   - Select the **Upgrade your existing installation** radio button.
   - Click [Next >].

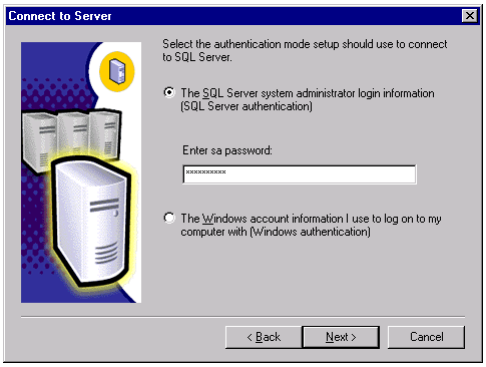

Existing Installation
Select one of the following to change your installation.
Add components to your existing installation
Uninstall your existing installation
Upgrade your existing installation
Upgrade your existing installation to a clustered installation
This option allows you to upgrade your existing installation to a newer version, or to add components if you purchased a SQL Server version with more features.
Help
< Back
Next >
Cancel

10. In the Upgrade window:
    - Select the **Yes, upgrade my SQL Server Tools and data** radio button.
    - Click [Next >].

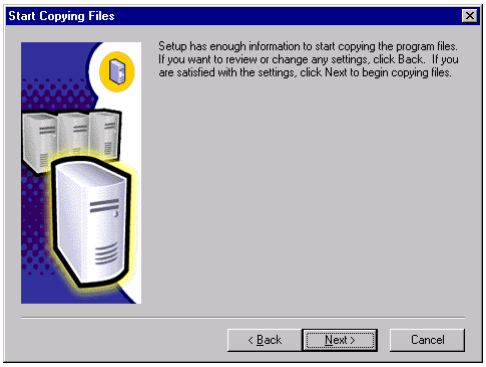

Upgrade
Are you sure you want to upgrade your existing installation to Standard Edition, including data files?
Yes, upgrade my SQL Server Tools and data
This will allow you to upgrade your current installation to a newer release of this version.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the Connect to Server window:
    - Select the **The SQL Server system administrator login information (SQL Server authentication)** radio button.

- Enter SQL Server's sa password.
- Click [Next >].


Connect to Server
Select the authentication mode setup should use to connect to SQL Server.
The SQL Server system administrator login information (SQL Server authentication)
Enter sa password:
The Windows account information I use to log on to my computer with (Windows authentication)
< Back
Next >
Cancel

12. After the password is validated and information for the upgrade is retrieved, the Start Copying Files window is displayed. Click [Next >].

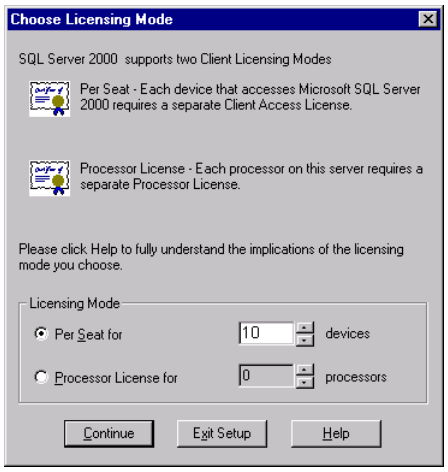

Start Copying Files
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

13. In the Choose Licensing Mode window:
    - Select the **Per Seat for** radio button.
    - Enter the number of **devices**.

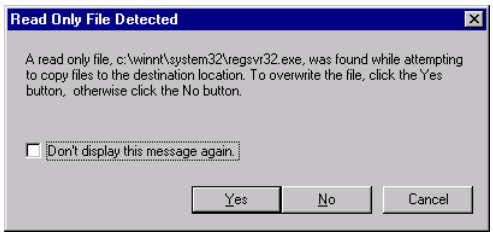
Note: The standard offering of SQL Server by BEST is **Per Seat**. Microsoft offers licensing on a **Per Processor** basis, which may be more cost effective depending on the potential size of your system. Please contact your BEST

system vendor if you have questions regarding which licensing method best suits your needs.

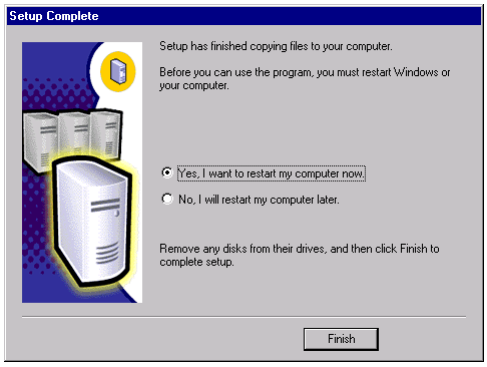
- Click [Continue].


Choose Licensing Mode
SQL Server 2000 supports two Client Licensing Modes
Per Seat - Each device that accesses Microsoft SQL Server 2000 requires a separate Client Access License.
Processor License - Each processor on this server requires a separate Processor License.
Please click Help to fully understand the implications of the licensing mode you choose.
Licensing Mode
Per Seat for
10
devices
Processor License for
0
processors
Continue
Exit Setup
Help

14. Files will begin to be installed. If any read only files are detected, an error message is displayed similar to the illustration. Click [Yes].


Read Only File Detected
A read only file, c:\winnt\system32\regsvr32.exe, was found while attempting to copy files to the destination location. To overwrite the file, click the Yes button, otherwise click the No button.
Don't display this message again.
Yes
No
Cancel

15. The Setup Complete window is displayed.
    - Select the **Yes, I want to restart my computer now.** radio button.
    - Click [Finish].

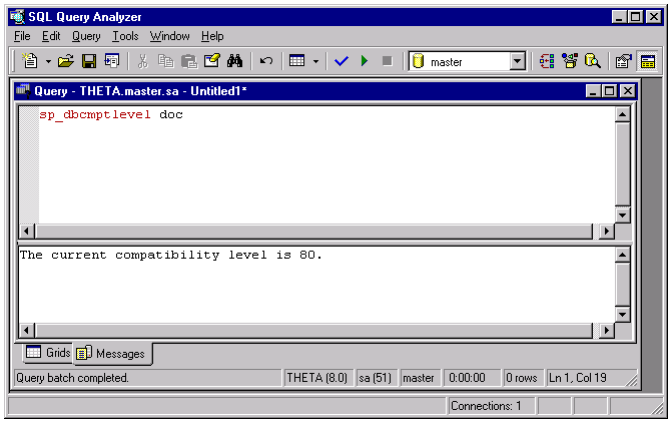

Setup Complete
Setup has finished copying files to your computer.
Before you can use the program, you must restart Windows or your computer.
Yes, I want to restart my computer now.
No, I will restart my computer later.
Remove any disks from their drives, and then click Finish to complete setup.
Finish

Verifying the Database Upgrade

After the upgrade is complete, you should verify that the database upgraded to SQL 2000 (version 8). To do this:

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **Microsoft SQL Server > Query Analyzer**.
2. In the **Connect to SQL Server** window:
   - Click the […] button and select your local SQL server.
   - Select the **Start SQL Server if it is stopped** checkbox.
   - Select the **SQL Server authentication** radio button and enter your SQL Server sa account's **Login name** and **Password**.
   - Click [OK].

3. In the **SQL Query Analyzer** window:
   - In the **Query** pane, type the following:
     `sp_dbcmptlevel` *DBName*
     (Substitute the name of your database for *DBName*)
   - Click <F5> to execute the query.
   - The message that should be displayed is "The current compatibility level is 80." If any other number is displayed, the database upgrade was not successful.


SQL Query Analyzer
File Edit Query Tools Window Help
master
Query - THETA.master.sa - Untitled1*
sp_dbcmptlevel doc
The current compatibility level is 80.
Grids Messages
Query batch completed.
THETA (8.0) sa (51) master 0:00:00 0 rows Ln 1, Col 19
Connections: 1

Chapter 11: Installing & Configuring Oracle 9*i* Server Software

The following overview and instructions are for a standard, default Oracle 9*i* Server installation. If your Oracle installation includes any customization or non-default selections, your procedures will differ from those provided in this chapter. Please make adjustments accordingly. The illustrations shown are for installing Oracle 9*i* Server on Windows 2000 with Service Pack 4. If you are installing a different version of Oracle or are installing Oracle on Windows XP Professional, your windows may be different.

Note: As a general warning, when installing and configuring Oracle 9*i* do not close any Oracle windows while a program is running. Doing so can result in configuration errors and loss of data. Instead, utilize the Oracle close or cancel buttons.

Oracle 9i Server Software Configuration Overview

The following steps are necessary to install and configure Oracle Server for use with B.A.S.I.S.:

1. Install Oracle 9*i* (For more information, refer to Step 1: Install Oracle 9i Server Software on page 135.)
   Key points:
   a. Install Oracle 9*i* Server from the Oracle 9*i* Server CD-ROM.
   b. Use the default Oracle Home location.
   c. Allow Oracle to make the path modifications in the registry.
   d. Select the “Enterprise Edition (1.76GB)” installation type.
   e. Select “Software Only” for the type of database to install.
2. Configure the BEST database. (For more information, refer to Step 2: Configure the BEST Database on page 137.)
   - In Oracle Database Configuration Assistant select “Create a database.”
   - Select the “New Database” template.
   - Specify the Global Database Name.
   - Select dedicated server mode.
   - Deselect every database feature including the additional database configuration features.
   - On the Memory tab, select “Custom” and use the default values for shared pool, buffer cache, and java pool.
   - Rename the database storage files and expand their sizes to match the table below.

Notes: To change the database size, double-click the size field, enter the number of M Bytes, and click [OK].

You can specify other names in the **Name** field. If you do, you must set the defDataSpace variable in the **LenelUser.ora** file to the new Name. (For more information, refer to Step 6: Create the Lenel User on page 155.)

Old Tablespace names	New Tablespace names	Size (MB)
USERS	LENEL_DATA	50
INDX	LENEL_INDEX	10
TEMP	LENEL_TEMP	50
SYSTEM	SYSTEM	50
TOOLS	TOOLS	10
UNDOTBS	UNDOTBS	50

3. Run the Net Configuration Assistant. (For more information, refer to Step 3: Run the Net Configuration Assistant on page 146.) Type `LENEL` as the New Service Name.

Note: The Service Name is not case-sensitive.

4. Verify that the system works. (For more information, refer to Step 4: Verify the System is Working on page 152.)
5. Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. (For more information, refer to Step 5: Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 154.) ***DO NOT RUN DATABASE SETUP YET!***
6. Create the Lenel user by running the **LenelUser.ora** script, located in **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\DBSetup\New**. (For more information, refer to Step 6: Create the Lenel User on page 155.)
   a. In **SQL Worksheet**, log in using the **SYSTEM** account.

Note: You must be logged in as **SYSTEM** to run the script.

   b. Load the **LenelUser.ora** script into SQL Worksheet and run it.

Note: Remember that if you changed the name of the LENEL_DATA and/or LENEL_TEMP data spaces, you must change the defDataSpace and

defTempSpace variables in the **LenelUser.ora** script to the appropriate tablespace names before running the script.

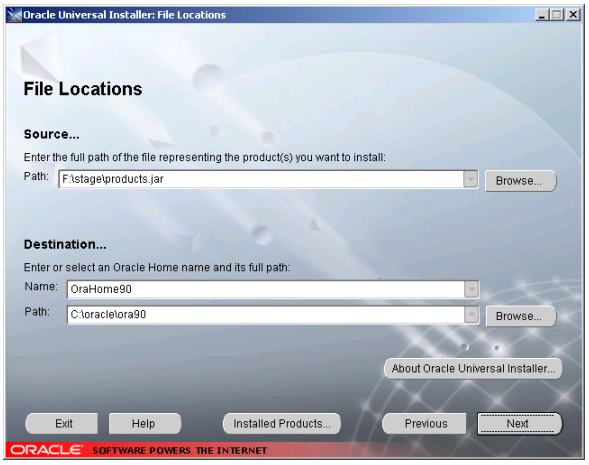
7. Run Database Setup. (For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.)

Oracle 9i Server Software Installation and Configuration

Step 1: Install Oracle 9*i* Server Software

1. Insert the Oracle 9*i* Server CD-ROM in your CD-ROM drive to launch the Autorun program. Click [Install/Deinstall Products].
2. The Welcome window is displayed. Click [Next].
3. The File Locations window is displayed.
   a. Use the default settings or specify a different destination file name and location.
   b. Click [Next].

Note: **Source** is the location of your source files (on your CD-ROM drive). **Destination** is the location where you want to install the source files.



4. The Available Products window is displayed.
   a. Verify that the **Oracle9i Database 9.0.1.1.1** radio button is selected.
   b. Click [Next].

Note: Select **Oracle9i 9.0.1.1.1** if you will be accessing the database from a different PC. **Select Oracle9i Management** and **Integration 9.0.1.0.1** only if you want to back up the database.

Oracle Universal Installer: Available Products
Available Products
Select a product to install.
Oracle9i Database 9.0.1.1.1
Installs an optional pre-configured starter database, product options, management tools, networking services, utilities and basic client software for an Oracle database server.
Oracle9i Client 9.0.1.1.1
Installs enterprise management tools, networking services, utilities, development tools and precompilers and basic client software.
Oracle9i Management and Integration 9.0.1.0.1
Installs the management server, management tools, Oracle Internet Directory, Oracle Integration Server, networking services, utilities and basic client software.
Product Languages...
Exit
Help
Installed Products...
Previous
Next
ORACLE SOFTWARE POWERS THE INTERNET

5. The Installation Types window is displayed.
   a. Verify the **Enterprise Edition (1.76 GB)** radio button is selected.
   b. Click [Next].
6. The Database Configuration window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Software Only** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].

Note: By selecting the Software Only option, the Oracle Configuration assistant must be manually started after installation is complete.

7. The Summary window is displayed.
   a. Review the space requirements to make sure you have enough available disk space (1.50 GB) on the drive you will install Oracle on.
   b. Click [Install].

Note: The installation process takes about 30 minutes. You will be prompted to insert Oracle9i disk2 and disk3 into the disk drive during the installation process.

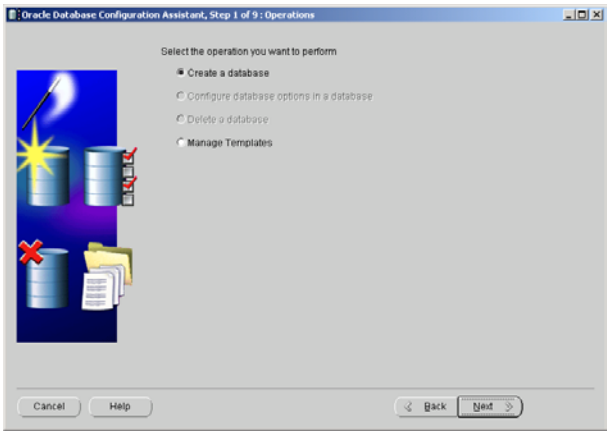
8. The End of Installation window is displayed. Click [Exit].
9. A message box is displayed. Click [Yes] to exit.

Step 2: Configure the BEST Database

Use this procedure only after you install Oracle 9*i*.

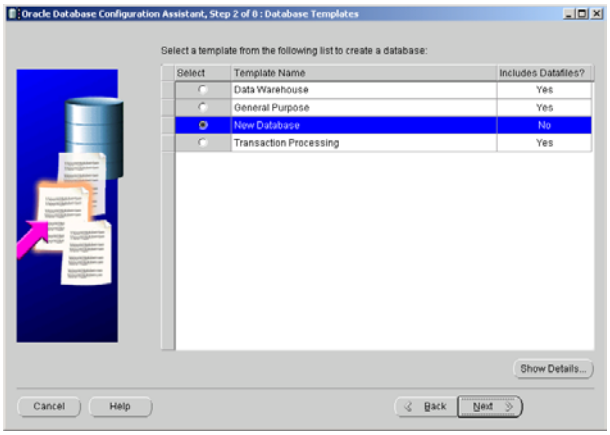
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Oracle - OraHome92 > Configuration and Migration Tools > Database Configuration Assistant**. This launches the Oracle Database Configuration Assistant.
2. The Welcome window is displayed. Click [Next].
3. The Operations window is displayed.
   a. Verify the **Create a database** radio button is selected.
   b. Click [Next].

Note: The **Change database configuration** and **Delete a database** options are enabled only if you have an existing database.



4. The Database Templates window is displayed.
   a. Select the **New Database** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].

Note: Selecting a template that does not include datafiles gives you full control to specify and change every database parameter.

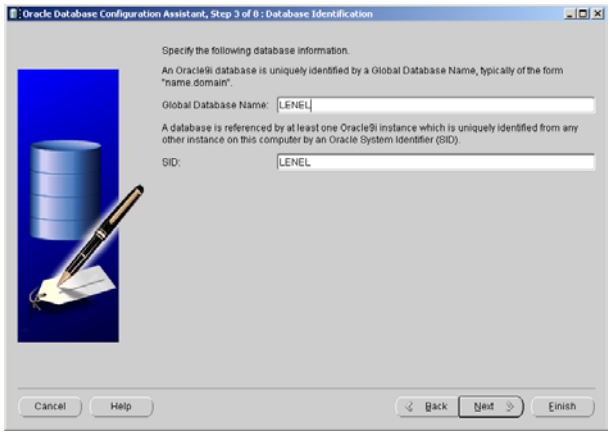


5. Specify a Global Database Name.
   a. Type `LENEL` in the **Global Database Name** field.

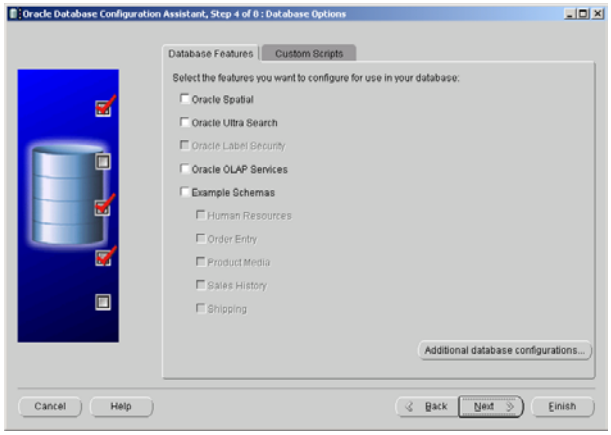
Note: The Global Database Name is not case-sensitive.

   b. Click [Next].

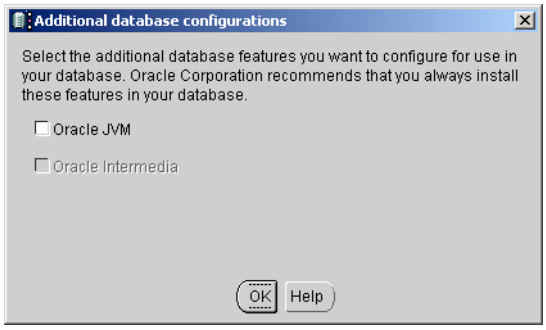
Note: The Oracle System Identifier (SID) automatically populates.


Oracle Database Configuration Assistant, Step 3 of 0 : Database Identification
Specify the following database information.
An Oracle9i database is uniquely identified by a Global Database Name, typically of the form "name.domain".
Global Database Name:
LENEL
A database is referenced by at least one Oracle9i instance which is uniquely identified from any other instance on this computer by an Oracle System Identifier (SID).
SID:
LENEL
Cancel
Help
Back
Next
Finish

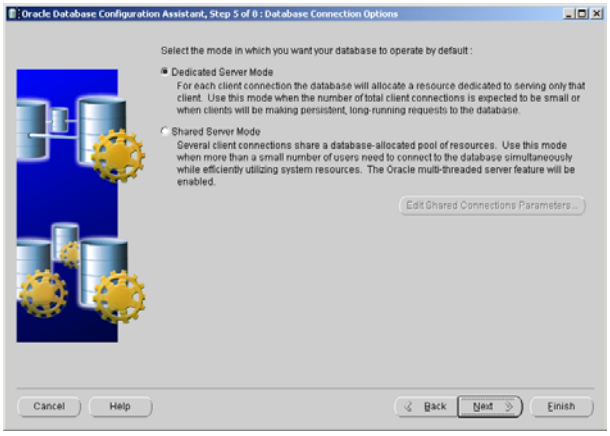
6. The Oracle Database Assistant continues. Deselect every checkbox.



7. Click [Yes] each time you are prompted to delete the tablespace associated with a database feature you deselected.
8. Click [Additional database configurations].
9. The Additional database configurations window is displayed. Deselect both checkboxes.


Additional database configurations
Select the additional database features you want to configure for use in your database. Oracle Corporation recommends that you always install these features in your database.
Oracle JVM
Oracle Intermedia
OK
Help

10. Confirm that you want to delete the tablespace.
    a. Click [Yes].
    b. Click [OK].
11. The Oracle Database Assistant continues. Click [Next].
12. The Database Connection Options window is displayed.
    a. Verify the **Dedicated Server Mode** radio button is selected.
    b. Click [Next].

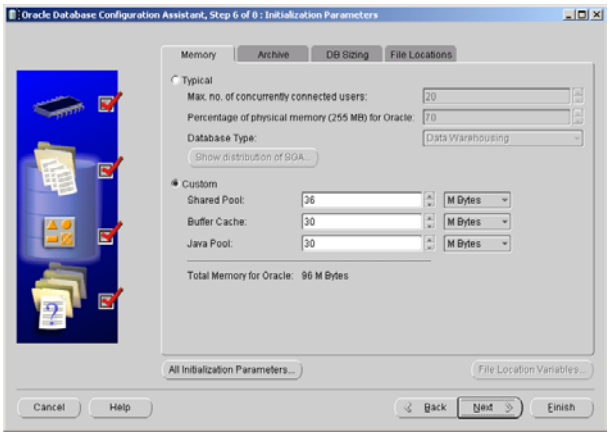

Oracle Database Configuration Assistant, Step 5 of 8 : Database Connection Options
Select the mode in which you want your database to operate by default :
Dedicated Server Mode
For each client connection the database will allocate a resource dedicated to serving only that client. Use this mode when the number of total client connections is expected to be small or when clients will be making persistent, long-running requests to the database.
Shared Server Mode
Several client connections share a database-allocated pool of resources. Use this mode when more than a small number of users need to connect to the database simultaneously while efficiently utilizing system resources. The Oracle multi-threaded server feature will be enabled.
Edit Shared Connections Parameters...
Cancel
Help
Back
Next
Finish

13. The Installation Parameters window is displayed.
    a. Verify the **Custom** radio button is selected.
    b. Verify the MB values match the table below.

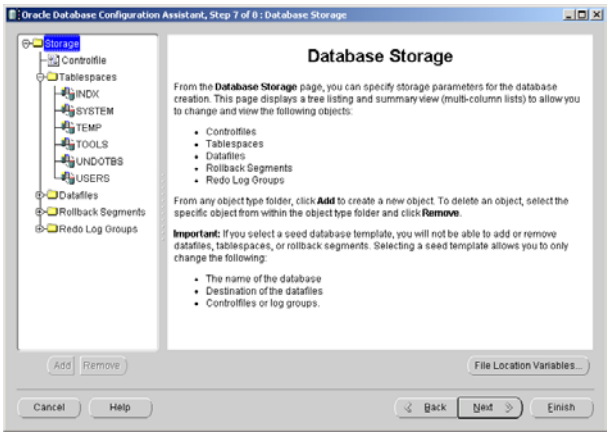
Custom parameters	MB
Shared Pool	36
Buffer Cache	30
Java Pool	30

Note: The table displays the minimum MB values. Higher values may be entered.

c. Click [Next].



14. The Database Storage window is displayed.
    a. Expand the tablespace tree.
    b. Highlight any tablespace name.


Oracle Database Configuration Assistant, Step 7 of 8 : Database Storage
Storage
Controlfile
Tablespaces
INDX
SYSTEM
TEMP
TOOLS
UNDOTBS
USERS
Datafiles
Rollback Segments
Redo Log Groups
Database Storage
From the Database Storage page, you can specify storage parameters for the database creation. This page displays a tree listing and summary view (multi-column lists) to allow you to change and view the following objects:
Controlfiles
Tablespaces
Datafiles
Rollback Segments
Redo Log Groups
From any object type folder, click Add to create a new object. To delete an object, select the specific object from within the object type folder and click Remove.
Important: If you select a seed database template, you will not be able to add or remove datafiles, tablespaces, or rollback segments. Selecting a seed template allows you to only change the following:
The name of the database
Destination of the datafiles
Controlfiles or log groups.
Add
Remove
File Location Variables...
Cancel
Help
Back
Next
Finish

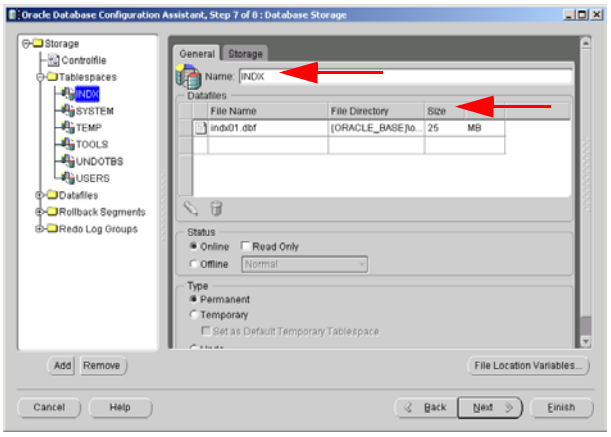
15. Rename the tablespaces and specify a reasonable size for holding the B.A.S.I.S. information.
    a. Enter the new tablespace name in the **Name** field.
    b. Double-click the **Size** field.

    The following table suggests appropriate tablespace names and minimum sizes.

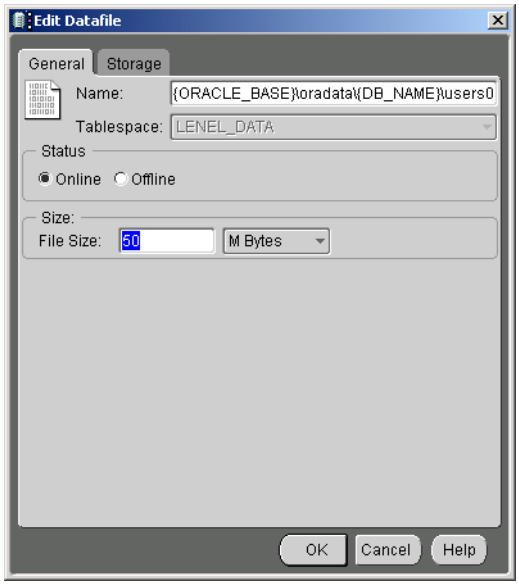
Old Tablespace names	New Tablespace names	New size (MB)
USERS	LENEL_DATA	50

Old Tablespace names	New Tablespace names	New size (MB)
INDX	LENEL_INDEX	50
TEMP	LENEL_TEMP	50
SYSTEM	SYSTEM	50
TOOLS	TOOLS	10
UNDOTBS	UNDOTBS	50

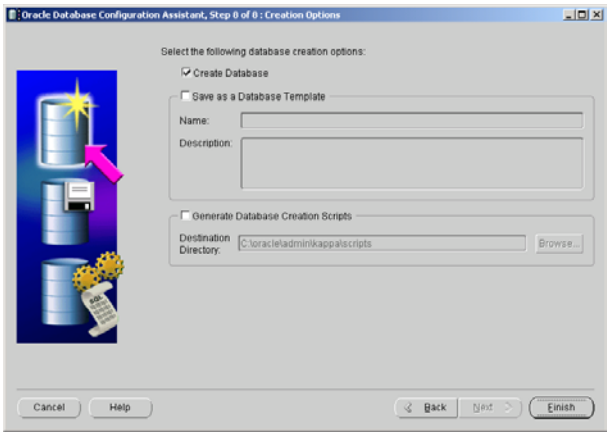
Note: You can specify other names in the **Name** field. If you do, you must set the **defDataSpace** variable in the **LenelUser.ora** file to the new **Name**. (For more information, refer to Step 6: Create the Lenel User on page 155.)



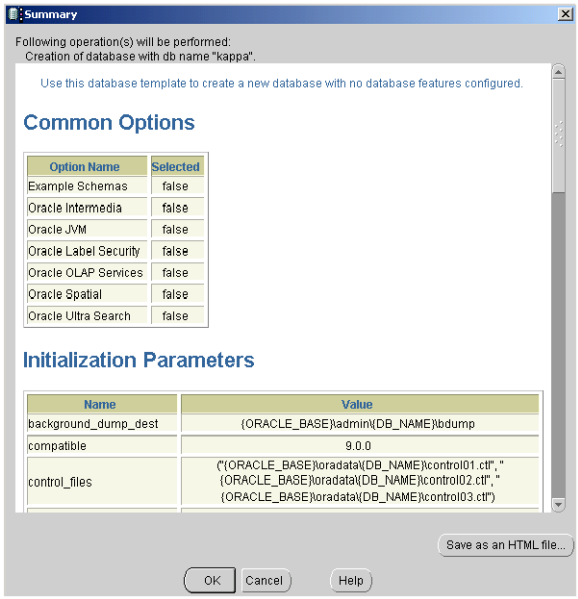
16. When you double-click the **Size** field, the Edit Datafile window is displayed. To continue changing the tablespace size:
    a. Enter the new size.
    b. Click [OK].



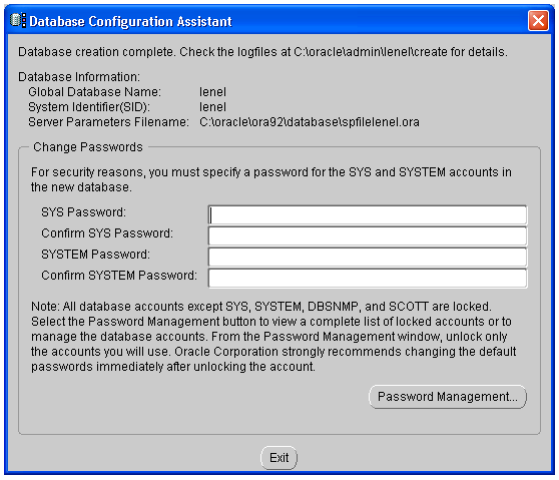
17. The Create Options window is displayed.
    a. Verify the Create Database checkbox is selected.
    b. Click [Finish].



18. The Summary window is displayed. Click [OK].



19. The Database Configuration Assistant window is displayed.


Database Configuration Assistant
Database creation complete. Check the logfiles at C:\oracle\admin\lenel\create for details.
Database Information:
Global Database Name: lenel
System Identifier(SID): lenel
Server Parameters Filename: C:\oracle\ora92\database\spfilelenel.ora
Change Passwords
For security reasons, you must specify a password for the SYS and SYSTEM accounts in the new database.
SYS Password:
Confirm SYS Password:
SYSTEM Password:
Confirm SYSTEM Password:
Note: All database accounts except SYS, SYSTEM, DBSNMP, and SCOTT are locked. Select the Password Management button to view a complete list of locked accounts or to manage the database accounts. From the Password Management window, unlock only the accounts you will use. Oracle Corporation strongly recommends changing the default passwords immediately after unlocking the account.
Password Management...
Exit

a. In the **SYS Password** field, type a new password.

b. In the **Confirm SYS Password** field, type the password again.

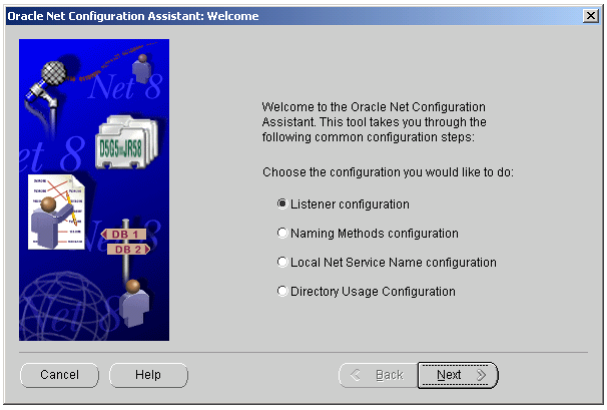
c. In the **SYSTEM Password** field, type a new password.

d. In the **Confirm SYSTEM Password** field, type the password again.

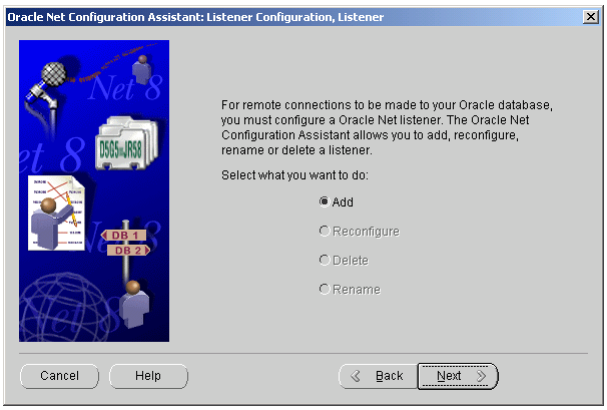
e. Click [Exit], and the database will be created.

Step 3: Run the Net Configuration Assistant

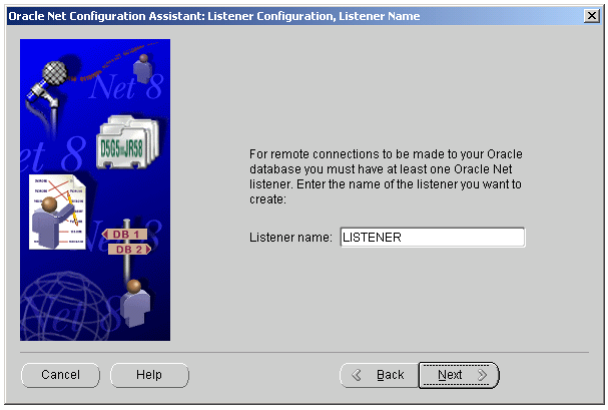
1. Click the Start button, then select **Programs** > **Oracle - OraHome92** > **Configuration and Migration Tools** > **Net Configuration Assistant**. This launches the Net Configuration Assistant.
2. The Net Configuration Assistant Welcome window is displayed.
   a. Verify the **Listener configuration** radio button is selected.
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Welcome
Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant. This tool takes you through the following common configuration steps:
Choose the configuration you would like to do:
Listener configuration
Naming Methods configuration
Local Net Service Name configuration
Directory Usage Configuration
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

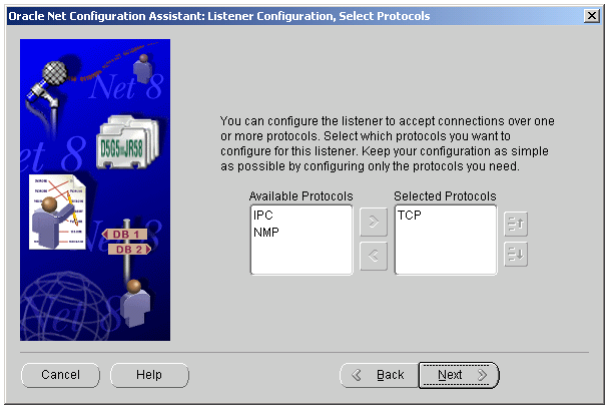
3. Add an Oracle Net listener.
   a. Select the **Add** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Listener Configuration, Listener
For remote connections to be made to your Oracle database, you must configure a Oracle Net listener. The Oracle Net Configuration Assistant allows you to add, reconfigure, rename or delete a listener.
Select what you want to do:
Add
Reconfigure
Delete
Rename
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

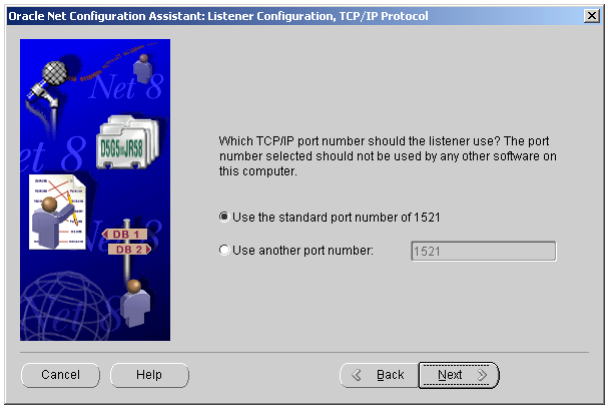
4. The Listener Name window is displayed.
   a. Verify the **Listener name** is “LISTENER.”
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Listener Configuration, Listener Name
For remote connections to be made to your Oracle database you must have at least one Oracle Net listener. Enter the name of the listener you want to create:
Listener name:
LISTENER
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

5. The Select Protocols window is displayed.
   a. Verify **TCP** is a selected protocol.
   b. Click [Next].

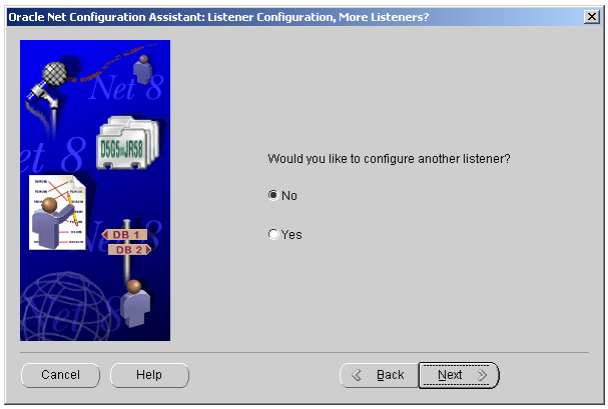

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Listener Configuration, Select Protocols
You can configure the listener to accept connections over one or more protocols. Select which protocols you want to configure for this listener. Keep your configuration as simple as possible by configuring only the protocols you need.
Available Protocols
Selected Protocols
IPC
NMP
TCP
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

6. The TCP/IP Protocol window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Use the standard port number of 1521** radio option.
   b. Click [Next].

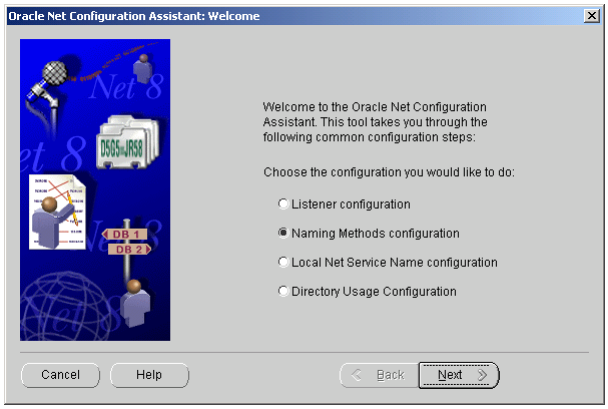

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Listener Configuration, TCP/IP Protocol
Which TCP/IP port number should the listener use? The port number selected should not be used by any other software on this computer.
Use the standard port number of 1521
Use another port number:
1521
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

7. The More Listeners window is displayed.
   a. Verify the **No** radio button is selected.

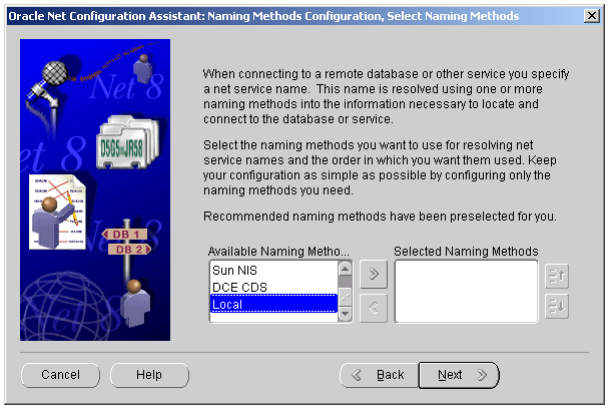
b. Click [Next].



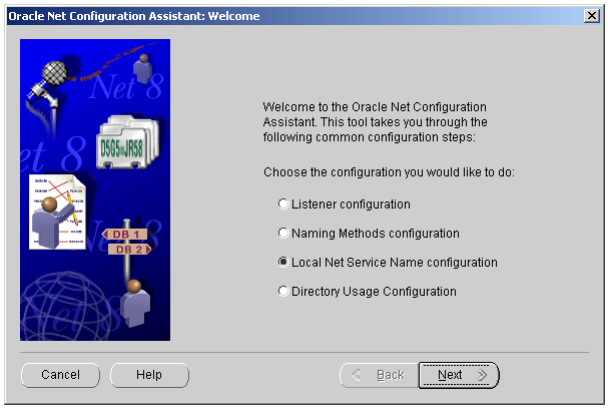
8. The Net Configuration Assistant Welcome window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Naming Methods configuration** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Welcome
Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant. This tool takes you through the following common configuration steps:
Choose the configuration you would like to do:
Listener configuration
Naming Methods configuration
Local Net Service Name configuration
Directory Usage Configuration
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

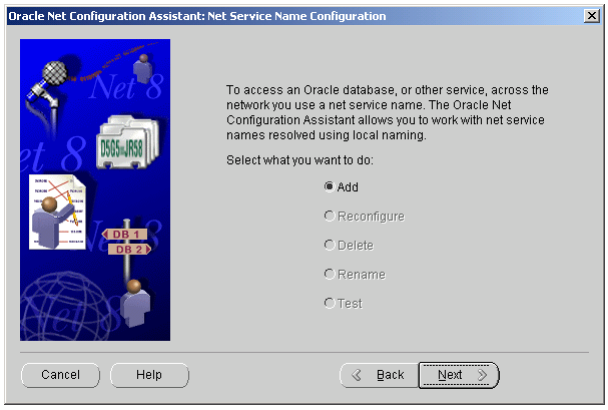
9. The Select Naming Methods window is displayed.
   a. In the **Available Naming Methods** drop-down list select “Local.”
   b. Click the right arrow button .
   c. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Naming Methods Configuration, Select Naming Methods
When connecting to a remote database or other service you specify a net service name. This name is resolved using one or more naming methods into the information necessary to locate and connect to the database or service.
Select the naming methods you want to use for resolving net service names and the order in which you want them used. Keep your configuration as simple as possible by configuring only the naming methods you need.
Recommended naming methods have been preselected for you.
Available Naming Metho...
Selected Naming Methods
Sun NIS
DCE CDS
Local
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

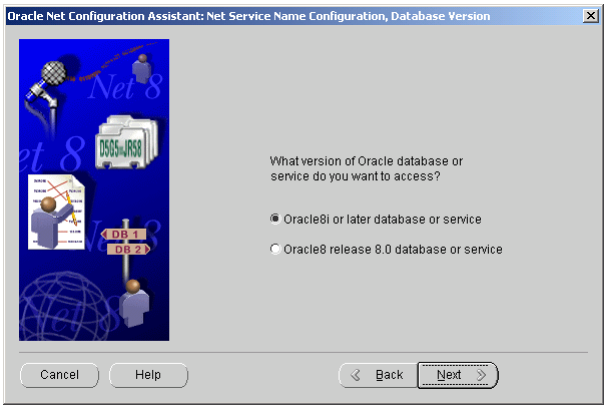
10. The Naming Methods Configuration Done window is displayed. Click [Next].
11. The Net Configuration Assistant Welcome window is displayed.
    a. Select the **Local Net Service Name** configuration radio button.
    b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Welcome
Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant. This tool takes you through the following common configuration steps:
Choose the configuration you would like to do:
Listener configuration
Naming Methods configuration
Local Net Service Name configuration
Directory Usage Configuration
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

12. The Net Service Name Configuration window is displayed.
    a. Select the **Add** radio button.
    b. Click [Next].

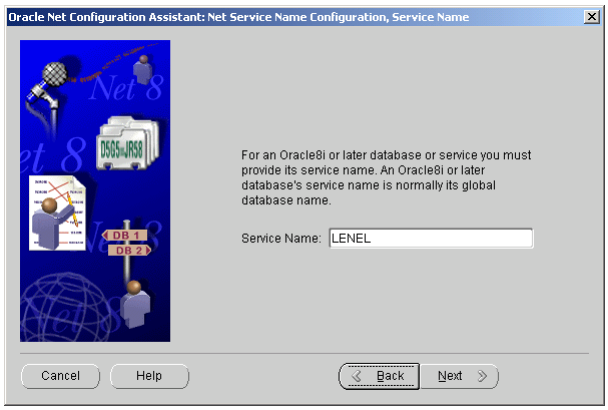

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration
To access an Oracle database, or other service, across the network you use a net service name. The Oracle Net Configuration Assistant allows you to work with net service names resolved using local naming.
Select what you want to do:
Add
Reconfigure
Delete
Rename
Test
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

13. The Database Version window is displayed.
    a. Select the **Oracle8i or later database or service** radio button.
    b. Click [Next].

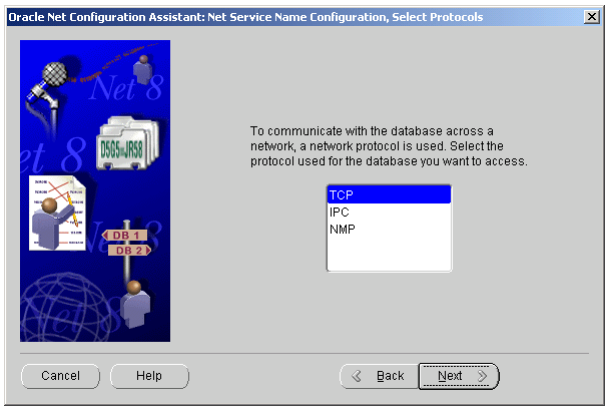

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Database Version
What version of Oracle database or service do you want to access?
Oracle8i or later database or service
Oracle8 release 8.0 database or service
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

14. Identify the service name for the database.
    a. Type `LENEL` in the **Service Name** field.
    b. Click [Next].

Note: The Service Name is not case-sensitive.

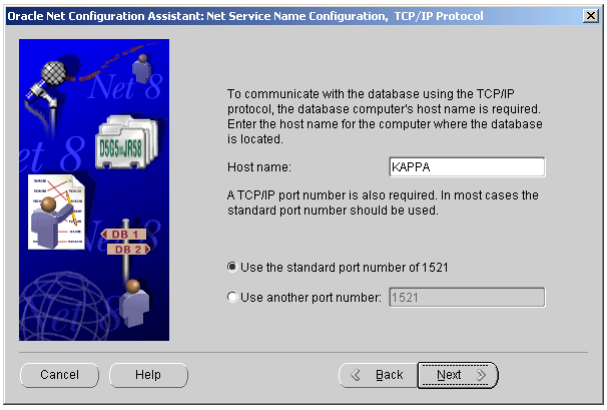

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Service Name
For an Oracle8i or later database or service you must provide its service name. An Oracle8i or later database's service name is normally its global database name.
Service Name: LENEL
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

15. The Select Protocols window is displayed.
    a. Verify **TCP** is highlighted.
    b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Select Protocols
To communicate with the database across a network, a network protocol is used. Select the protocol used for the database you want to access.
TCP
IPC
NMP
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

16. The TCP/IP Protocol window is displayed.
    a. Enter the host name in the **Host name** field.
    b. Select the **Use the standard port number of 1521** radio button.
    c. Click [Next].

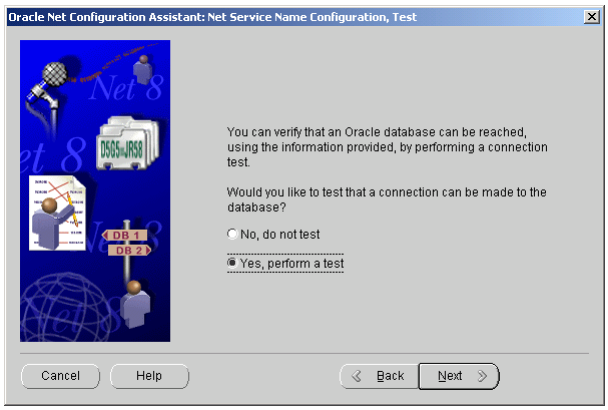
Note: The host name is not case-sensitive.


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, TCP/IP Protocol
To communicate with the database using the TCP/IP protocol, the database computer's host name is required. Enter the host name for the computer where the database is located.
Host name:
KAPPA
A TCP/IP port number is also required. In most cases the standard port number should be used.
Use the standard port number of 1521
Use another port number:
1521
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

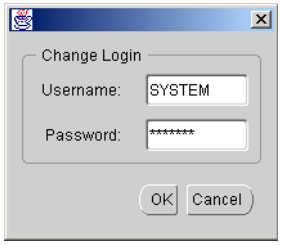
Step 4: Verify the System is Working

1. The Test window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Yes, perform a test** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].

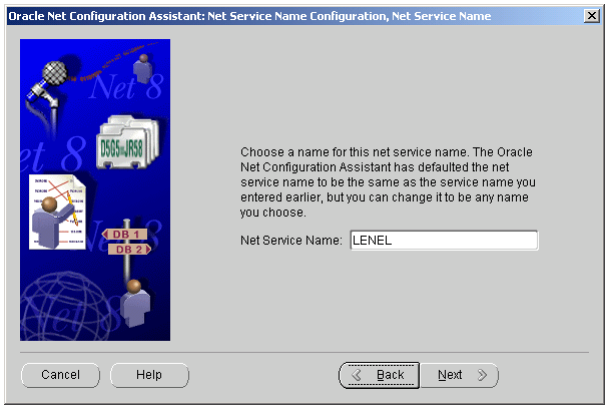
Note: It is strongly suggested to perform a connection test.


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Test
You can verify that an Oracle database can be reached, using the information provided, by performing a connection test.
Would you like to test that a connection can be made to the database?
No, do not test
Yes, perform a test
DB 1
DB 2
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

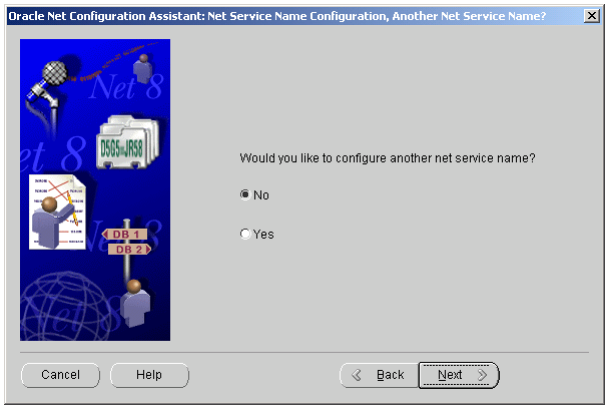
2. Click [Change Login].
3. The Change Login window is displayed.
   a. In the **Username** field, type the SYSTEM username. (This is the same username that you set the password for in step c on page 145.)
   b. In the **Password** field, type the SYSTEM password that you entered in step d on page 145.
   c. Click [OK].



4. After successfully testing the service click [Next].
5. The Net Service Name window is displayed.
   a. Verify the Net Service Name is “LENEL.”
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Net Service Name
Choose a name for this net service name. The Oracle Net Configuration Assistant has defaulted the net service name to be the same as the service name you entered earlier, but you can change it to be any name you choose.
Net Service Name: LENEL
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

6. The Net Service Name Configuration wizard continues.
   a. Select the **No** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].
   c. Click [Finish].



Step 5: Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition

Install the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition software next. The installation program installs the Microsoft ODBC for Oracle. ***DO NOT RUN DATABASE SETUP YET!***

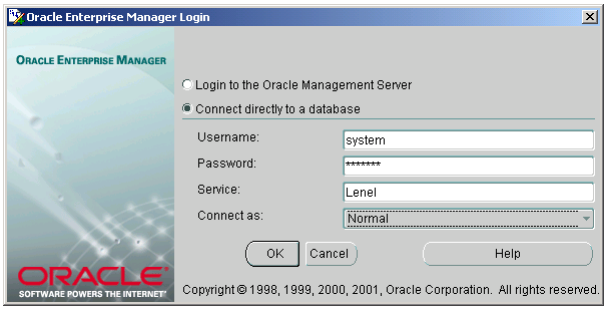
Step 6: Create the Lenel User

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Oracle - OraHome92 > Database Administrator > SQLPlus Worksheet**.
2. Log in using the **system** account.

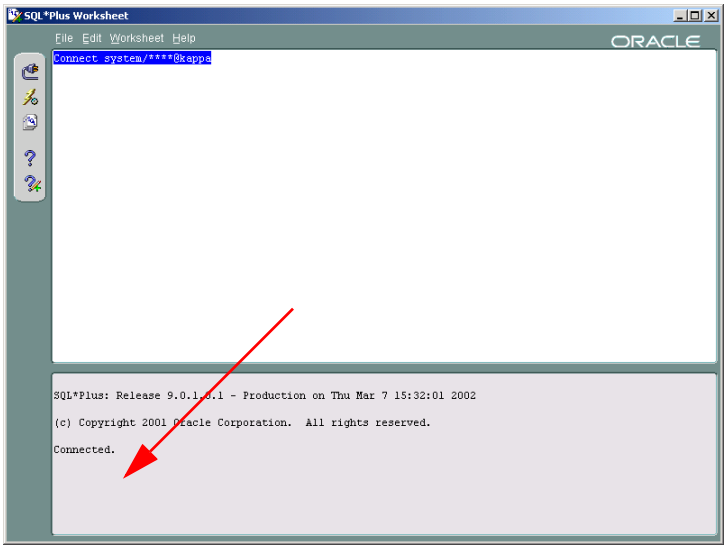
Important: You must be logged in as SYSTEM to run the script!

---

   a. In the **Username** field, type the SYSTEM username. (This is the same username that you set the password for in step c on page 145.)
   b. In the **Password** field, type the SYSTEM password that you entered in step d on page 145.
   c. Verify "Normal" is selected for **Connect As**.
   d. Click [OK].



3. Verify Oracle connects properly. You should see "Connected" in the display box, as shown.


SQL*Plus Worksheet
File Edit Worksheet Help
ORACLE
Connect system/****@kappa
SQL*Plus: Release 9.0.1.3.1 - Production on Thu Mar 7 15:32:01 2002
(c) Copyright 2001 Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.
Connected.

4. Run the script.

Note: Remember that if you changed the name of the LENEL_DATA and/or LENEL_TEMP data spaces, you must change the defDataSpace and defTempSpace variables in the **LenelUser.ora** script to the appropriate tablespace names before running the script.

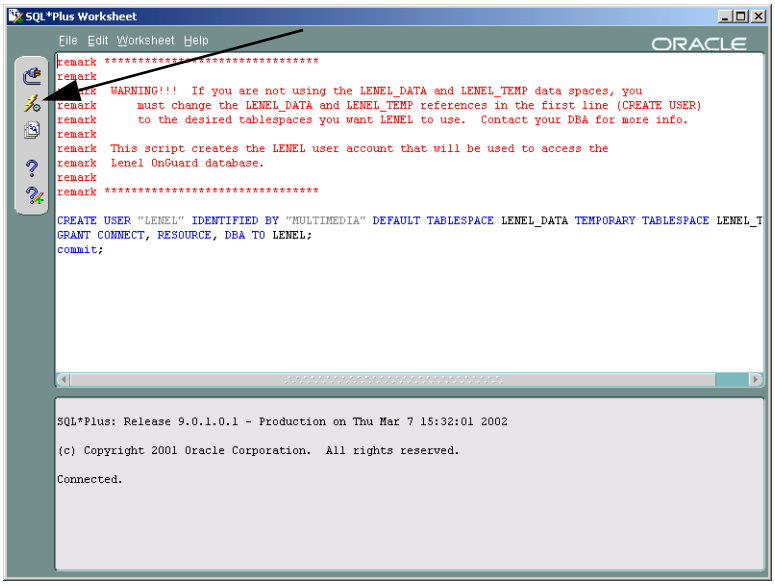
a. Select the **File > Open** menu option. The script loads into Oracle SQLPlus Worksheet.

b. Navigate to **C:\ Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\DBSetup\New**.

c. Select **LenelUser.ora**.

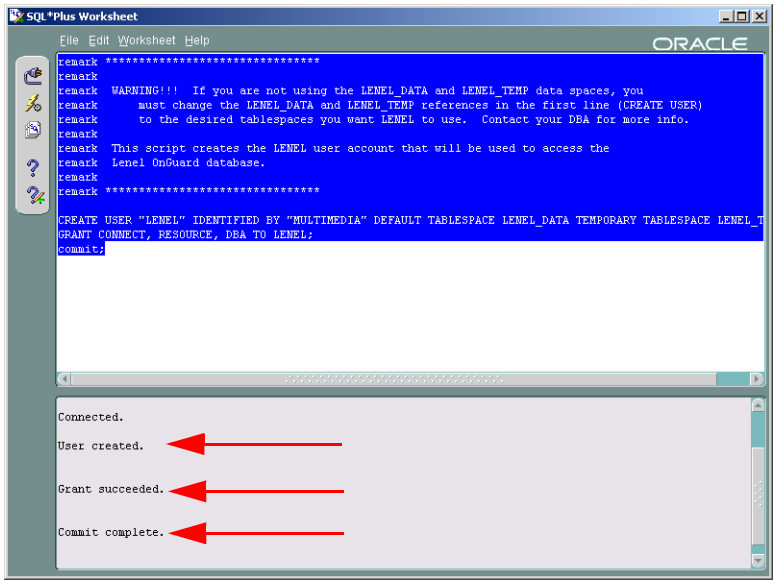
Note: If the file is not displayed, type "*.ora" in the **Filename** field and click [Open].

d. Click [Open]. Click the button to run the script.


SQL*Plus Worksheet
File Edit Worksheet Help
ORACLE
remark **********
remark
remark WARNING!!! If you are not using the LENEL_DATA and LENEL_TEMP data spaces, you
remark must change the LENEL_DATA and LENEL_TEMP references in the first line (CREATE USER)
remark to the desired tablespaces you want LENEL to use. Contact your DBA for more info.
remark
remark This script creates the LENEL user account that will be used to access the
remark Lenel OnGuard database.
remark
remark **********
CREATE USER "LENEL" IDENTIFIED BY "MULTIMEDIA" DEFAULT TABLESPACE LENEL_DATA TEMPORARY TABLESPACE LENEL_T
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE, DBA TO LENEL;
commit;
SQL*Plus: Release 9.0.1.0.1 - Production on Thu Mar 7 15:32:01 2002
(c) Copyright 2001 Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.
Connected.

5. Verify there were no errors. You should see the following text: "User created."

"Grant succeeded."
"Commit complete."


SQL*Plus Worksheet
File Edit Worksheet Help
ORACLE
remark **********
remark
remark WARNING!!! If you are not using the LENEL_DATA and LENEL_TEMP data spaces, you
remark must change the LENEL_DATA and LENEL_TEMP references in the first line (CREATE USER)
remark to the desired tablespaces you want LENEL to use. Contact your DBA for more info.
remark
remark This script creates the LENEL user account that will be used to access the
remark Lenel OnGuard database.
remark
remark **********
CREATE USER "LENEL" IDENTIFIED BY "MULTIMEDIA" DEFAULT TABLESPACE LENEL_DATA TEMPORARY TABLESPACE LENEL_T
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE, DBA TO LENEL;
commit;
Connected.
User created.
Grant succeeded.
Commit complete.

Step 7: Run Database Setup

After you install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition and you create the default Lenel user you must run Database Setup. (For more information, refer to Appendix C: The Database Setup Program on page 213.)

Chapter 12: Configuring Oracle 9*i* Client Software

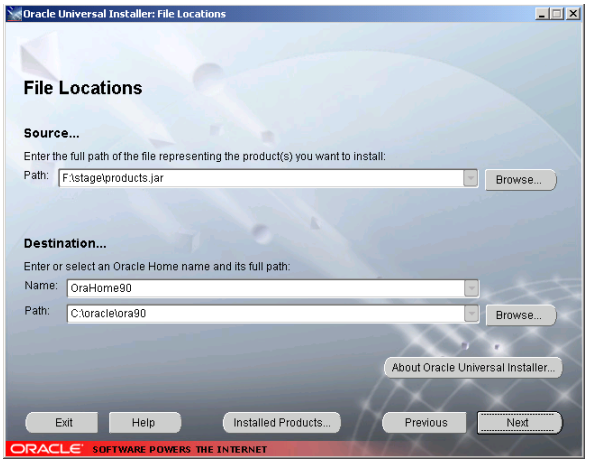
Oracle 9i Client Installation and Configuration

Step 1: Install Oracle 9i

Note: Microsoft MDAC 2.5 or newer must be installed on the server and the client. If it is not, the B.A.S.I.S. client will not be able to successfully login to the Oracle database. For systems with MDAC installed, the B.A.S.I.S. installation will not modify MDAC. For systems without MDAC installed, B.A.S.I.S. will install MDAC. Refer to the **B.A.S.I.S. ET release notes.rtf** file on the root of the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD to determine which version of MDAC is installed with the version of B.A.S.I.S. you are installing.

1. Insert the Oracle 9*i* Server CD-ROM in your CD-ROM drive. This will launch the Autorun program.
2. Click [Install/Deinstall Products].
3. Click [Next].
4. Use the default settings or specify a different destination file name and location. Click [Next].

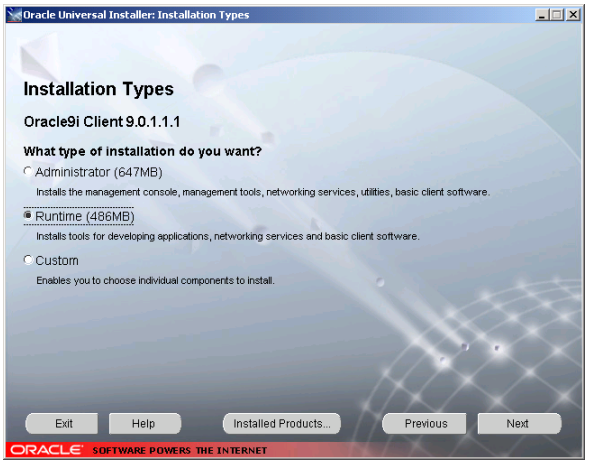
Note: **Source** is the location of your source files (on your Compact Disk drive). **Destination** is where you want to install the source files.



5. The Available Products window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Oracle9i Client 9.0.1.1.1** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].

Oracle Universal Installer: Available Products
Available Products
Select a product to install.
Oracle9i Database 9.0.1.1.1
Installs an optional pre-configured starter database, product options, management tools, networking services, utilities and basic client software for an Oracle database server.
Oracle9i Client 9.0.1.1.1
Installs enterprise management tools, networking services, utilities, development tools and precompilers and basic client software.
Oracle9i Management and Integration 9.0.1.0.1
Installs the management server, management tools, Oracle Internet Directory, Oracle Integration Server, networking services, utilities and basic client software.
Product Languages...
Exit
Help
Installed Products...
Previous
Next
ORACLE SOFTWARE POWERS THE INTERNET

6. The Installation Types window is displayed.
   a. Select the **Runtime (486MB)** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].


Oracle Universal Installer: Installation Types
Installation Types
Oracle9i Client 9.0.1.1.1
What type of installation do you want?
Administrator (647MB)
Installs the management console, management tools, networking services, utilities, basic client software.
Runtime (486MB)
Installs tools for developing applications, networking services and basic client software.
Custom
Enables you to choose individual components to install.
Exit
Help
Installed Products...
Previous
Next
ORACLE SOFTWARE POWERS THE INTERNET

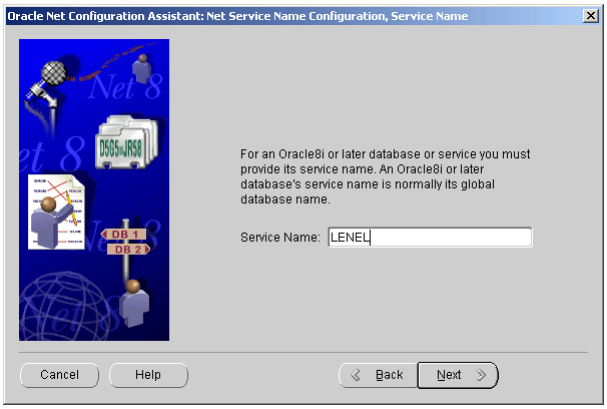
7. Review the summary and click [Install].

Note: The installation process takes several minutes. You will be prompted to insert Oracle9*i* disk2 into the disk drive during the installation process.

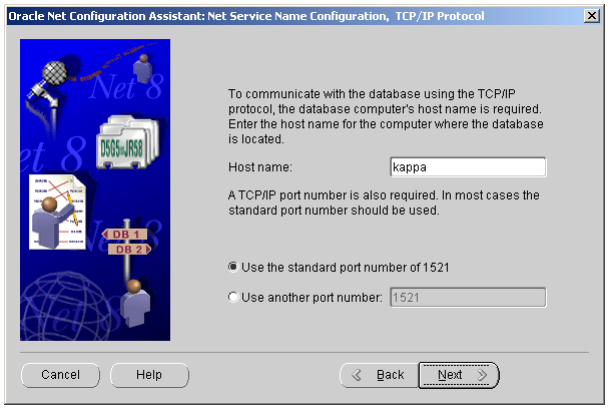
8. After the installation is complete, click [Next].
9. The Net Configuration Assistant Welcome window is displayed.
   a. Select the **No, I will create net service names myself. The Assistant will help me create one now.** radio button.
   b. Click [Next].

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Welcome
Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant. To access a database, or other service, across the network, you use a net service name. You can either create net service names yourself, or you can use service names already available through a directory service. Oracle recommends using a directory service if one is available for this purpose.
Yes, I want to use a directory service. There is one available for this purpose.
No, I will create net service names myself. The Assistant will help me create one now.
For more information press Help.
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

10. Verify the **Oracle8i or later database or service** radio button is selected. Click [Next].
11. In the **Service Name** field, enter the name of the service running on the Oracle server and click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Service Name
For an Oracle8i or later database or service you must provide its service name. An Oracle8i or later database's service name is normally its global database name.
Service Name:
LENEL
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

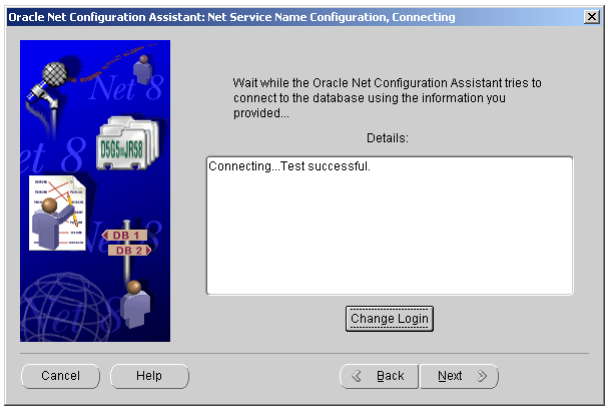
12. Verify that **TCP** is highlighted.
13. Click [Next].
14. In the **Host name** field, type the name of the computer that Oracle is installed on, and then click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, TCP/IP Protocol
To communicate with the database using the TCP/IP protocol, the database computer's host name is required. Enter the host name for the computer where the database is located.
Host name:
kappa
A TCP/IP port number is also required. In most cases the standard port number should be used.
Use the standard port number of 1521
Use another port number:
1521
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

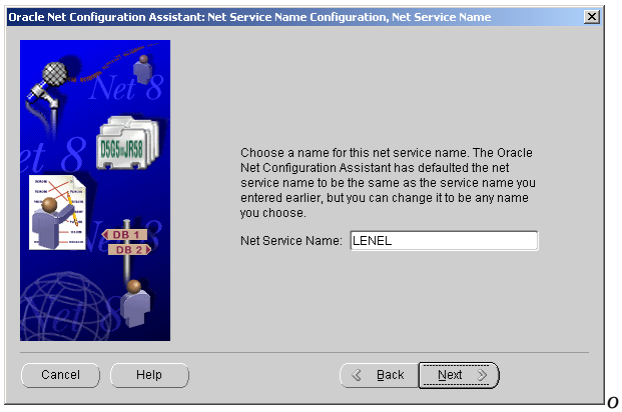
15. Select the **Yes, perform a test** radio button.
16. Click [Next].
17. The [Change Login] button window is displayed.
    a. Click [Change Login].
    b. In the **Username** field, type `SYSTEM`.
    c. In the **Password** field, type `MANAGER`.
    d. Click [OK].

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Connecting
Wait while the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant tries to connect to the database using the information you provided...
Details:
Connecting...ORA-01017: invalid username/password; logon denied
The test did not succeed.
Some of the information you provided may be incorrect.
Press Back to review the information provided for net service name, or Change Login to change username.
Change Login
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

18. After successfully testing the service, click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Connecting
Wait while the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant tries to connect to the database using the information you provided...
Details:
Connecting...Test successful.
Change Login
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

19. Verify the **Net Service Name** is “LENEL”, and then click [Next].


Oracle Net Configuration Assistant: Net Service Name Configuration, Net Service Name
Choose a name for this net service name. The Oracle Net Configuration Assistant has defaulted the net service name to be the same as the service name you entered earlier, but you can change it to be any name you choose.
Net Service Name:
LENEL
DB 1
DB 2
Cancel
Help
Back
Next

20. Select the **No** radio button, and click [Next].
21. Click [Finish].
22. The original installation window displays a completed message. Click [Exit].
23. Click [Yes] to really exit.

Step 2: Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition Software

Be sure to install the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition software next. The installation program installs the Microsoft ODBC for Oracle.

Step 3: Run the Net Configuration Assistant

Follow the same steps in the Installing & Configuring Oracle 9i Server Software chapter, with the following exceptions:

- Reconfigure the Oracle Listener (step 3) instead of Add a Oracle Net Listener
- Select **Host Name** when configuring the Naming methods (step 9)
- Reconfigure the Local Net Service Name (step 12) instead of Add a Local Net Service

Step 4: Verify the System is Working

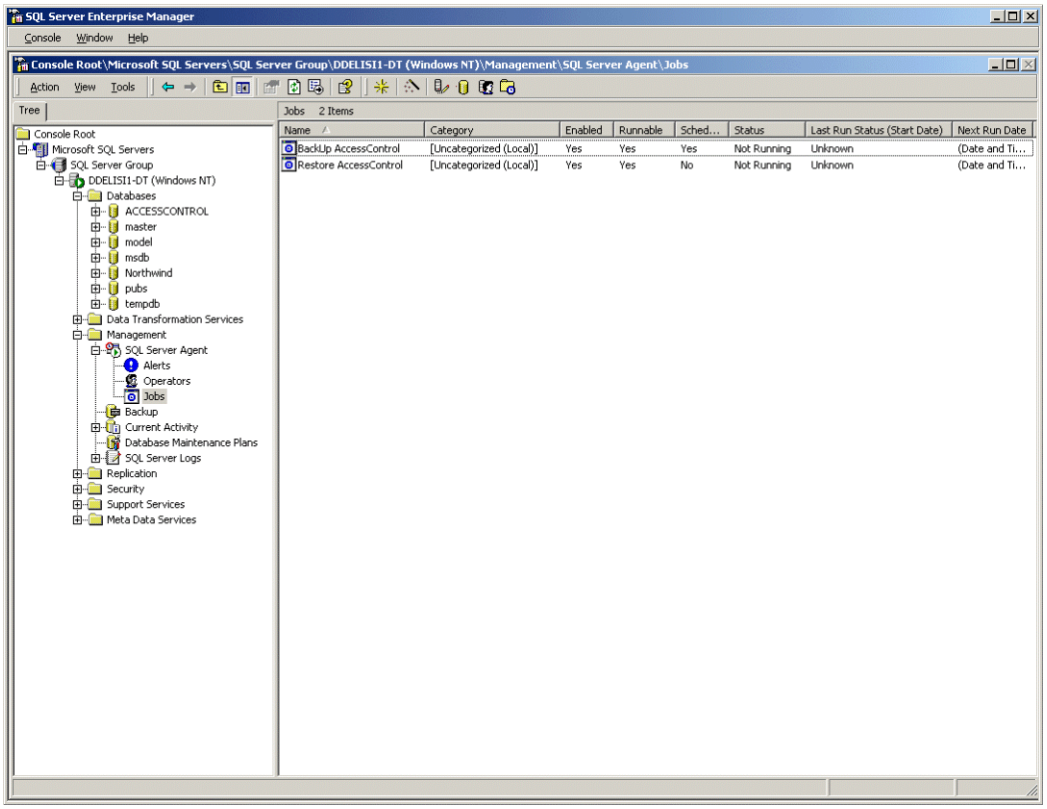
Follow the same steps in the Installing & Configuring Oracle 9i Server Software chapter, except use “Lenel” as the **Username** and “Multimedia” as the **Password**.

Chapter 13: Database Backup and Restoration

There is a new method for conducting scheduled backups and restores on the Dell Precision 330 and 340 Workstation platforms. The change only affects customers using these machines with Windows 2000 and the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server Desktop Engine database.

Dell Precision 330

The database backup and restore procedures are done using SQL Server Agent tasks. There are two tasks that are configured at BEST. The "**BackUp AccessControl**" task is used for both scheduling backups and conducting random database backups. By default, the task is setup to run full database backup every Sunday at 12:00 am. The scheduling options can be customized for specific customer needs. Once the task is scheduled, it will run automatically at the designated time as long as the SQL Server Agent service is running. If the service is not running, the task will not be completed. The "**Restore AccessControl**" task allows the user the ability to restore a previous backup set of their database. Below are the two tasks that are configured at BEST.

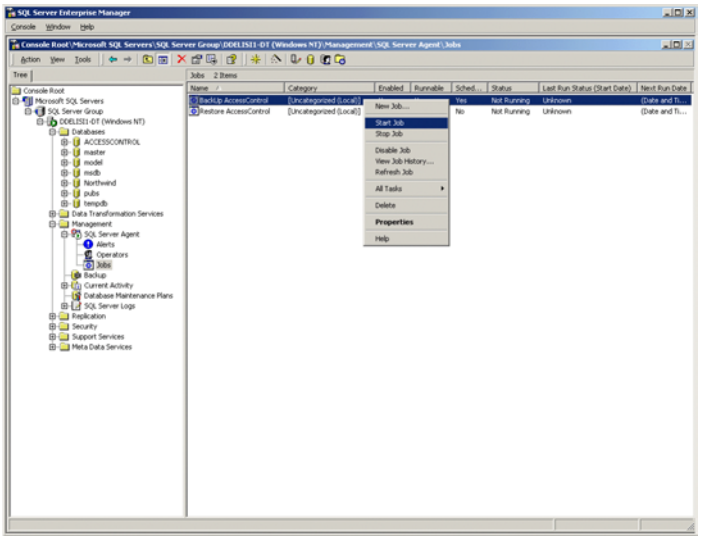


Conduct a Random Database Backup for ACCESSCONTROL

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 330 Workstation platforms.

Before conducting the backup, make sure that there is a tape in the drive that is labeled and is of a supported media format for the drive that you are using.

1. Open SQL Enterprise Manager and navigate to the section that contains the SQL Server Agent Tasks.
2. Once you are in the section, right click on the BackUp AccessControl task and select **Start Job**. The backup will run and you will be able to monitor the status in the Enterprise Manager window.

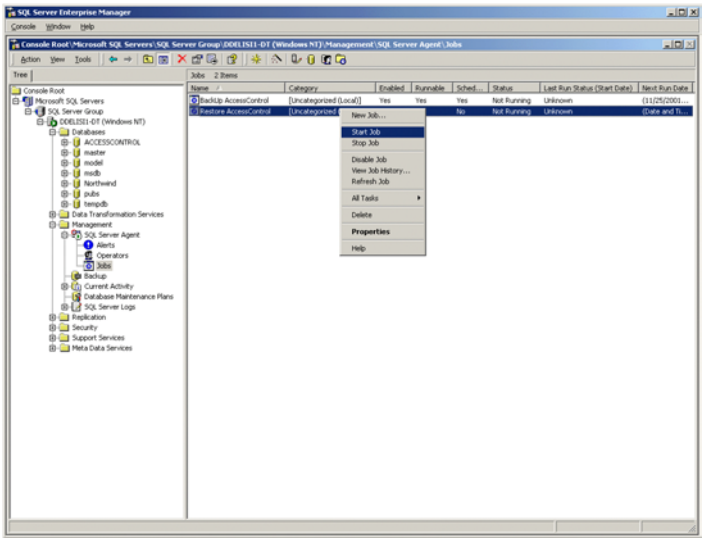


Once the backup procedure has begun, it will automatically format and overwrite any data that is currently on the tape. If you do not want to lose the data that is on your tape, it is important that you insert a new tape.

Conduct a Database Restore for ACCESSCONTROL

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 330 Workstation platforms. Before conducting the restore, make sure that the tape contains the correct backup set that you are trying to restore. If it is not, you may experience data losses.

1. Open SQL Enterprise Manager and navigate to the section that contains the SQL Server Agent Tasks.
2. Once you are in the section, right click on the Restore AccessControl task and select **Start Job**. The restore will run and you will be able to monitor the status in the Enterprise Manager window.



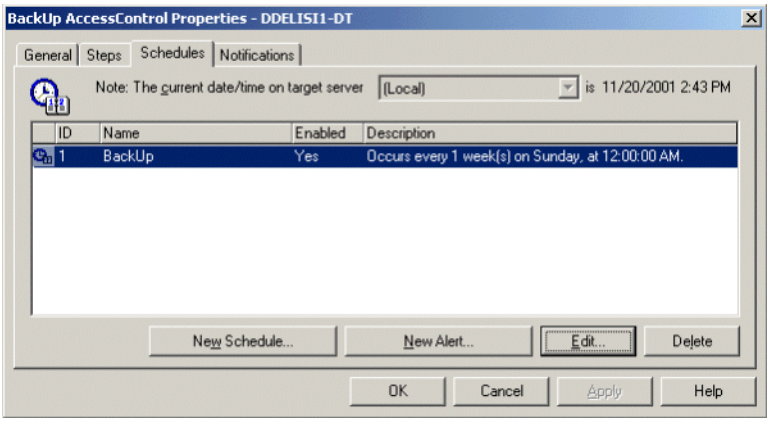
The database will be restored over the current ACCESSCONTROL database to whatever state it was in at the time of the backup set.

Change Scheduled Backup Intervals

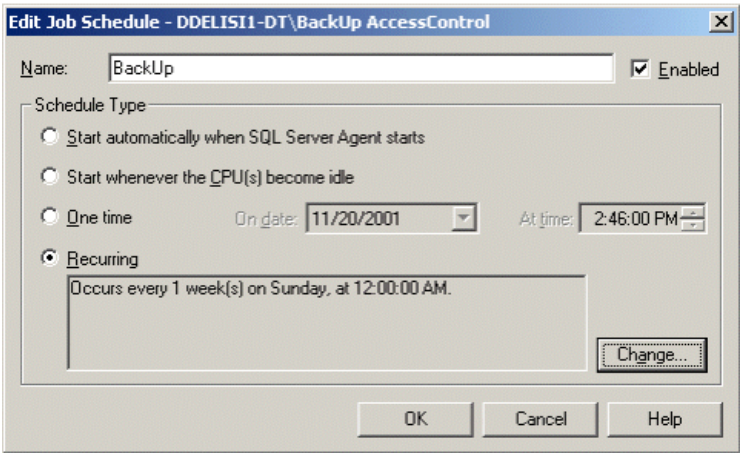
Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 330 Workstation platforms.

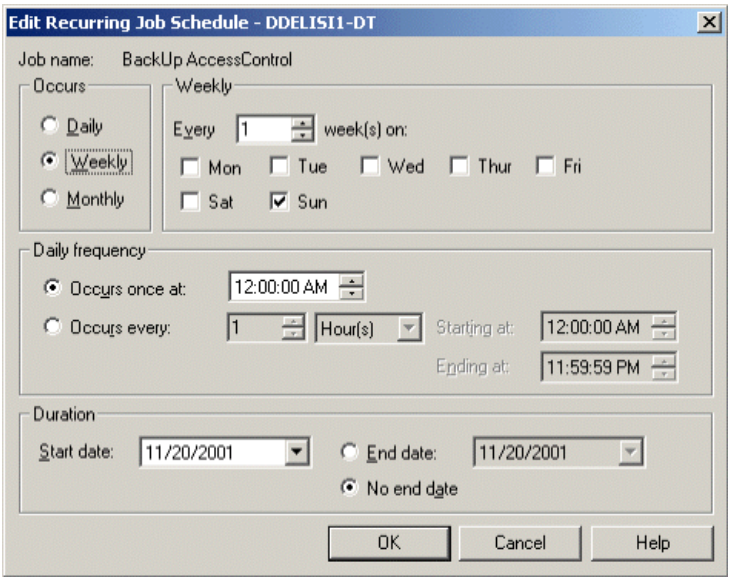
The BackUp AccessControl task is enabled for scheduling. The user has the option to change the scheduling of the backups to better suit their specific needs. Follow the steps below to configure the scheduling for specific customer needs.

1. Open SQL Enterprise Manager and navigate to the section that contains the SQL Server Agent Tasks.
2. Once you are in the section, right click on the BackUp AccessControl task and select **Properties**.
3. In the properties screen select the section that says 'Schedules.'



4. Click [Edit] and then click [Change]. You can now customize the scheduled backups to whatever intervals that you need.





Once you have made the necessary changes to the schedule, you can click [OK] to apply the changes, and then close out all the windows.

Dell Precision 340

Dell Precision 340 systems can use either a Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database or an SQL Server Desktop Engine database. This section includes the following:

- SQL Server 2000 Database Backup Procedures, which begin on page 170.
- SQL Server 2000 Database Restore Procedures, which begin on page 189.
- SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Backup Procedures, which begin on page 192.
- SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Restore Procedures, which begin on page 194.

The following table summarizes which utilities are used for the different stages of the backup and restore process for each database.

	Backup		Restore	
Database	**Database to file**	**File to tape**	**Tape to file**	**File to database**
Microsoft SQL Server	SQL Enterprise Manager	Windows Backup	Windows Backup	SQL Enterprise Manager
SQL Server Desktop Engine	B.A.S.I.S. Database Backup utility	Windows Backup	Windows Backup	B.A.S.I.S. Database Backup utility

SQL Server 2000 Database Backup Procedures

The information below outlines the steps required to conduct database backups of the BEST ACCESSCONTROL database using a Dell Precision 340, Windows 2000 Operating System, with a Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database.

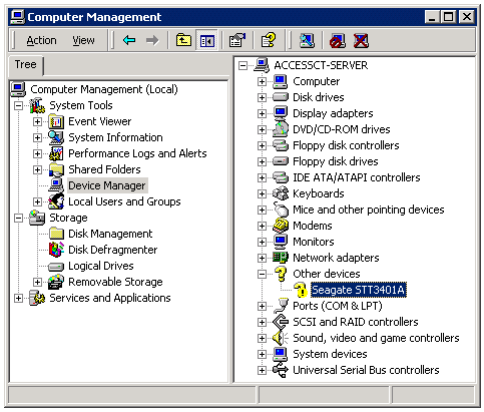
1. Install the drivers for the tape backup device. For more information, refer to Install the Drivers for the Tape Backup Device on page 170.
2. Create a database backup folder in Windows Explorer. For more information, refer to Create a Database Backup Folder on page 175.
3. Configure Microsoft SQL Server to automatically backup the database to a file. For more information, refer to Configure Microsoft SQL Server for Automatic Database Backup to File on page 175.
4. Verify that the backup is set up correctly. For more information, refer to Verify that the Backup (to File) is Set Up Correctly on page 180.
5. Using the Windows Backup utility, manually back up the database to a tape. For more information, refer to Manually Back Up the Database to Tape on page 181.
6. Configure Windows Backup to automatically backup the database to a tape drive. For more information, refer to Configure Automatic Database File Backup to Tape Drive on page 183.
7. Verify that the backup is set up correctly. For more information, refer to Verify that the Backup (to Tape) is Set Up Correctly on page 187.

Install the Drivers for the Tape Backup Device

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server Desktop Engine.

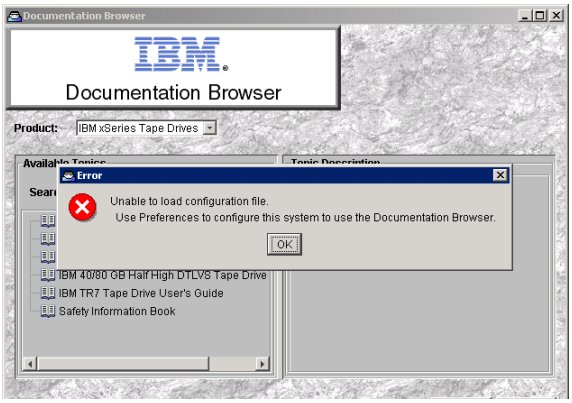
1. When you first power the computer on after you install the tape drive, the Found New Wizard may open. If it does, just click [Cancel].
2. Right-click on My Computer, select **Manage**, and then click on “Device Manager” in the left pane. In the right pane, notice that “Seagate

STT3401A” is listed beneath “Other devices”, and it has a question mark beside it.

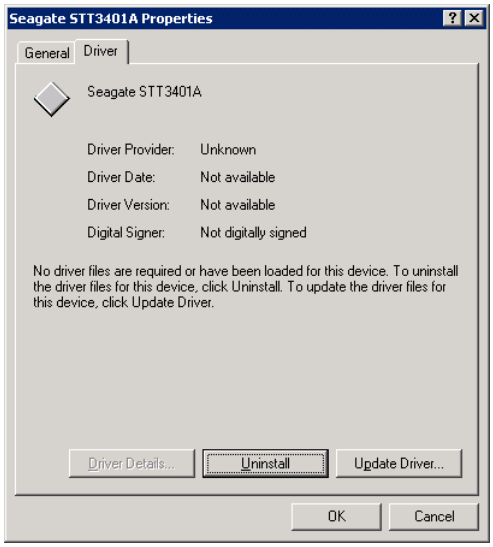


3. Place the IBM Tape Drive User Guides CD in the CD-ROM drive.
4. An error message with several windows behind it will be displayed. Close the error and those windows by clicking the “X” in the upper right-hand

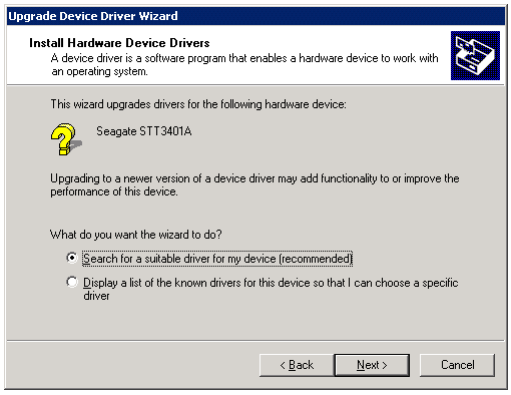
corner of each of the windows. Only the Device Manager window should remain open.



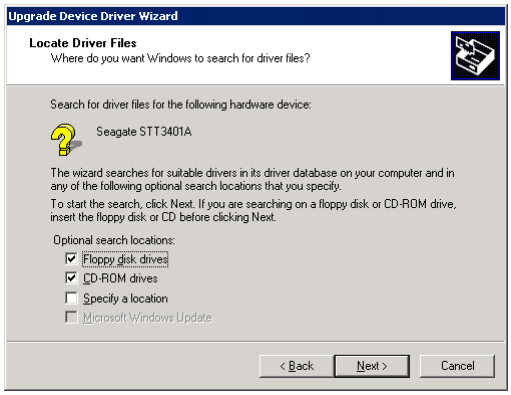
5. In the right pane, expand the “Other devices” folder. Right-click on the Seagate STT3401A device, and then select **Properties**.
6. Click the Driver tab.


Seagate STT3401A Properties
General
Driver
Seagate STT3401A
Driver Provider: Unknown
Driver Date: Not available
Driver Version: Not available
Digital Signer: Not digitally signed
No driver files are required or have been loaded for this device. To uninstall the driver files for this device, click Uninstall. To update the driver files for this device, click Update Driver.
Driver Details...
Uninstall
Update Driver...
OK
Cancel

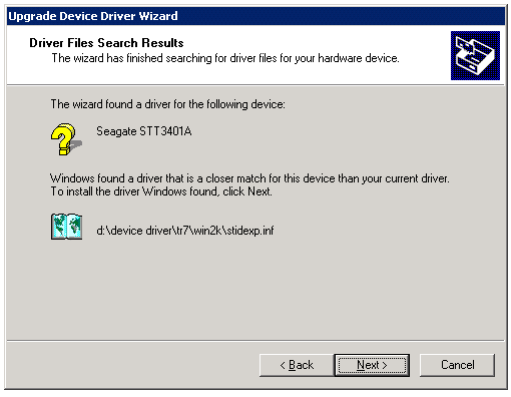
7. Click [Update driver].
8. The Upgrade Device Driver Wizard opens. Click [Next].
9. The Install Hardware Device Drivers window opens. Verify that the **Search for a suitable driver for my device** radio button is selected, then click [Next].


Upgrade Device Driver Wizard
Install Hardware Device Drivers
A device driver is a software program that enables a hardware device to work with an operating system.
This wizard upgrades drivers for the following hardware device:
Seagate STT3401A
Upgrading to a newer version of a device driver may add functionality to or improve the performance of this device.
What do you want the wizard to do?
Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)
Display a list of the known drivers for this device so that I can choose a specific driver
< Back
Next >
Cancel

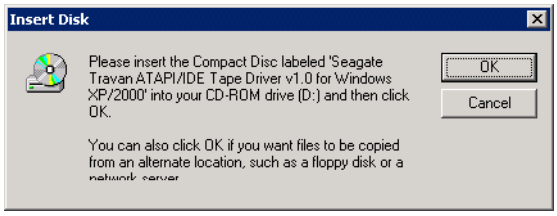
10. The Locate Driver Files window opens. Accept the defaults and click [Next].


Upgrade Device Driver Wizard
Locate Driver Files
Where do you want Windows to search for driver files?
Search for driver files for the following hardware device:
Seagate STT3401A
The wizard searches for suitable drivers in its driver database on your computer and in any of the following optional search locations that you specify.
To start the search, click Next. If you are searching on a floppy disk or CD-ROM drive, insert the floppy disk or CD before clicking Next.
Optional search locations:
Floppy disk drives
CD-ROM drives
Specify a location
Microsoft Windows Update
< Back
Next >
Cancel

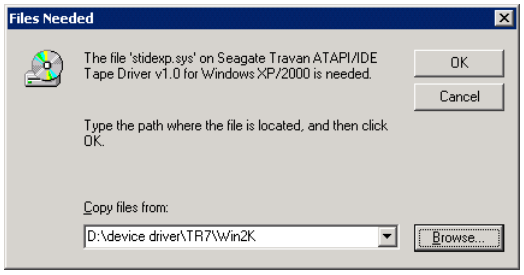
11. The file on the CD will be located. Click [Next].


Upgrade Device Driver Wizard
Driver Files Search Results
The wizard has finished searching for driver files for your hardware device.
The wizard found a driver for the following device:
Seagate STT3401A
Windows found a driver that is a closer match for this device than your current driver.
To install the driver Windows found, click Next.
d:\device driver\tr7\win2k\stidexp.inf
< Back
Next >
Cancel

12. The Insert Disk window is displayed. Since you already inserted the disk, just click [OK].


Insert Disk
Please insert the Compact Disc labeled 'Seagate Travan ATAPI/IDE Tape Driver v1.0 for Windows XP/2000' into your CD-ROM drive (D:) and then click OK.
You can also click OK if you want files to be copied from an alternate location, such as a floppy disk or a
OK
Cancel

13. The Files Needed window opens.


Files Needed
The file 'stidexp.sys' on Seagate Travan ATAPI/IDE Tape Driver v1.0 for Windows XP/2000 is needed.
OK
Cancel
Type the path where the file is located, and then click OK.
Copy files from:
D:\device driver\TR7\Win2K
Browse...

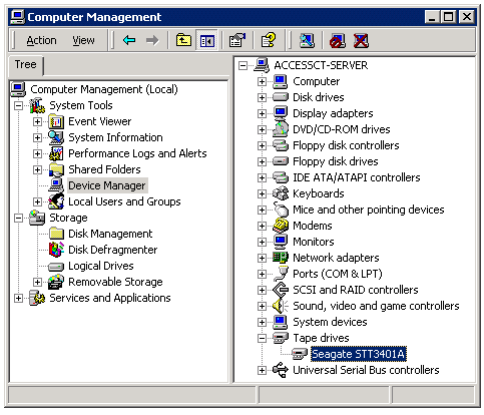
    a. Click [Browse] and browse to the **<*CD-ROM drive letter*>\device driver\TR7\Win2K\stidexp.sys** file on the CD, and then click [Open].

    b. Click [OK].

14. The Upgrade Device Driver Wizard opens. Click [Finish].

15. Click [Close] to close the Seagate STT3401A Properties window.

16. The window will refresh, and the Seagate STT3401A appears below “Tape drives” in the tree, as shown.



Create a Database Backup Folder

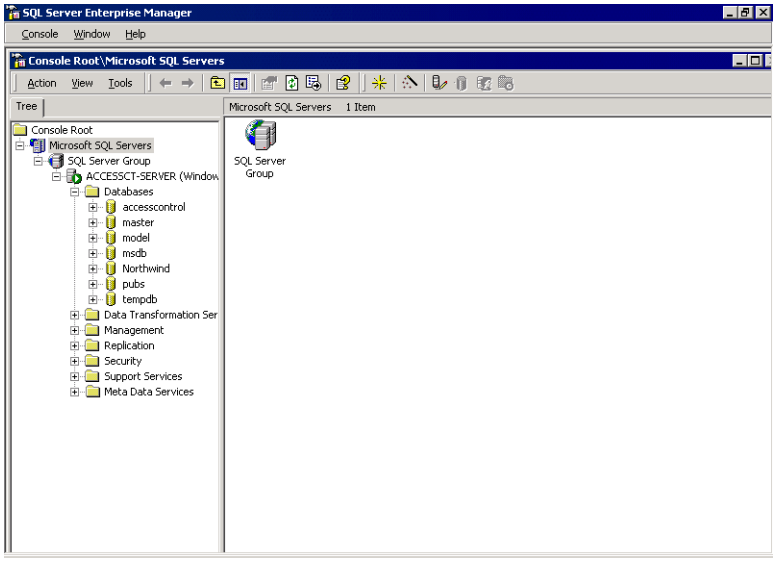
Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server Desktop Engine.

1. Open Windows Explorer and navigate to the **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.** folder.
2. From the **File** menu, select **New** > **Folder**. Enter the folder name (e.g. **database_backup**).
3. Close Windows Explorer.

Configure Microsoft SQL Server for Automatic Database Backup to File

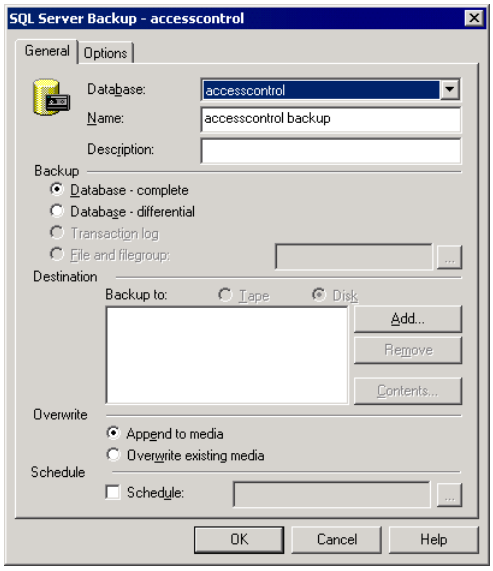
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **Microsoft SQL Server** > **Enterprise Manager**.
2. The SQL Server Enterprise Manager window displays. Navigate to the Accesscontrol database. (In the Tree tab (left side of screen) expand

Microsoft SQL Servers, SQL Server Group, ACCESSCT- SERVER and Databases.)

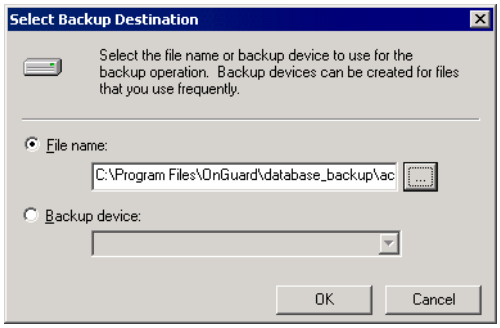


3. Right-click on the accesscontrol database and select **All Tasks** > **Backup Database**.

4. The SQL Server Backup window displays. Click [Add].



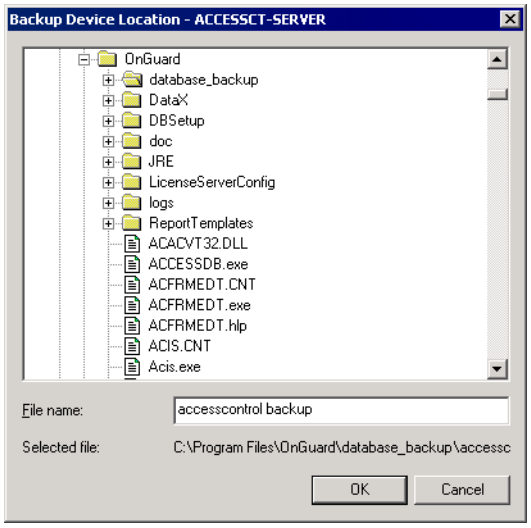
5. The Select Backup Device Destination window displays.


Select Backup Destination
Select the file name or backup device to use for the backup operation. Backup devices can be created for files that you use frequently.
File name:
C:\Program Files\OnGuard\database_backup\ac
Backup device:
OK
Cancel

a. Verify the **File name** radio button is selected and click the [...] button.

b. The Backup Device Location window displays. Navigate to **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\database_backup**.

Note: This is the directory you created in the Create a Database Backup Folder procedures on page 175.

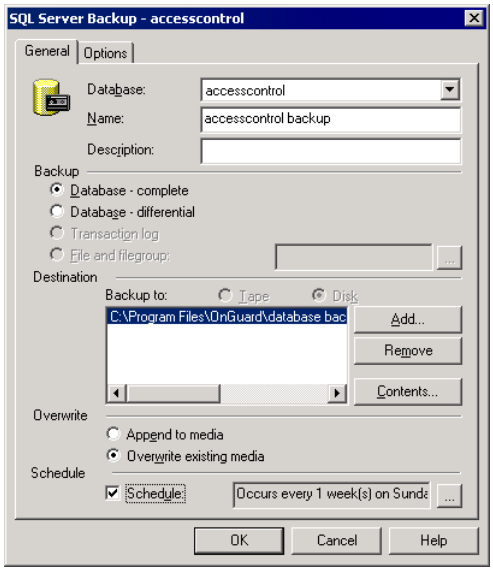


c. Enter the name of database file that will be created when the database is automatically backed-up to a file (accesscontrol_backup).

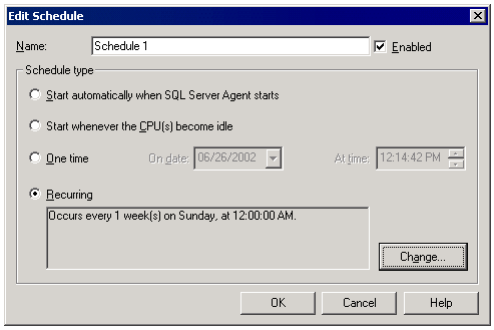
d. Click [OK].

e. Click [OK] to accept the desired filename and location.

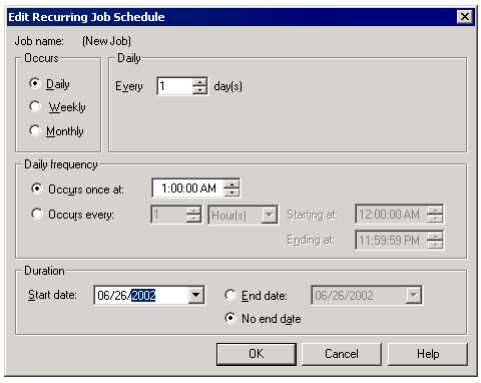
6. In the SQL Server Backup window, select the **Overwrite existing media** radio button.



7. Select the **Schedule** checkbox and click the [...] button.
8. The Edit Schedule window displays. Verify the **Recurring** radio button is selected.



9. Click [Change].
10. The Edit Recurring Job Schedule window displays. In the Occurs section, select the **Daily** radio button.



11. In the Daily frequency section, select the **Occurs once at** radio button and

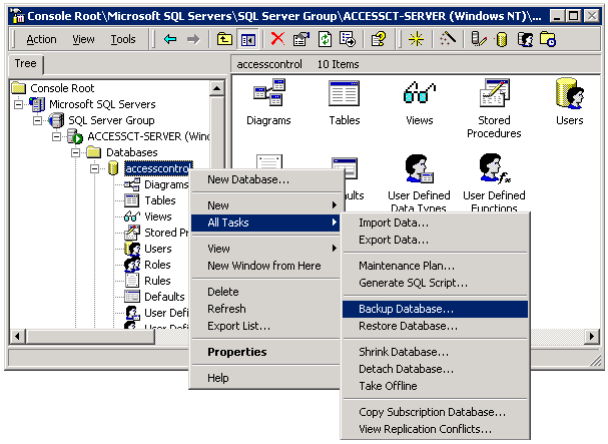
enter the desired time (1:00:00 AM).

12. Click [OK].
13. Click [OK] two more times to accept the schedule changes and exit the application.

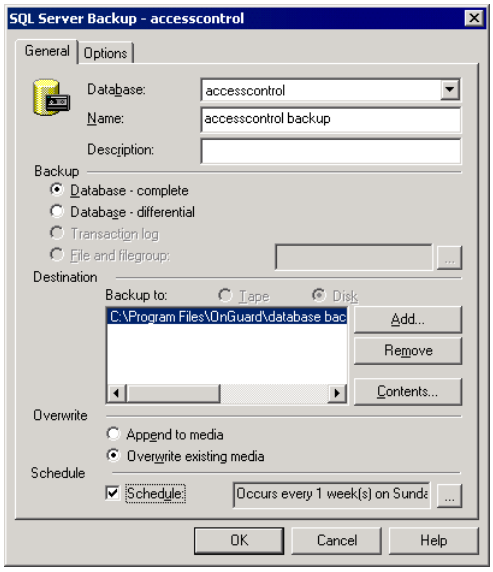
Verify that the Backup (to File) is Set Up Correctly

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with a Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database ONLY (not the SQL Server Desktop Engine database).

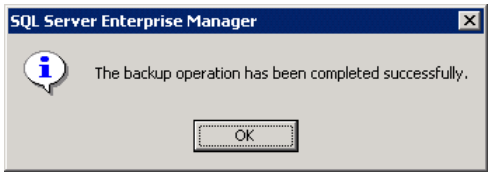
1. Open SQL Server Enterprise Manager, if it isn't already.
2. Right-click on "accesscontrol", and then select **All Tasks** > **Backup Database**.



3. The SQL Server Backup window opens. Click [OK].



4. The backup runs, and then the following message is displayed:



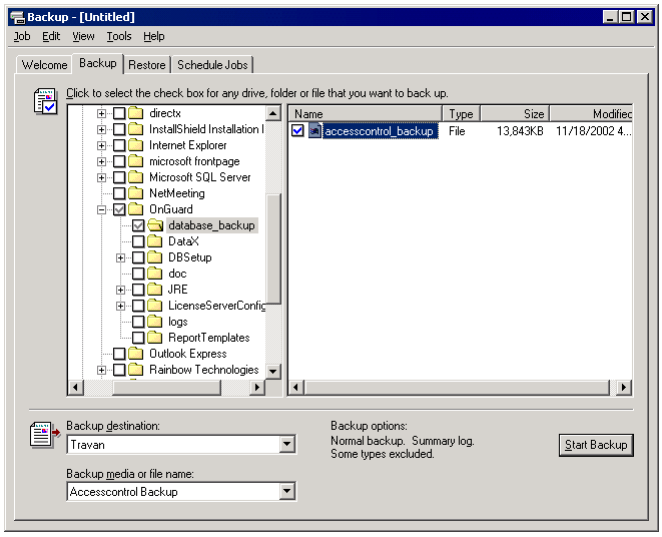
5. Click [OK], and then exit out of SQL Server Enterprise Manager.

Manually Back Up the Database to Tape

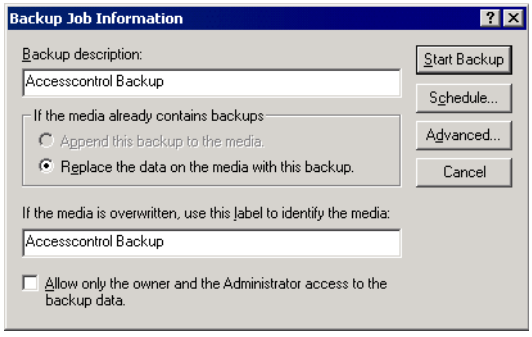
Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server Desktop Engine.

Before conducting the backup, make sure that there is a tape in the drive that is labeled and is of a supported media format for the drive that you are using.

1. Start the Windows Backup software. To do this, click the Start button, and then navigate to **Programs** > **Accessories** > **System Tools** > **Backup**.
2. Click the Backup tab.
3. Navigate to the file that you wish to back up. In most cases, this will the **accesscontrol_backup** file that is in the **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\database_backup** directory.
4. Select "Accesscontrol Backup" in the **Backup media or file name** drop-down list.

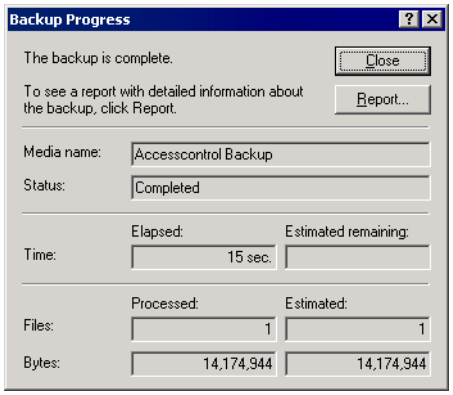


5. Select "Travan" in the **Backup destination** drop-down list.
6. Click [Start Backup].
7. The Backup Job Information window opens.


Backup Job Information
Backup description:
Accesscontrol Backup
Start Backup
Schedule...
Advanced...
Cancel
If the media already contains backups
Append this backup to the media.
Replace the data on the media with this backup.
If the media is overwritten, use this label to identify the media:
Accesscontrol Backup
Allow only the owner and the Administrator access to the backup data.

   a. In the **Backup description** field, type `Accesscontrol Backup`.
   b. In the **If the media is overwritten, use the label to identify the media** field, type `Accesscontrol Backup`.
   c. Click [Start Backup].

8. The backup will run. The Backup Progress window displays, and the backup is complete.



Configure Automatic Database File Backup to Tape Drive

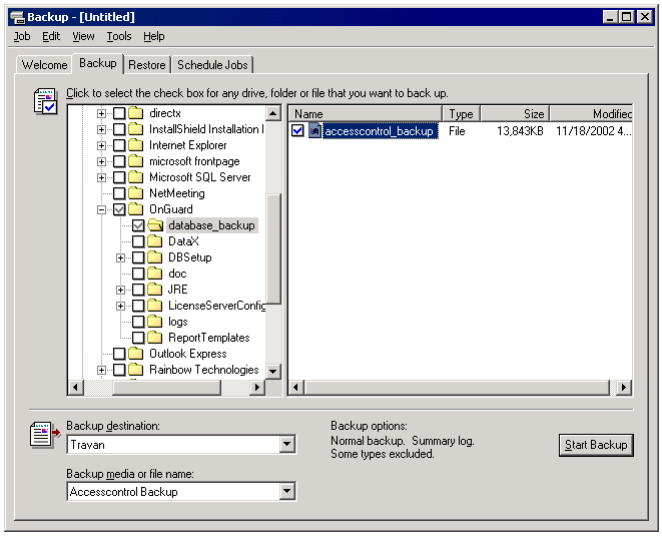
Notes: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with Microsoft SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server Desktop Engine.

If SQL Server Desktop Engine is used, then the database must be manually backed up to file before the time that the Windows Backup utility is scheduled to automatically back the database file up to the tape drive. For

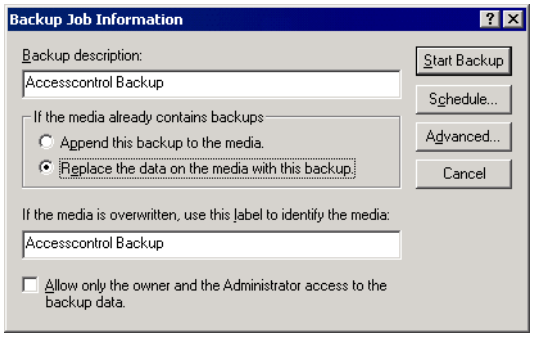
more information, refer to Manually Back Up an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database to a File on page 193.

Before conducting the backup, make sure that there is a tape in the drive that is labeled and is of a supported media format for the drive that you are using.

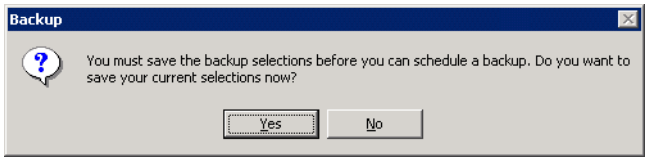
1. Start the Windows Backup software. To do this, click the Start button, and then navigate to **Programs** > **Accessories** > **System Tools** > **Backup**.
2. Click the Backup tab.
3. Navigate to the file that you wish to back up. In most cases, this will the **accesscontrol_backup** file that is in the **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\database_backup** directory.
4. In the **Backup media or file name** drop-down list, select "Accesscontrol Backup".



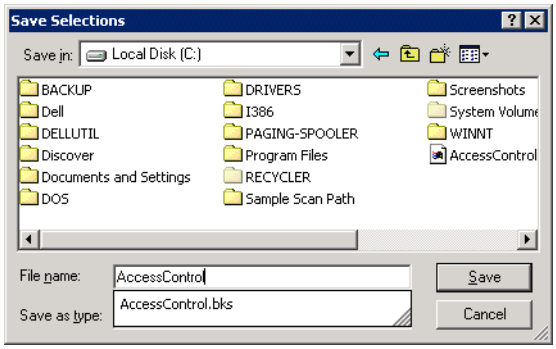
5. Select "Travan" in the **Backup destination** drop-down list.
   a. Click [Start Backup].
   b. The Backup Job Information window opens.
   c. In the **Backup description** field, type `Accesscontrol Backup`.
   d. In the **If the media is overwritten, use the label to identify the media** field, type `Accesscontrol Backup`.
   e. Click [Schedule].


Backup Job Information
Backup description:
Accesscontrol Backup
Start Backup
Schedule...
Advanced...
Cancel
If the media already contains backups
Append this backup to the media.
Replace the data on the media with this backup.
If the media is overwritten, use this label to identify the media:
Accesscontrol Backup
Allow only the owner and the Administrator access to the backup data.

6. A message is displayed. Click [Yes] to save the backup selections now.


Backup
You must save the backup selections before you can schedule a backup. Do you want to save your current selections now?
Yes
No

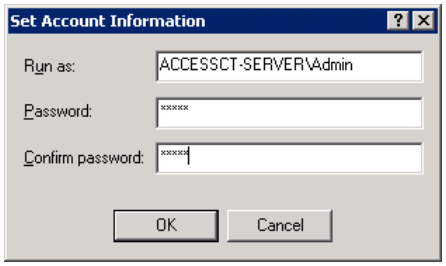
7. The Save Selections window opens.



   a. Specify a name and location for the backup. The recommended filename is “AccessControl.bks”, and that file can be saved in the **C:** root directory.

   b. Click [Save].

8. The Set Account Information window opens.

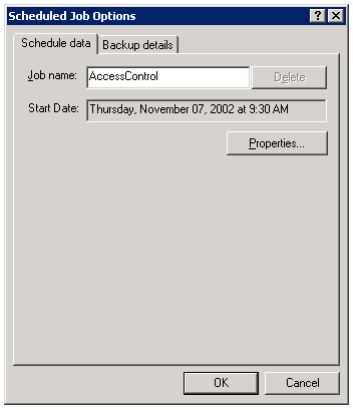


   a. In the **Password** field, type `admin`.

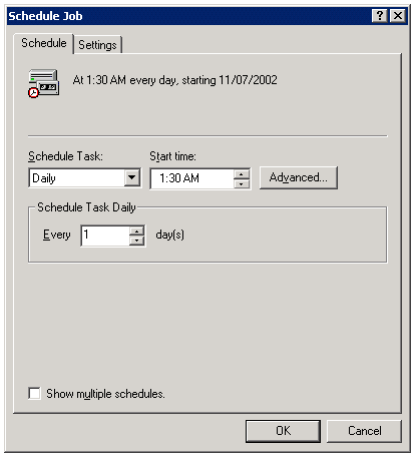
   b. In the **Confirm password** field, retype the password.

   c. Click [OK].

9. The Scheduled Job Options window opens.
   a. In the **Job name** field, type `AccessControl` or any other name you would like to use.
   b. Click [Properties].



10. The Properties are displayed in the Schedule Job window.



   a. In the **Schedule task** drop-down list, select “Daily”.
   b. In the **Start time** field, select a time that is 30 minutes later than the time that the SQL backup job is set to start. For example, if the SQL

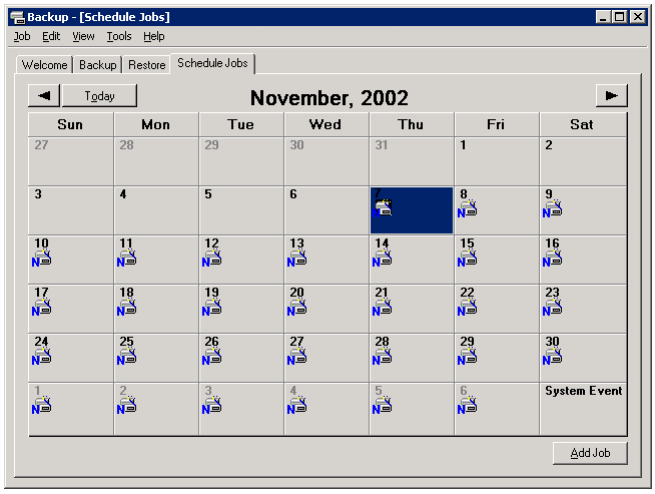
backup job is set to start at 1:00 am, then the start time should be 1:30 am.

c. Verify that “1” is selected in the Schedule Task Daily section.

d. Click [OK].

11. In the Schedule Job window, click [OK].

12. Click the Schedule Jobs tab and verify that the calendar is full of scheduled jobs.

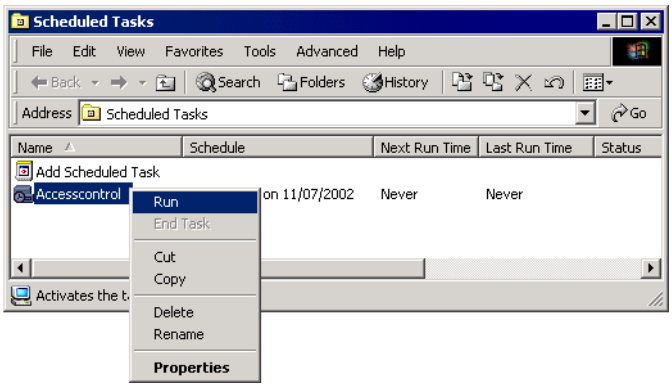


Verify that the Backup (to Tape) is Set Up Correctly

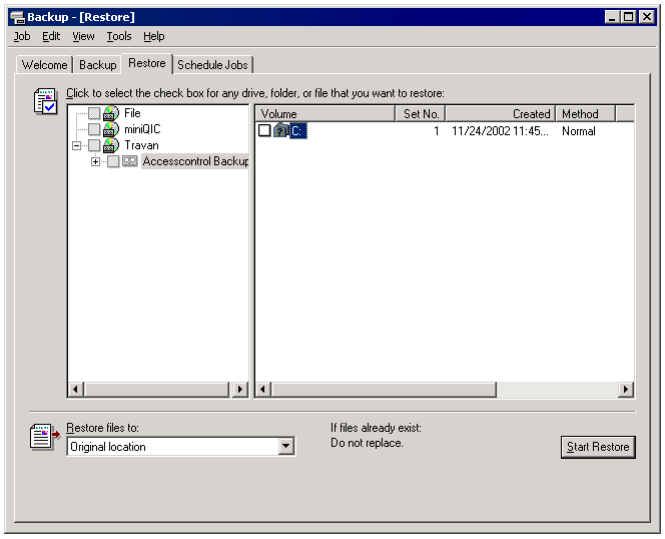
Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with Microsoft SQL Server 2000.

After the backup schedule has been set up, you can run your backup immediately test to make sure that your backup is set up correctly, rather than waiting until the first scheduled backup.

1. Open the Windows Control Panel, and then double-click “Scheduled Tasks”.
2. Right-click on the Accesscontrol task, and then select **Run**.



3. After a short delay, the backup runs.
4. To verify that the backup ran:
   a. Start the Windows Backup software. To do this, click the Start button, and then navigate to **Programs** > **Accessories** > **System Tools** > **Back up**.
   b. Click the Restore tab.
   c. The backup is listed, as shown.



SQL Server 2000 Database Restore Procedures

To restore a SQL Server 2000 database:

1. Restore the database in the tape drive to a file by running the Windows Backup software. For more information, refer to Restore the Database on a Tape to a File on page 189.
2. Restore the file to the database via the SQL Enterprise Manager. For more information, refer to Restore File to Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Database on page 190.

Restore the Database on a Tape to a File

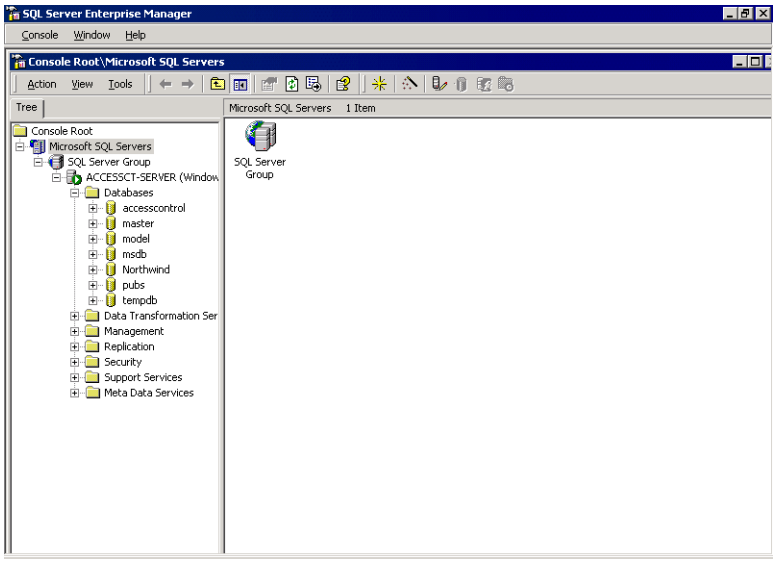
Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with a Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database or an SQL Server Desktop Engine database.

1. Insert the tape that contains the database that you wish to restore into the tape drive.
2. Start the Windows Backup software. To do this, click the Start button, and then navigate to **Programs** > **Accessories** > **System Tools** > **Backup**.
3. Click the Restore and Manage Media tab.
4. Select “Travan”, and then navigate to the database that you wish to restore.
5. Click [Start Restore].

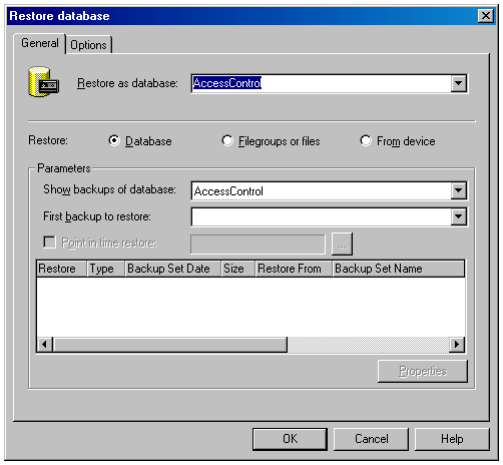
Restore File to Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Database

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with a Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database.

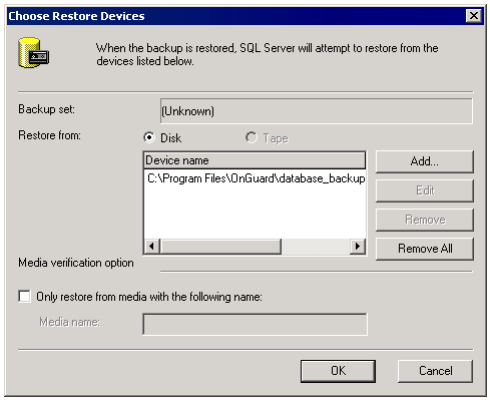
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **Microsoft SQL Server** > **Enterprise Manager**.
2. The SQL Server Enterprise Manager window displays. Navigate to Accesscontrol database.



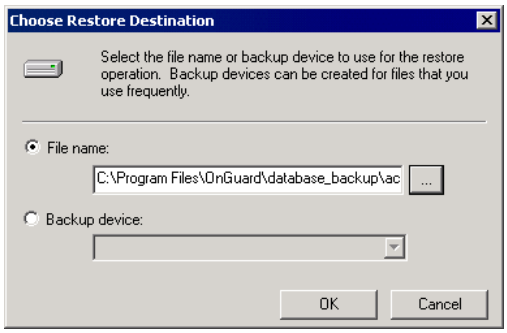
3. In the Tree tab (left side of screen) expand Microsoft SQL Servers, SQL Server Group, ACCESSCT- SERVER, and Databases.
4. Right-click on the accesscontrol database and select **All Tasks** > **Restore Database**.
5. The Restore database window displays. Click the General Tab.


Restore database
General Options
Restore as database: AccessControl
Restore: Database Filegroups or files From device
Parameters
Show backups of database: AccessControl
First backup to restore:
Point in time restore:
Restore Type Backup Set Date Size Restore From Backup Set Name
Properties
OK Cancel Help

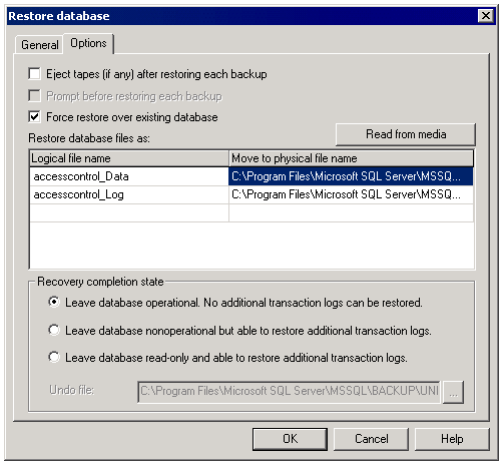
6. Select the **From device** radio button. Click [Select Devices].
7. The Choose Restore Devices window displays. Verify the **Disk** radio button is selected.



8. Click [Add].
9. The Choose Restore Destination window displays. Verify the **File name** radio button is selected.


Choose Restore Destination
Select the file name or backup device to use for the restore operation. Backup devices can be created for files that you use frequently.
File name:
C:\Program Files\OnGuard\database_backup\ac
...
Backup device:
OK
Cancel

10. Click the [...] button.
11. The Backup Device Location window displays. Enter the filename and click [OK].
12. Click [OK] twice to accept the restore destination settings.
13. In the Restore database window, click the Options tab.



14. Select the **Force restore over existing database** checkbox.
15. Click [OK].

SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Backup Procedures

The information below outlines the steps required to conduct database backups of the BEST ACCESSCONTROL database using a Dell Precision 340, Windows 2000 Operating System, with an SQL Server Desktop Engine database.

While there is an option in the B.A.S.I.S. Backup utility to back up the database directly to tape, it will not work because the B.A.S.I.S. Backup utility does not recognize the tape drive that is in the Dell Precision 340. Instead, you must use the B.A.S.I.S. Backup utility to back up the database to a file, and then use the Windows Backup utility to back up the file to the tape. The process that must be followed to back up a file to tape is:

1. Install the drivers for the tape backup device, exactly as you would on an SQL Server 2000 system. For more information, refer to Install the Drivers for the Tape Backup Device on page 170.
2. Create a database backup folder in Windows Explorer. For more information, refer to Create a Database Backup Folder on page 175.
3. Run the B.A.S.I.S. Backup utility to manually back up the database to a file. For more information, refer to Manually Back Up an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database to a File on page 193.
4. Using the Windows Backup utility, manually back up the file to a tape. For more information, refer to Manually Back Up the Database to Tape on page 181.
5. Configure Windows Backup to automatically backup the file to a tape drive. For more information, refer to Configure Automatic Database File Backup to Tape Drive on page 183.

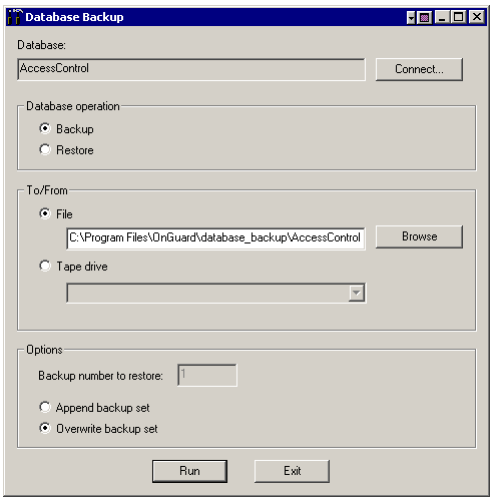
Manually Back Up an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database to a File

Notes: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with an SQL Server Desktop Engine database ONLY (not the Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database). You cannot configure the B.A.S.I.S. Backup utility to automatically back the database up to a file. This procedure must be done manually.

If Windows Backup is configured to automatically back the database up to a tape drive, then this manual back up of the SQL Server Desktop Engine database to file must be performed prior to the time that Windows Backup is scheduled to back the file up to tape.

Before conducting the backup, make sure that there is a tape in the drive that is labeled and is of a supported media format for the drive that you are using.

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Database Backup**.
2. The Database Backup window displays. Click [Connect] and connect to the AccessControl database.



3. Verify the **Backup** radio button is selected in the Database operation section.
4. Select the **File** radio button in the To/From section and then select the tape drive device in the drop-down list. Click [Browse] and navigate to **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.\database_backup**.
5. Name this file `AccessControl Backup`. Click [Save].
6. Verify the **Overwrite backup set** radio button is selected and click [Run].
7. Click [OK] after the database is successfully backed up.
8. Exit the Database Backup application.

SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Restore Procedures

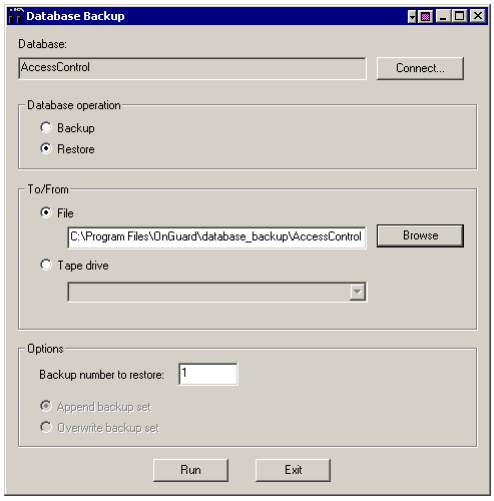
To restore an SQL Server Desktop Engine database:

1. Restore the database in the tape drive to a file by running the Windows Backup software. For more information, refer to Restore the Database on a Tape to a File on page 189.
2. Restore the file to the database via the B.A.S.I.S. Database Backup utility. For more information, refer to Restore the File to the Database on page 194.

Restore the File to the Database

Note: These procedures apply to Dell Precision 340 Workstation platforms with an SQL Server Desktop Engine database.

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S.** > **Database Backup**.
2. The Database Backup window displays. Click [Connect] and connect to the AccessControl database.



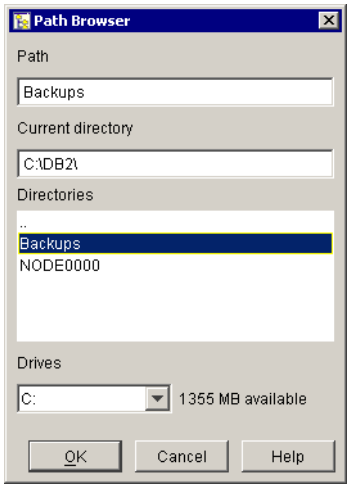
3. Select the **Restore** radio button in the Database operation section.
4. Select the **File** radio button in the To/From section and then browse for the file to restore.
5. Click [Run].
6. Click [OK] when the restoration is complete.
7. Exit the Database Backup application.

DB2 Database Backup and Restoration

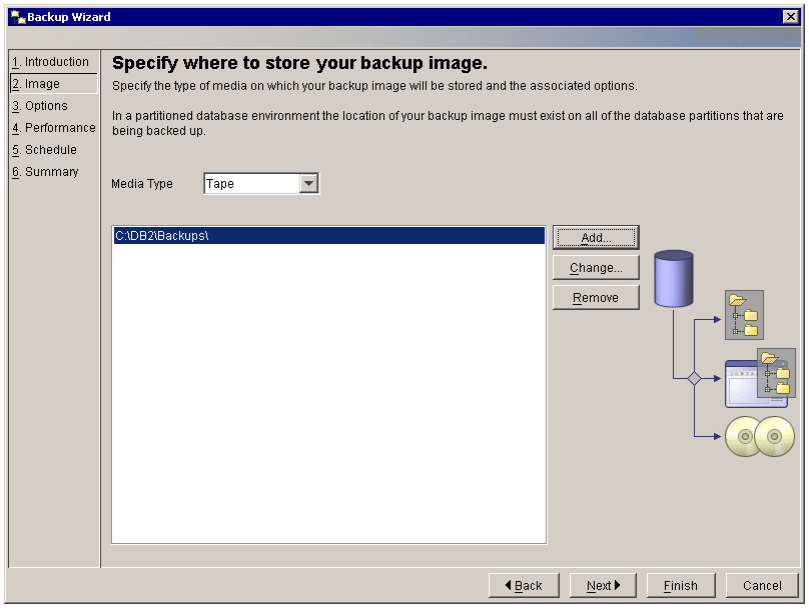
Back Up a DB2 Database

1. Open DB2 Control Center by clicking Start > **Programs** > **IBM DB2** > **General Administration Tool**s > **Control Center**.
2. Click on the System in the tree in the right pane that contains the database you wish to back up. You will be prompted to log in. Enter a username and password for the database, and then click [OK].
3. Expand the tree in the right pane until the database you wish to back up is shown. If you set up your database as directed in the Database Backup and Restoration chapter, your database would be “ACCTRL”.
4. Right-click on the database and select **Backup**.
5. The Backup Wizard Opens, and the Step 1: Introduction window opens. Click [Next].
6. The Backup Wizard proceeds, and the Step 2: Image window opens.
   a. In the **Media Type** drop-down listbox, select the type of media the backup will be saved to. The window changes depending on the option selected.
   b. If you are backing up to a tape or to a file system, click [Add]. If you are using another backup method, please refer to the DB2 documentation.
   c. The Path Browser window opens. Specify a path where the backup should be saved, and then click [OK].

Note: If you specified a directory that does not exist, you must create it before you run the backup, or the backup will fail.



7. The Step 2: Image window should look something like this. Click [Next].



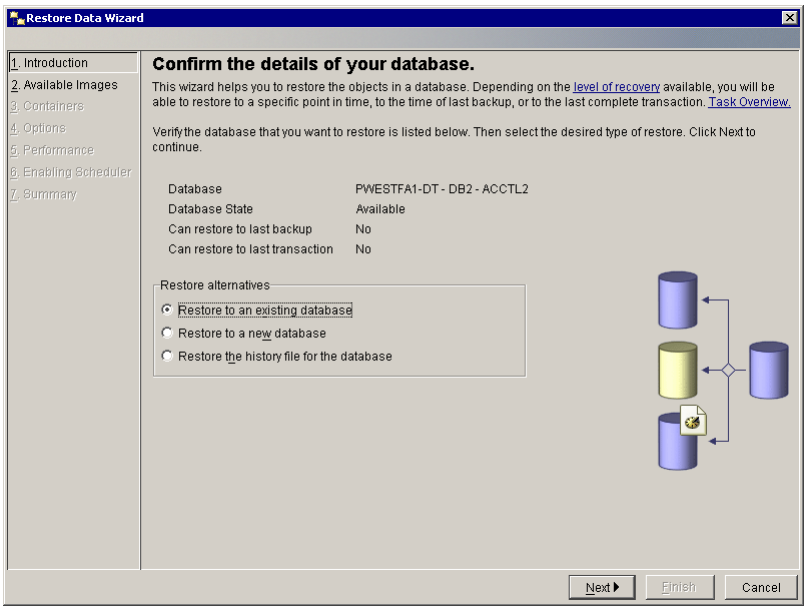
8. The Backup Wizard proceeds, and the Step 3: Options window opens. Select the backup options you would like to use, then click [Next].
9. The Backup Wizard proceeds, and the Step 4: Performance window opens. Select the performance options you would like to use, then click [Next].
10. The Backup Wizard proceeds, and the Step 5: Schedule window opens. Select the schedule options you would like to use; you can either run the backup now or set up a schedule. Click [Next].
11. The Backup Wizard proceeds, and the Step 6: Summary window opens.

Verify the backup options that will be used are correct, and then click [OK].

12. A message is displayed indicating the commands attempted and the results. Make sure that the results say that the commands executed successfully, and then click [Close].

Restore a DB2 Database

1. Open DB2 Control Center by clicking Start > **Programs** > **IBM DB2** > **General Administration Tools** > **Control Center**.
2. Click on the System in the tree in the right pane that contains the database you wish to restore. You will be prompted to log in. Enter a username and password for the database, and then click [OK].
3. Expand the tree in the right pane until the database you wish to restore is shown. If you set up your database as directed in the Database Backup and Restoration chapter, your database would be “ACCTRL”.
4. Right-click on the database and select **Restore**.
5. The Restore Database Wizard opens, and the Step 1: Introduction window opens. Select the database restore alternative you wish to use, and then click [Next].


Restore Data Wizard
1. Introduction
2. Available Images
3. Containers
4. Options
5. Performance
6. Enabling Scheduler
7. Summary
Confirm the details of your database.
This wizard helps you to restore the objects in a database. Depending on the level of recovery available, you will be able to restore to a specific point in time, to the time of last backup, or to the last complete transaction. Task Overview.
Verify the database that you want to restore is listed below. Then select the desired type of restore. Click Next to continue.
Database PWESTFA1-DT - DB2 - ACCTL2
Database State Available
Can restore to last backup No
Can restore to last transaction No
Restore alternatives
Restore to an existing database
Restore to a new database
Restore the history file for the database
Next
Finish
Cancel

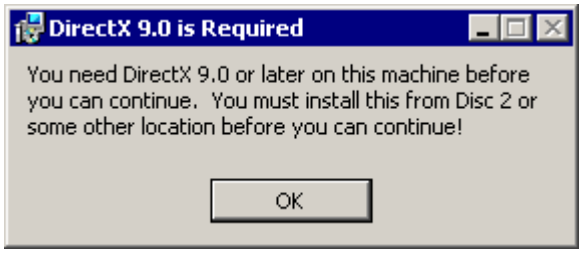
6. The options available in the Restore Database Wizard will change depending on the restore alternative you selected. Please refer to the DB2 documentation for more information about each alternative and continue through the Restore Data Wizard.

Appendix

Appendix A: Installing DirectX

DirectX Version Overview

DirectX 9.0 is required to be installed prior to upgrading or installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. If DirectX 9.0 is not installed, an error message similar to the following will be displayed when you attempt to upgrade or install B.A.S.I.S.:


DirectX 9.0 is Required
You need DirectX 9.0 or later on this machine before you can continue. You must install this from Disc 2 or some other location before you can continue!
OK

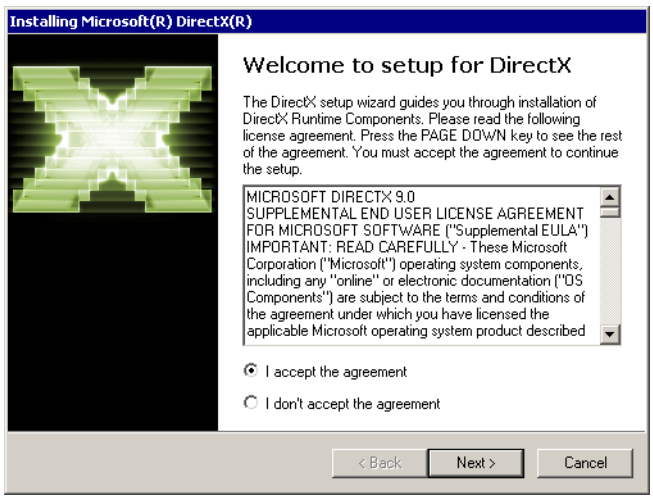
Installing DirectX Version 9.0

DirectX version 9.0 has been included for your convenience on Disc 2 which accompanies the B.A.S.I.S. CD. To install DirectX version 9.0:

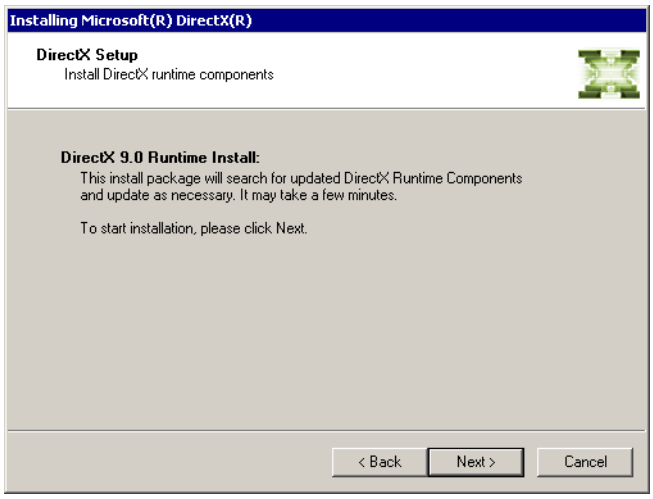
1. Insert Disc 2 into the CD-ROM.
2. Use Windows Explorer to navigate to the **Microsoft DirectX 9.0** folder on the CD-ROM drive.
3. Inside the **Microsoft DirectX 9.0** folder, double-click the **dxsetup.exe** file.

Note: DirectX 9.0 can also be installed using the Third Party Components Wizard which is available on the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition Disc 2 CD-ROM. For more information, please refer to Installation Prerequisites on page 16.

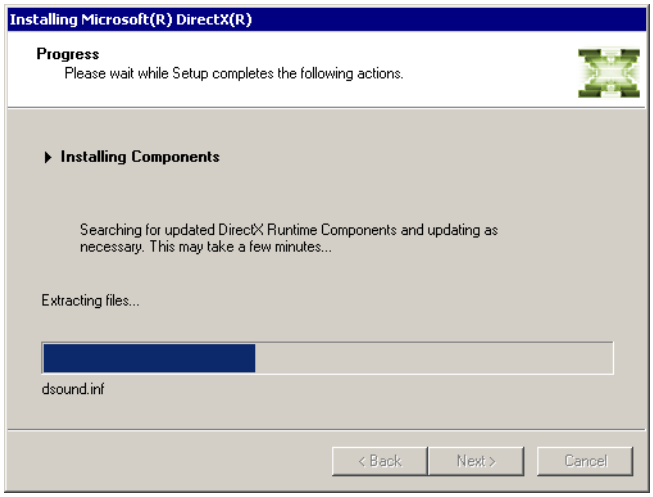
4. Read the license agreement. If you agree to the terms, select the **I accept the agreement** radio button and click [Next].


Installing Microsoft(R) DirectX(R)
Welcome to setup for DirectX
The DirectX setup wizard guides you through installation of DirectX Runtime Components. Please read the following license agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement. You must accept the agreement to continue the setup.
MICROSOFT DIRECTX 9.0
SUPPLEMENTAL END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT
FOR MICROSOFT SOFTWARE ("Supplemental EULA")
IMPORTANT: READ CAREFULLY - These Microsoft Corporation ("Microsoft") operating system components, including any "online" or electronic documentation ("OS Components") are subject to the terms and conditions of the agreement under which you have licensed the applicable Microsoft operating system product described
I accept the agreement
I don't accept the agreement
< Back
Next >
Cancel

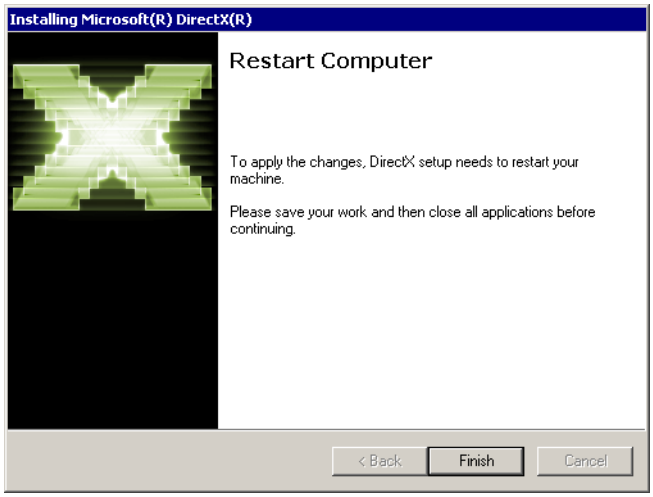
5. The DirectX Setup window opens. Click [Next].


Installing Microsoft(R) DirectX(R)
DirectX Setup
Install DirectX runtime components
DirectX 9.0 Runtime Install:
This install package will search for updated DirectX Runtime Components and update as necessary. It may take a few minutes.
To start installation, please click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. The Progress window opens.


Installing Microsoft(R) DirectX(R)
Progress
Please wait while Setup completes the following actions.
Installing Components
Searching for updated DirectX Runtime Components and updating as necessary. This may take a few minutes...
Extracting files...
dsound.inf
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. Click [Finish] to restart the computer when prompted. This completes the installation of DirectX version 9.0.


Installing Microsoft(R) DirectX(R)
Restart Computer
To apply the changes, DirectX setup needs to restart your machine.
Please save your work and then close all applications before continuing.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

Appendix B: Accounts and Passwords

B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition includes strong password enforcement, which checks the user's password against the B.A.S.I.S. password standards. This functionality is designed to enhance password security as well as encourage users to implement single sign-on. If single sign-on is used (automatic or manual) B.A.S.I.S. does not enforce password standards.

Note: The strong password enforcement feature in B.A.S.I.S. also checks the BEST database user's password when logging into applications. Database user passwords apply to SQL Server Desktop Engine, SQL, and Oracle. For information on changing your database password refer to Change the Database Password on page 206.

The following table summarizes the B.A.S.I.S. default accounts and passwords:

B.A.S.I.S. Default Accounts and Passwords

Description	User name	Password	How to change the password
Default system administrator account. This is the account that is used initially to log into the main B.A.S.I.S. applications, such as System Administration.	SA	SA	For more information, refer to About Accounts on page 211.
B.A.S.I.S. database. This is the actual B.A.S.I.S. SQL Server Desktop Engine, SQL, or Oracle database.	LENEL	MULTIMEDIA	For more information, refer to Change the Database Password on page 206.
License Administration account. This is the account that is used initially to log into the License Administration application.	ADMIN	ADMIN	For more information, refer to Changing Administrator Properties for the License Administration Application on page 271.

Password Standards

When creating a strong password keep the following guidelines in mind:

- Passwords cannot be blank
- Passwords cannot be the same as the user name (e.g. SA, SA)

- Passwords cannot be BEST keywords (e.g. MULTIMEDIA, PROKUPETS, PROKUPET, BEST, BASIS, PASSWORD)
- Although not required, your password should contain numbers, letters, and symbols. Spaces are also acceptable. (e.g. august 18, 1967)
- B.A.S.I.S. passwords are **not** case-sensitive.
- Database passwords conform to the rules of the specific database being used; passwords in SQL Server and Oracle are case insensitive.
- The maximum value for a strong password is 127 characters. The minimum value is 1.

Notes: For Oracle databases the following account usernames and passwords are not allowed to be used together:

System and Manager

Internal and Oracle

Sys and Change_On_Install

Enable/Disable Strong Password Enforcement

Strong password enforcement is enabled/disabled in System Administration or ID CredentialCenter. When you install B.A.S.I.S., by default strong password enforcement is enabled. When you upgrade, by default strong password enforcement is disabled. To manually enable or disable strong password enforcement:

1. Select **System Options** from the **Administration** menu.
2. Select the General System Options tab.
3. Click [Modify].
4. Select or deselect the **Enforce strong passwords** checkbox.

Note: If you disable the option to enforce strong passwords, you will continue to receive a message stating your password is weak every time you log into an application until you change your B.A.S.I.S. password to meet the password standards.

Change the Database Password

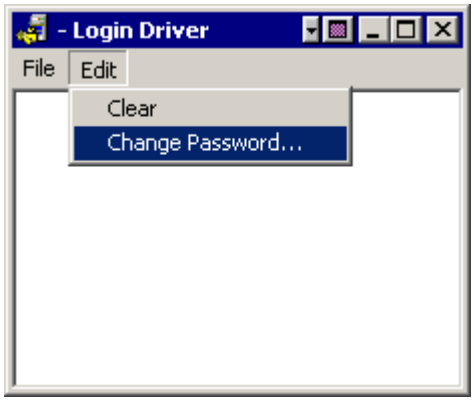
In addition to user accounts and passwords, your B.A.S.I.S. system has a database password. During installation, this password is set to MULTIMEDIA. When you log on, the application checks your database program (SQL Server, Oracle, or SQL Server Desktop Engine) for this password before allowing you to use the database. This is done “behind the scenes.”

It is highly recommended that this password be changed. Although all the machines in an Enterprise or Distributed ID system start out using the same database password (MULTIMEDIA), the database password does not need to be the same on all machines. How the database password is changed depends whether the Login Driver is running on the same computer that the database is on, and what options you choose to use. The SQL Server Desktop Engine, Oracle, or SQL password and the password in the Login Driver must be the same or you will not be able to log into any B.A.S.I.S. applications. SQL Server Desktop Engine, Oracle, and SQL passwords case-insensitive, but the password in the Login Driver is case-sensitive.

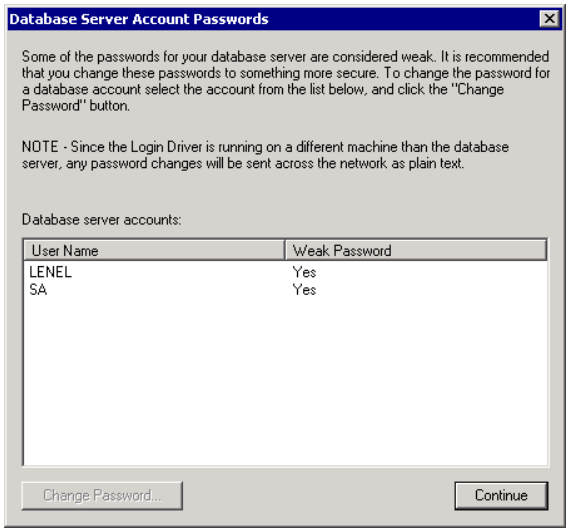
- If the Login Driver and the database are on the same computer, all you need to do is change the Lenel account password using Database Setup. Database Setup will change automatically change the password in the database program and in the Login Driver.
- If the Login Driver and the database are on different computers, you have two options: (For more information, please refer to step d on page 210.)
  - Change the database password, and change the password in the Login Driver manually later
  - Change the database password in the Login Driver as well. If you choose this option, be aware that the password will be sent over the network as plain text.

Change the BEST Account Password

1. To change the Lenel account password using the Database Setup application:
   a. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Database Setup**.
   b. The Welcome to the Database Setup window opens. Click [Continue].
   c. In the SQL Server or Oracle Login window, type the password for the database, then click [OK]. By default the login ID is “LENEL” and the password is “MULTIMEDIA”.
   d. Proceed to step 3.
2. To change the Lenel account password using the Login Driver:
   a. In the Control panel, stop the **LS Login Driver** service.
   b. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Login Driver**.
   c. The icon appears in the system tray. Right-click the icon, then select **Open**.
   d. The Login Driver window opens. From the **Edit** menu, select **Change Password**.

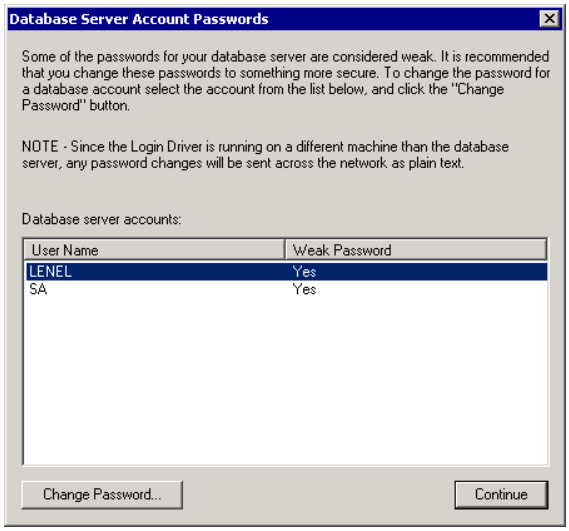


   e. Proceed to step 3.
3. If the password is considered weak, the Database Server Account Passwords window is displayed, as shown below. Refer to Password Standards on page 205 to determine a secure password.


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

4. Click [Continue]. If you wish to change the password for a database server account now, i.e., “LENEL”, select the account from the list, then click [Change Password].

The note in this message will only appear if the Login Driver and the database server are running on different machines.


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

a. The Change Password window is displayed. In the **Old password** field, type your current password. For security reasons, your password is not displayed as you type it.

Note: The checkbox in this illustration is only displayed when the Login Driver and the database server are running on two different machines.

Change Password
B.A.S.I.S. ET
BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS INTEGRATED SOLUTIONS
Old password:
New password:
Confirm password:
When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.
OK
Cancel

b. In the **New password** field, type the new password.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, type the new password again. Because the password can't be seen while you type, this gives you an extra assurance that you typed it correctly.

d. When the password is changed, it must be changed in the Login Driver and on the database server. If the Login Driver and the database server are running on the same machine, proceed to step e.

   If the Login Driver and the database server are not running on the same machine, the **When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.** checkbox appears in the Change Password window. (If they are on the same machine, this checkbox does not appear.)

   - If the checkbox is not selected (default), the password will be changed in both places. ***However, the password is sent as plain text over the network. This is the only case where the password is passed across the network in plain text when changing the password.***

Note: A connection to the Login Driver is required to connect successfully to the database. The Login Driver can be run on either the database server or the license server.

   - If the checkbox is selected, the password in the Login Driver will be changed, but you will need to change the password manually on

the database server. For more information, refer to Change the BEST Account Password on page 208.

e. Click [OK] to save the new password.

5. If you were changing the password using Database Setup, you are finished. If you were changing the password in the Login Driver:
   a. From the **File** menu, select **Exit**.
   b. Restart the **LS Login Driver** service.

About Accounts

The System Administrator should create a unique account for each user of the applications. The System Administrator can also, for each user, create a list of *permissions*, which specifies precisely which screens, fields, and buttons the user can access.

During initial installation of the application, default accounts are created. These include:

User name	Password	Type
sa	sa	system account
admin		sample
user		sample
badge		sample

These are provided as samples. You may change the passwords and use the accounts, or remove them. The exception to this is the system account, SA. By definition this account has permission to do anything in the system. A user with system access has unlimited access to the application. You cannot delete or change the system account except to modify the password, which you are strongly encouraged to do as soon as possible to discourage unauthorized use.

The first time you log into B.A.S.I.S. to configure the application, you should log in as **SA** and your password should be **SA**.

Change the System Administrator Password for the Database

It is very important that you have a secure password for your database administrator account. For SQL Server Desktop Engine and SQL Server databases, this account is “SA.” Oracle has several default administrator accounts, including INTERNAL, SYS, and SYSTEM. These passwords must be

changed to a secure password if strong password enforcement is enabled. Two steps are required to change the system administration password:

1. Change the system account password in the database using Database Setup.
2. Write down and inform administrators of the password change.

Step 1: Change the SYSTEM Account Password Using Database Setup

To change the SYSTEM account password using Database Setup, follow the same instructions listed in Change the BEST Account Password on page 208, with the following exception: in step 4 on page 209, select the system account from the list (“SA” by default), then click [Change Password].

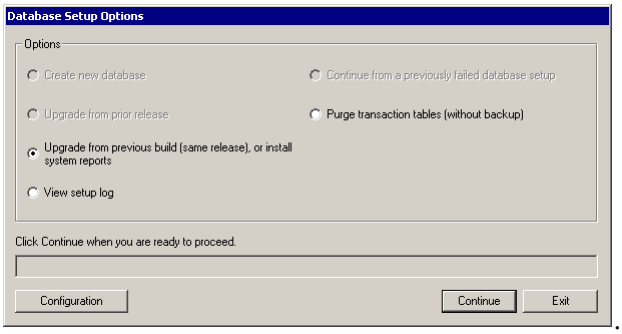
Step 2: Write Down and Inform Administrators of the Password Change

1. It is essential that you do NOT lose this password. If you do not have the system administration password, you can potentially lose your entire database since no one may gain access to the information.
2. Write down the password and store in a secure place that won’t get lost
3. Inform other system administrators of the password.
4. BE SURE to inform the customer that you have changed the system password.
5. Explain the importance of the password to the customer and recommend they keep it secure and not allow it to be “common knowledge.”

Appendix C: The Database Setup Program

The Database Setup program performs database-related functions and needs to be run to create any database.

Database Setup Options Window



Database Setup Options Window

This radio button:	Does this:
Create new database	Select this radio button if you have installed the B.A.S.I.S. application for the first time. After the B.A.S.I.S. and database software have been installed and configured, this option installs the access control-related reports, tables, triggers, and default data. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.
Upgrade from prior release	Select this radio button if B.A.S.I.S. 2000 or B.A.S.I.S. 2002 is installed on your computer and you wish to upgrade to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. For more information, refer to Chapter 2: Upgrade Procedures on page 21.
Upgrade from previous build (same release), or install system reports	Select this radio button if you are upgrading from one build of B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition to a newer build of ET Third Edition. For more information, refer to Chapter 2: Upgrade Procedures on page 21.
View setup log	Select this radio button to open Windows Notepad and display the contents of the Database Setup log file, which is updated whenever you run Database Setup.
Continue from a previously failed database setup	If you previously ran the Database Setup program but the process didn't complete because you clicked the [Stop Program] button, you can pick up where you left off by running Database Setup again with this radio button selected.

Database Setup Options Window (Continued)

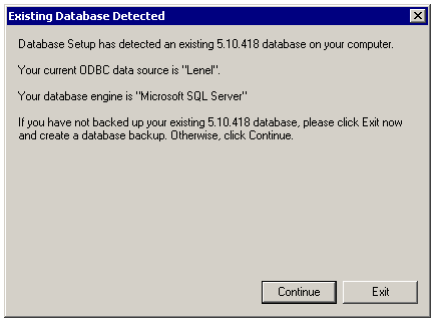
This radio button:	Does this:
Purge transaction tables (without backup)	If you previously ran the Database Setup program and a message was displayed indicating that the process can't be completed, you need to either truncate your tables or expand your database. If you are in this situation and you don't have enough room on your hard disk to expand the database, you have no choice but to truncate your database tables. This radio button does just that. It purges those tables that contain transactions; specifically the ACCTRANS, ACCTRANS_RESTORED, ACISLOG, ALARMSACK, ALARMSACK_RESTORED, and EVENTS tables. It does NOT do a backup first!
[Configuration]	Clicking on this push button displays a summary of useful database information pertaining to your ODBC data sources, B.A.S.I.S. version, installation directory, and available space on the drive that contains the database.

Database Setup Procedures

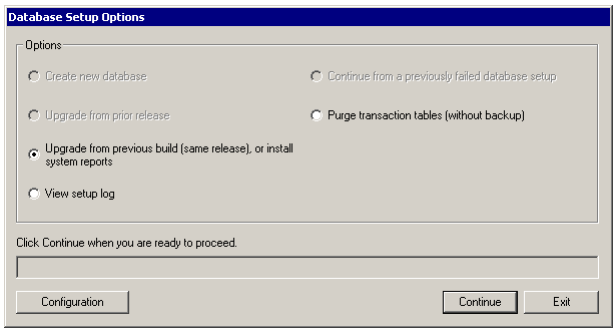
How to Run the Database Setup Program

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Database Setup**.
2. If this is a new installation, proceed to step 3. If this is an upgrade, then the existing database should be detected. Verify that ODBC data source and the

database engine listed is for the database you wish to upgrade, and then click [Continue].


Existing Database Detected
Database Setup has detected an existing 5.10.418 database on your computer.
Your current ODBC data source is "Lenel".
Your database engine is "Microsoft SQL Server"
If you have not backed up your existing 5.10.418 database, please click Exit now and create a database backup. Otherwise, click Continue.
Continue
Exit

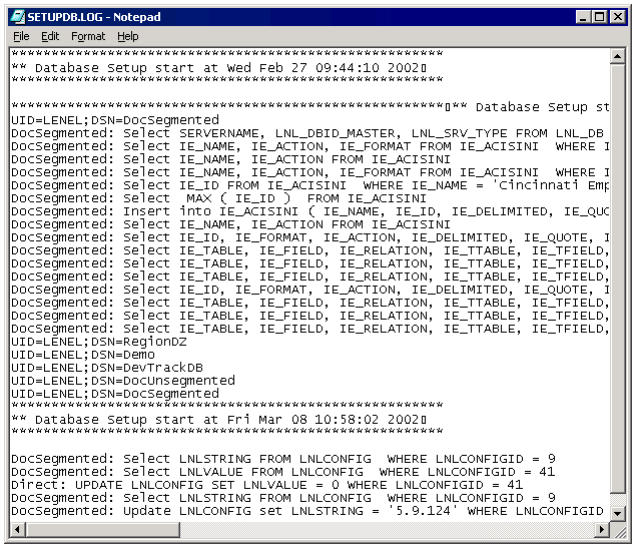
3. The Database Setup Options window opens.



4. Select the radio button for the action you would like to perform.
5. Click [Continue] to initiate the corresponding action.
6. Database Setup will proceed differently depending on whether this is a new installation of B.A.S.I.S. or an upgrade. See the upgrade procedures or the B.A.S.I.S. installation procedure for specific instructions.

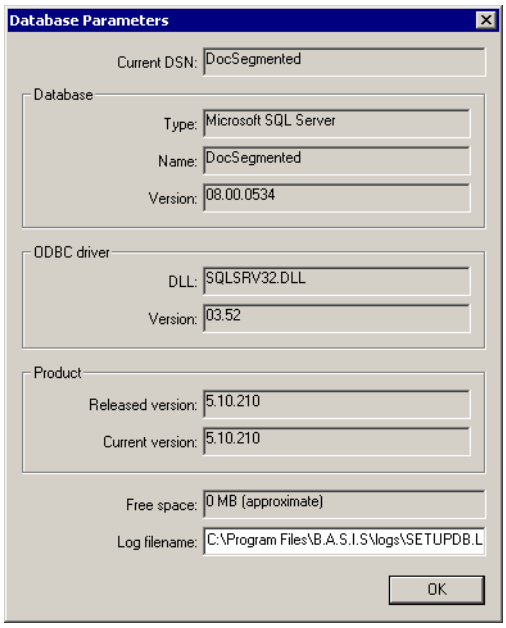
View the Setup Log

1. In the Database Setup Options window, select the **View setup log** radio button.
2. Click [Continue].
3. Windows Notepad will open and display the contents of the Database Setup log file, which is updated whenever you run Database Setup.


SETUPDB.LOG - Notepad
File Edit Format Help
** Database Setup start at Wed Feb 27 09:44:10 2002
** Database Setup st
UID=LENEL;DSN=DocSegmented
DocSegmented: Select SERVERNAME, LNL_DBID_MASTER, LNL_SRV_TYPE FROM LNL_DB
DocSegmented: Select IE_NAME, IE_ACTION, IE_FORMAT FROM IE_ACISINI WHERE I
DocSegmented: Select IE_NAME, IE_ACTION FROM IE_ACISINI
DocSegmented: Select IE_NAME, IE_ACTION, IE_FORMAT FROM IE_ACISINI WHERE I
DocSegmented: Select IE_ID FROM IE_ACISINI WHERE IE_NAME = 'Cincinnati Emp
DocSegmented: Select MAX (IE_ID) FROM IE_ACISINI
DocSegmented: Insert into IE_ACISINI (IE_NAME, IE_ID, IE_DELIMITED, IE_QUO
DocSegmented: Select IE_NAME, IE_ACTION FROM IE_ACISINI
DocSegmented: Select IE_ID, IE_FORMAT, IE_ACTION, IE_DELIMITED, IE_QUOTE, I
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
DocSegmented: Select IE_ID, IE_FORMAT, IE_ACTION, IE_DELIMITED, IE_QUOTE, I
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
DocSegmented: Select IE_TABLE, IE_FIELD, IE_RELATION, IE_TTABLE, IE_TFIELD,
UID=LENEL;DSN=RegionDZ
UID=LENEL;DSN=Demo
UID=LENEL;DSN=DevTrackDB
UID=LENEL;DSN=DocUnsegmented
UID=LENEL;DSN=DocSegmented
** Database Setup start at Fri Mar 08 10:58:02 2002
DocSegmented: Select LNLSTRING FROM LNLCONFIG WHERE LNLCONFIGID = 9
DocSegmented: Select LNLVALUE FROM LNLCONFIG WHERE LNLCONFIGID = 41
Direct: UPDATE LNLCONFIG SET LNLVALUE = 0 WHERE LNLCONFIGID = 41
DocSegmented: Select LNLSTRING FROM LNLCONFIG WHERE LNLCONFIGID = 9
DocSegmented: Update LNLCONFIG set LNLSTRING = '5.9.124' WHERE LNLCONFIGID

View Configuration Information

1. In the Database Setup Options window, click [Configuration].
2. A summary of useful database information pertaining to your ODBC data sources, B.A.S.I.S. version, installation directory, and available space on the drive that contains the database is displayed, as shown.



Change the Database or System Account Password

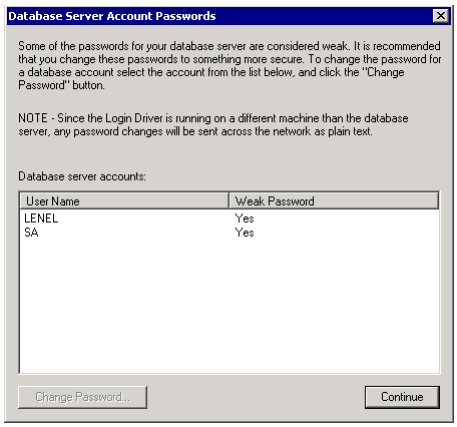
Note: This password security feature is enabled by default for new installations. To disable it, select the option on the General System Options form in the System Options folder. This is displayed by selecting **Administration** > **System Options** in System Administration or ID CredentialCenter.

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **Database Setup**.
2. The Welcome to the Database Setup window opens. Click [Continue].
3. In the SQL Server Login window, type the password for the database, then click [OK]. By default the login ID is “LENEL” and the password is “MULTIMEDIA”.
4. The following rules apply to the B.A.S.I.S. database password:
   a. Passwords cannot be blank.
   b. Passwords cannot be the same as the user name.
   c. Passwords cannot be any of the following keywords: MULTIMEDIA, PROKUPETS, PROKUPET, BEST, BASIS, PASSWORD.
   d. The following Oracle database account user name and password pairs are not allowed:

1) SYSTEM, MANAGER
2) INTERNAL, ORACLE

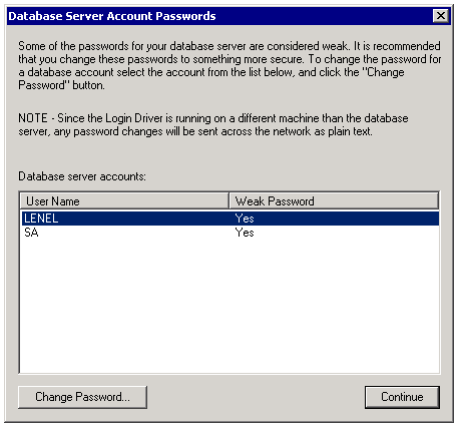
3) SYS, CHANGE_ON_INSTALL

5. If the password is considered weak, the Database Server Account Passwords window is displayed, as shown:


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

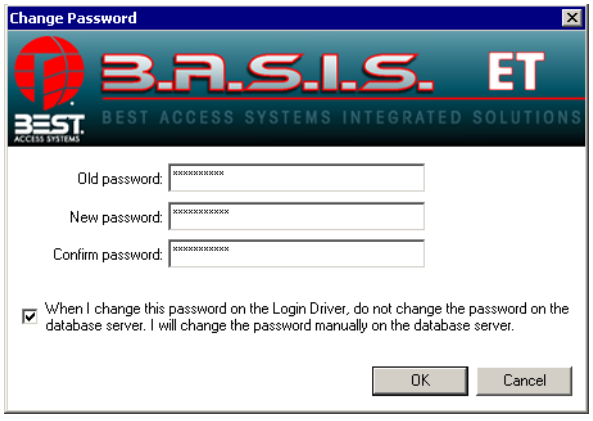
6. If you wish to change the password for a database server account now, i.e., “LENEL”, select the account from the list, then click [Change Password].

The note in this message will only appear if the Login Driver and the database server are running on different machines.


Database Server Account Passwords
Some of the passwords for your database server are considered weak. It is recommended that you change these passwords to something more secure. To change the password for a database account select the account from the list below, and click the "Change Password" button.
NOTE - Since the Login Driver is running on a different machine than the database server, any password changes will be sent across the network as plain text.
Database server accounts:
User Name
Weak Password
LENEL
Yes
SA
Yes
Change Password...
Continue

a. The Change Password window is displayed. In the **Old password** field, type your current password. For security reasons, your password is not displayed as you type it.

The checkbox in this illustration is only displayed when the Login Driver and the database server are running on two different machines.


Change Password
B.A.S.I.S. ET
BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS INTEGRATED SOLUTIONS
Old password:
New password:
Confirm password:
When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.
OK
Cancel

b. In the **New password** field, type the new password.

c. In the **Confirm password** field, type the new password again. Because the password can't be seen while you type, this gives you an extra assurance that you typed it correctly.

d. When the password is changed, it must be changed on the Login Driver and on the database server. If the Login Driver and the database server are running on the same machine, proceed to step e.

   If the Login Driver and the database server are not running on the same machine, the **When I change this password on the Login Driver, do not change the password on the database server. I will change the password manually on the database server.** checkbox appears in the Change Password window.

   - If the checkbox is not selected (default), the password will be changed in both places. ***However, the password is sent as plain text over the network. This is the only case where the password is passed across the network in plain text when changing the password.***

Note: A connection to the Login Driver is required to connect successfully to the database. The Login Driver can be run on either the database server or the license server.

   - If the checkbox is selected, the password in the Login Driver will be changed, but you will need to change the password manually on the database server. For more information, refer to Change the BEST Account Password on page 208.

e. Click [OK] to save the new password.

Appendix D: Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine

If you can successfully log into your B.A.S.I.S. 2000 installation and it is on a computer with the Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 operating system or newer, then your Access database will automatically be upgraded to SQL Server Desktop Engine during the standard upgrade to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. If you have upgraded your operating system or installed a new operating system and you cannot log into B.A.S.I.S. 2000, you will need to manually upgrade your B.A.S.I.S. Access database to SQL Server Desktop Engine when you upgrade to B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition.

Procedures

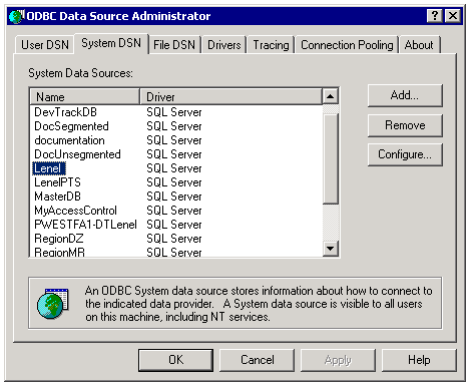
Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine Before Running Database Setup

Use this procedure to manually upgrade your Access database to SQL Server Desktop Engine if:

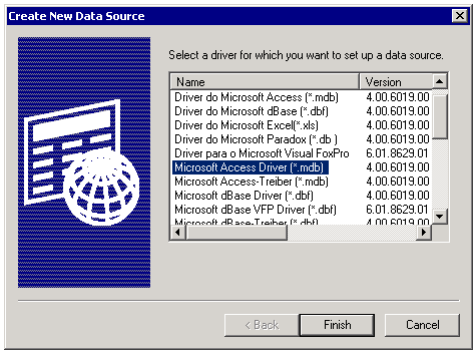
- The Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 operating system (or newer) is installed. Refer to the release notes for specific operating systems that are supported.
- B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition has not been installed yet, and Database Setup has NOT been run for B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition yet.

- The Access database you wish to upgrade has been copied to the computer that B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition will be installed on.

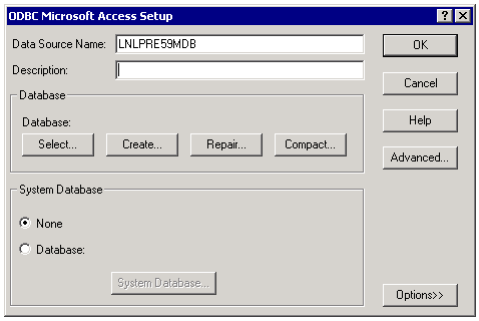
1. Before installing B.A.S.I.S., click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Administrative Tools** > **Data Sources (ODBC)**. Click the System DSN tab.
2. In the System Data Sources listing window, verify that there is a DSN named "Lenel" with an "SQL Server" driver listed, as shown.



3. In the System Data Sources listing window, look to see if there is a DSN named "LNLPRE59MDB." If there is not, you must create one by doing the following:
   a. Click [Add].
   b. The Create New Data Source window is displayed. Select the "Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb)" option, then click [Finish].


Create New Data Source
Select a driver for which you want to set up a data source.
Name
Version
Driver do Microsoft Access (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft dBase (*.dbf) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft Excel(*.xls) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft Paradox (*.db) 4.00.6019.00
Driver para o Microsoft Visual FoxPro 6.01.8629.01
Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft Access-Treiber (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft dBase Driver (*.dbf) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft dBase VFP Driver (*.dbf) 6.01.8629.01
< Back
Finish
Cancel

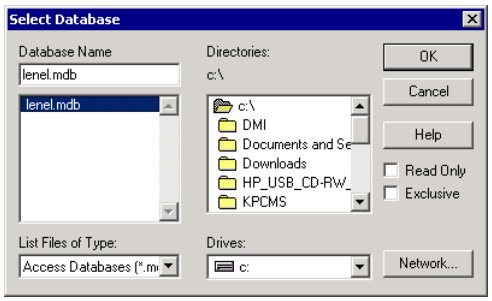
   c. The ODBC Microsoft Access Setup window is displayed. In the **Data Source Name** field, type `LNLPRE59MDB`, as shown.



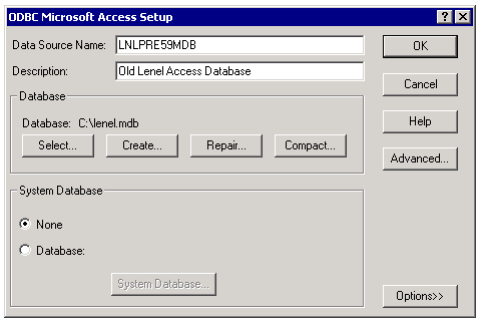
d. In the **Description** field, type a descriptive name for the database.

e. Click [Select].

f. The Select Database window is displayed. Navigate to the Access database you want to upgrade, then click [OK].



g. The ODBC Microsoft Access Setup window should look similar to the following:



h. Click [OK].

4. On the ODBC Data Source Administrator window, click [OK].

5. Install B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition. When prompted, choose Server/SQL Server Desktop Engine.

6. Open the **ACS.INI** file and add the following new line at the end of the [Database] section:
AccessDSN="LNLPRE59MDB"

   The **ACS.INI** Database section should look like this:

   [Database]
   Connect="ODBC;DSN=Lenel"

DataSourceType=0
AccessDSN="LNLPRE59MDB"

7. Run the Database Setup program and follow the instructions which will finish the upgrade from the Access database to the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine. For more information, refer to Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. Access Database on page 30.

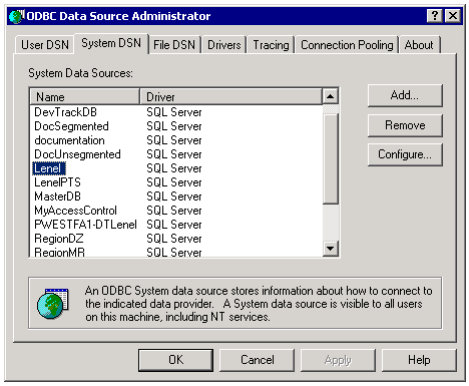
Manually Upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine After Running Database Setup

Use this procedure to manually upgrade your Access database to SQL Server Desktop Engine if:

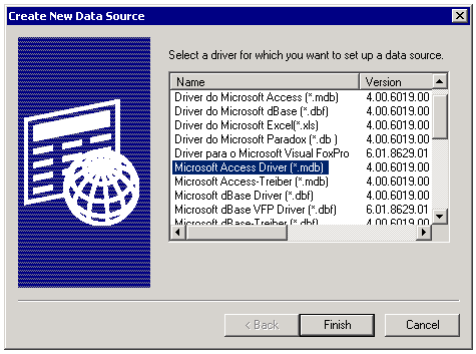
- B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition has already been installed on a computer that is running the Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 operating system (or newer). Refer to the release notes for specific operating systems that are supported.
- Database Setup HAS been run for B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition.

- The Access database you wish to upgrade has been copied to the computer that B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition is installed on.

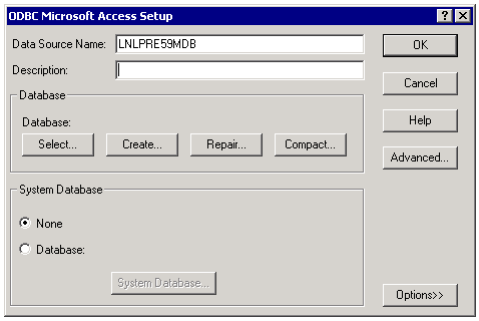
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Administrative Tools** > **Data Sources (ODBC)**. Click the System DSN tab.
2. In the System Data Sources listing window, verify that there is a DSN named "Lenel" with an "SQL Server" driver listed, as shown.



3. In the System Data Sources listing window, look to see if there is a DSN named "LNLPRE59MDB." If there is not, you must create one by doing the following:
   a. Click [Add].
   b. The Create New Data Source window is displayed. Select the "Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb)" option, then click [Finish].


Create New Data Source
Select a driver for which you want to set up a data source.
Name
Version
Driver do Microsoft Access (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft dBase (*.dbf) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft Excel(*.xls) 4.00.6019.00
Driver do Microsoft Paradox (*.db) 4.00.6019.00
Driver para o Microsoft Visual FoxPro 6.01.8629.01
Microsoft Access Driver (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft Access-Treiber (*.mdb) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft dBase Driver (*.dbf) 4.00.6019.00
Microsoft dBase VFP Driver (*.dbf) 6.01.8629.01
< Back
Finish
Cancel

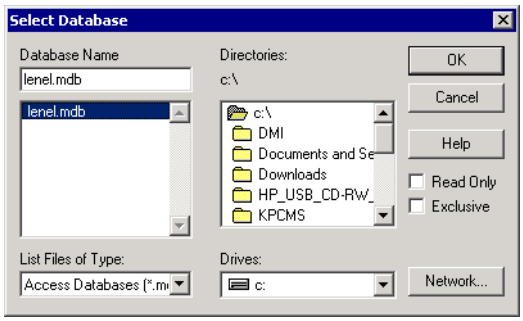
   c. The ODBC Microsoft Access Setup window is displayed. In the **Data Source Name** field, type `LNLPRE59MDB`, as shown.



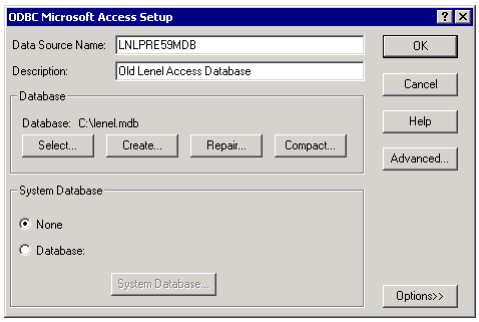
d. In the **Description** field, type a descriptive name for the database.

e. Click [Select].

f. The Select Database window is displayed. Navigate to the Access database you want to upgrade, then click [OK].



g. The ODBC Microsoft Access Setup window should look similar to the following:



h. Click [OK].

4. On the ODBC Data Source Administrator window, click [OK].

5. Open the **ACS.INI** file and add the following new line at the end of the [Database] section:
AccessDSN=“LNLPRE59MDB”
The **ACS.INI** Database section should look like this:

[Database]

Connect=“ODBC;DSN=Lenel”

DataSourceType=0

AccessDSN="LNLPRE59MDB"

6. Run the Database Installation Utility and attach the **AccessControl_Data.mdf** file. For specific instructions, follow the Attach an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database procedure on page 237.

7. Run the Database Setup program, which will finish the upgrade from the Access database to the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine. For more information, refer to Upgrade Your B.A.S.I.S. Access Database on page 30.

Appendix E: Transfer an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database

You may wish to transfer an SQL Server Desktop Engine database for any number of reasons, although the most common reason is to upgrade to a new server machine. To transfer an SQL Server Desktop Engine database to a new server, complete the following procedures in the order listed:

- Back Up the SQL Server Desktop Engine Database on page 229
- Insure Minimum Server Requirements are Met on page 229
- Install B.A.S.I.S. on the New Server on page 229
- Stop the MSSQLSERVER Service on page 229
- Copy Files from the Old Server to the New Server on page 230
- Restart the MSSQLSERVER Service on page 230
- Change the Database Owner on page 231
- Verify the Database Transfer was Successful on page 233

Back Up the SQL Server Desktop Engine Database

Make sure that you have an up-to-date database backup in a safe location. For more information, refer to SQL Server Desktop Engine Database Backup Procedures on page 192.

Insure Minimum Server Requirements are Met

Make sure that the new server meets the specifications that are listed in the current BEST price book. Although the server MUST meet the minimum specifications listed, your system will perform much better if the server also meets the recommended specifications.

Install B.A.S.I.S. on the New Server

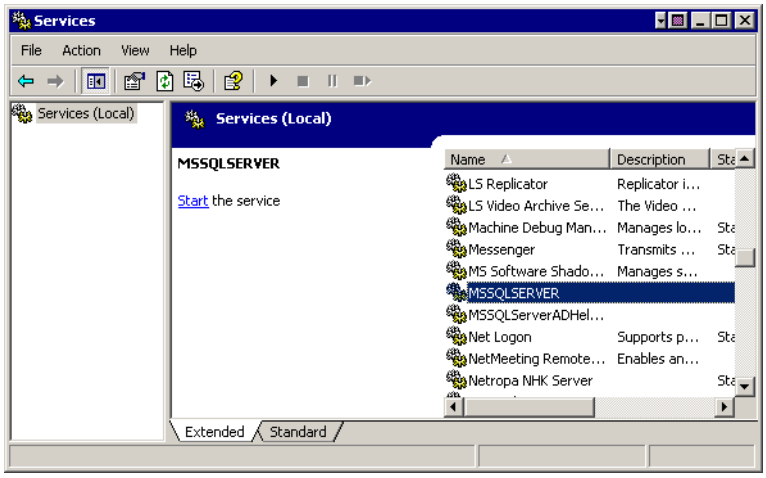
Install B.A.S.I.S. on the new server. Be sure to select the SQL Server Desktop Engine option when you are prompted to select a database system. For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.

Stop the MSSQLSERVER Service

Note: This procedure describes stopping the MSSQLSERVER service on a Windows XP machine. This process can also be done on a Windows 2000 machine, but the menu options may differ slightly.

The MSSQLSERVER service must be stopped on both the old server and the new server before proceeding. To do this:

1. On the old server, click Start and navigate to the **All Programs** > **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click “Administrative Tools.”
3. Double-click “Services.”
4. In the Services window, right-click on MSSQLSERVER and select **Stop**.



5. Repeat steps 1–4 on the new server as well.

Copy Files from the Old Server to the New Server

Copy the **AccessControl_data.mdf** and **AccessControl_log.ldf** files on the old server to the new server, making sure to replace the files that exist on the new server. These files are located on the old server in **C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Data**, and must be copied into the same location on the new server.

Restart the MSSQLSERVER Service

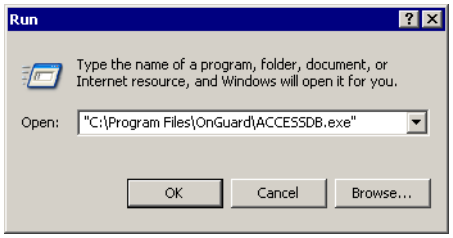
Note: This procedure describes stopping the MSSQLSERVER service on a Windows XP machine. This process can also be done on a Windows 2000 machine, but the menu option names may differ slightly.

1. On the new server, click Start and navigate to the **All Programs** > **Control Panel**.
2. Double-click “Administrative Tools.”
3. Double-click “Services.”
4. In the Services window, right-click on MSSQLSERVER and select **Start**.

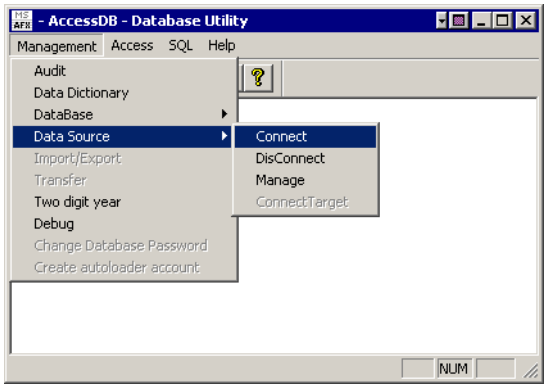
Change the Database Owner

SQL Server Desktop Engine does not provide an interface for accessing the database engine. Therefore, you must follow this procedure to be able to log into the database directly using the ODBC connection created for B.A.S.I.S. so that you can run the **DBOwner.sql** query.

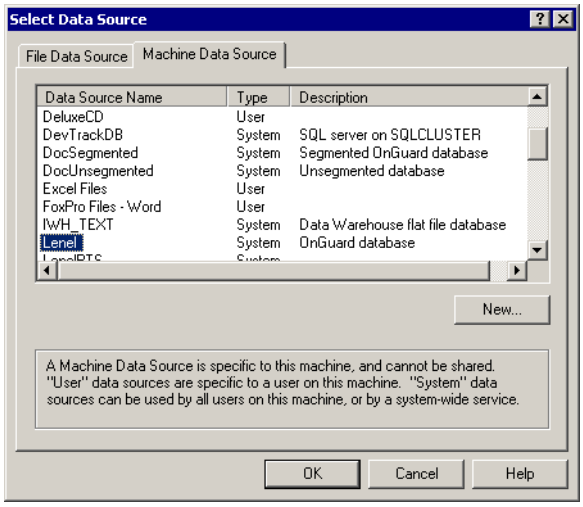
1. On the taskbar, click the Start button, and then click **Run**.
2. Click [Browse], navigate to the B.A.S.I.S. installation directory, and then click on the **ACCESSDB.exe** application. The path to the application will then be listed in the **Open** field. Click [OK].



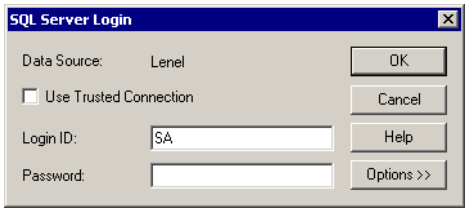
3. The AccessDB application opens. From the **Management** menu, select **Data Source** > **Connect**.



4. Click the Machine Data Source tab, select the “Lenel” Data Source Name, and then click [OK].



5. The SQL Server Login window opens.



   a. In the **Login ID** field, type SA.

   b. Leave the **Password** field blank and click [OK]. The SQL Server Login window will close, leaving just the main window open.

6. Execute the “sp_changedbowner” commands using either of the following methods:

   a. From the **SQL** menu, select **SQL File**. The Enter Script window opens.

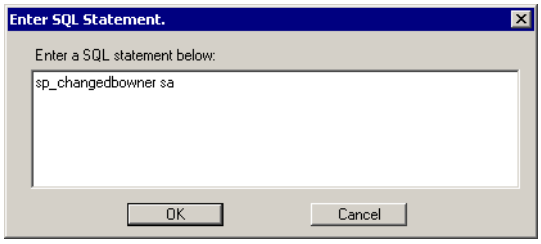
      1) Insert Disc 2 of the B.A.S.I.S. Installation disk set into the CD-ROM.

      2) On the Enter Script window, click [Browse] and navigate to the **DBOwner.sql** file in the **Lenel Database Files** directory on the CD-ROM.

      3) Select the file, and then click [Open]. The path to the **DBOwner.sql** file will be displayed in the Enter Script window.

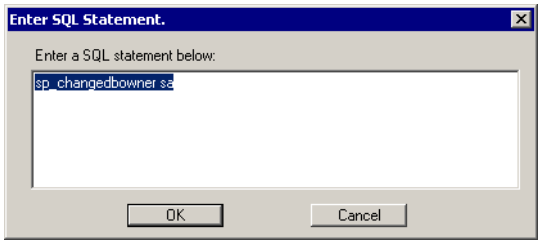
4) On the Enter Script window, click [OK]. If no error message is displayed, then the database owner was successfully changed.

b. From the **SQL** menu, select **Statement**. The Enter SQL Statement window opens.



1) Type the following: `sp_changedbowner sa`

2) Click [OK]. If the command gets highlighted in blue, then it completed without error, and you are ready to enter the next command.



3) Type the following: `sp_changedbowner lenel`

4) Click [OK]. As long as the command gets highlighted blue, the database owner has been successfully changed.

Verify the Database Transfer was Successful

Log into System Administration and verify that the database is indeed your old database.

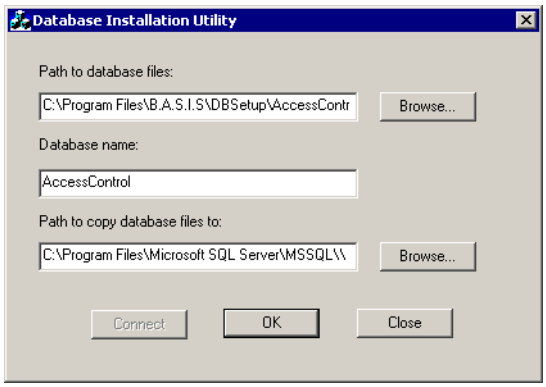
Appendix F: Database Installation Utility

Database Installation Utility Overview

The Database Installation Utility is used to attach an SQL Server Desktop Engine/SQL Server database for use with the B.A.S.I.S. software. The Database Installation Utility copies the existing database data files (MDF and LDF), attaches the database, and updates the Lenel Data Source Name (DSN) to point to the correct database. It does not create the tables in a new database - Database Setup must be run.

The Database Installation Utility is run automatically at the end of the B.A.S.I.S. installation when either a new SQL Server Desktop Engine database or a demo database has been selected. It is also installed on the local machine in the B.A.S.I.S. installation directory so that it can be run manually after the installation has completed.

Database Installation Utility Window



Database Installation Utility Window Field Table

Form Element	Type	Comment
Path to database files	Text	The source data file (MDF) name. When the Database Installation Utility is run automatically during the B.A.S.I.S. installation, the **Path to database files** and the **Database name** are determined based on the choice of the SQL Server Desktop Engine or Demo database. • The default empty SQL Server Desktop Engine database is **AccessControl_Data.mdf**. • The B.A.S.I.S. demo database is **AccessControlDemo_Data.mdf**.
Browse	Push button	Click to select the **Path to database files**.
Database name	Text	The name of the database that will be used with the B.A.S.I.S. software. When the Database Installation Utility is run automatically during the B.A.S.I.S. installation, the **Database name** and the **Path to database files** are determined based on the choice of the SQL Server Desktop Engine or Demo database.
Path to copy database files to	Text	The destination directory. The destination directory will always default to the SQL Server Desktop Engine/SQL Server default data directory, as configured in SQL Server Desktop Engine/SQL Server and stored in the registry.
Browse	Push button	Click to select the **Path to copy database files to**.
Connect	Push button	When the Database Installation Utility opens, it attempts to connect to the database for the DSN that is currently specified in the [Database] section in the **ACS.INI** file. For example, if the following is specified in the [Database] section: Connect="ODBC;DSN=Lenel" then the Database Installation Utility will attempt to connect to the database associated with the Lenel DSN. • If the database connection succeeds, the [Connect] button is grayed out. • If the database connection fails, an error message that says, "The DSN selected in your ACS.INI is invalid. Please check your ODBC configuration." is displayed and the [Connect] button is enabled. If this message is displayed, open the **ACS.INI** file and specify the correct DSN, save and close the **ACS.INI** file, and click the [Connect] button. If the connection is successful, the [Connect] button will become grayed out.
OK	Push button	Created or attaches the specified database.
Close	Push button	Closes the Database Installation Utility without performing any function.

Database Installation Utility Procedures

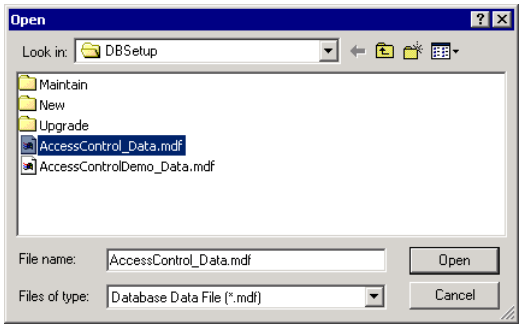
Attach an SQL Server Desktop Engine Database

Run the Database Installation Utility by doing the following:

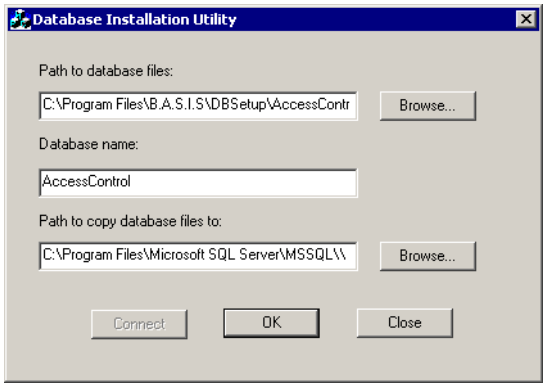
1. In Windows Explorer, navigate to the B.A.S.I.S. installation directory (**C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.** by default), and then double-click on the **DatabaseInstallationUtility.exe** file to run it.
2. The Database Installation Utility window is displayed. When the Database Installation Utility opens, it attempts to connect to the database for the DSN that is currently specified in the [Database] section in the **ACS.INI** file. For example, if the following is specified in the [Database] section:
   Connect="ODBC;DSN=Lenel"
   then the Database Installation Utility will attempt to connect to the database associated with the Lenel DSN.
   - If the database connection succeeds, the [Connect] button is grayed out. Proceed to step 3.
   - If the database connection fails, an error message that says, "The DSN selected in your ACS.INI is invalid. Please check your ODBC configuration." is displayed and the [Connect] button is enabled. If this message is displayed, open the **ACS.INI** file and specify the correct DSN, save and close the **ACS.INI** file, and click the [Connect] button.

If the connection is successful, the [Connect] button will become grayed out. Proceed to step 3.

3. Click [Browse...] to choose the path to the database files.
4. The Open window is displayed. Navigate to the **DBSetup** folder in the B.A.S.I.S. installation directory, select the MDF file that you wish to attach, and then click [Open]. MDF files you may wish to attach include:
   - The default empty SQL Server Desktop Engine database **AccessControl_Data.mdf**.
   - The B.A.S.I.S. demo database **AccessControlDemo_Data.mdf**.



5. In the **Database name** field, type `AccessControl` or any other name you wish to use, as shown.

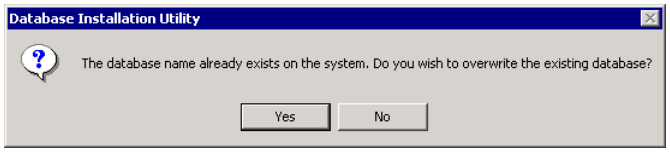


6. The recommended path is the default path specified in the **Path to copy database files to** field. This default path is where the files would be stored if

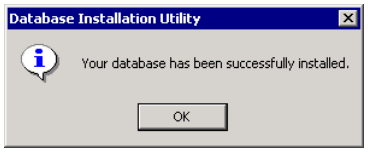
you were using the SQL Server user interface (which does not come with SQL Server Desktop Engine) to create a database.

- If you do not change the default setting in the **Path to copy database files to** field and a database with the name you specified already exists, the database will be overwritten.
- If you do change the default setting, a new database will be created in that location.

7. Click [OK].
8. If you did not change the default setting, the following message is displayed. Click [Yes].


Database Installation Utility
The database name already exists on the system. Do you wish to overwrite the existing database?
Yes
No

9. The DSN is updated to point to the database, and a message is displayed that indicates that the database was successfully installed. Click [OK].



10. On the Database Installation Utility window, click [Close].

Important: After attaching a database, you must run Database Setup to create the tables in the database.

Appendix G: Change the Database Owner in SQL Server Desktop Engine

Since SQL Server Desktop Engine doesn't provide an interface for accessing the database engine, use the following procedure to log into the database directly using the ODBC connection created for B.A.S.I.S.:

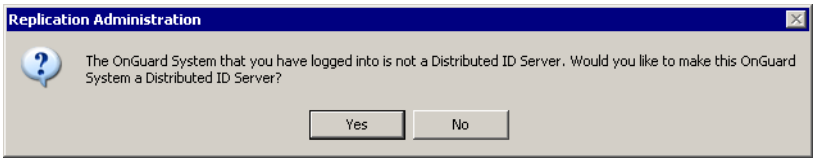
1. From the Start menu, select **Control Panel** > **Administrative Tools** > **ODBC Data Sources**.
   a. On the System DSN tab, click [Add…]. Choose "SQL Server" for the driver.
   b. For the ODBC Name, type `Master`. Choose your database server. (Description is not needed.) Click [Next].
   c. Select the **With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by user.** radio button. For the **Login ID**, enter "SA". Leave the **Password** field blank. Click [Next].
   d. Change the default database to AccessControl. Click [Next].
   e. Click [Finish].
2. From the Start menu, select **Run**. Click [Browse…]. Browse to the B.A.S.I.S. folder and select the 'ACCESSDB.exe' application. Click [Open] and then [OK] to run this application.
3. From the **Management** menu, select **Datasource** > **Connect**.
   a. On the Machine DataSource tab, select "Lenel". Click [OK].
   b. You will be prompted for the database login ID and password. For the **Login ID**, enter "SA". Leave the **Password** field blank. Click [OK].
   c. The screen will return to the main window.
   d. From the **SQL** menu, select **Statement**. Enter the following statement in the text box:
   `sp_changedbowner lenel`
   Click [Enter] when you are ready to execute the statement.
   e. If the command returns highlighted, then it completed without error.
4. Log into a B.A.S.I.S. application and verify that the change was successful.

Appendix H: Configuring a Distributed ID/Mobile Badging System

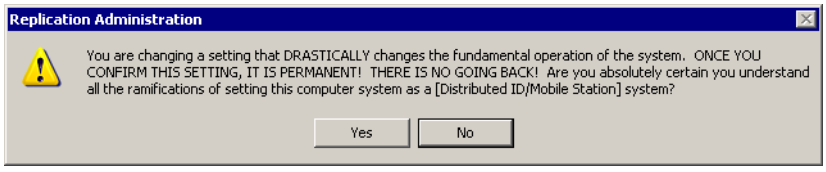
Configure the Server to be a Distributed ID Master

To configure the main server to be a Distributed ID Master Server:

1. Follow the steps listed in the Access Control Server/Configuration & Monitoring Station on page 14 in this user guide. This will ensure that the required software is installed and that the database is set up.
2. Start and log into Replication Administration on the Distributed ID Master Server.
3. When you log into Replication Administration for the first time, it will detect that you have a standard database. The following message is displayed. Click [Yes].

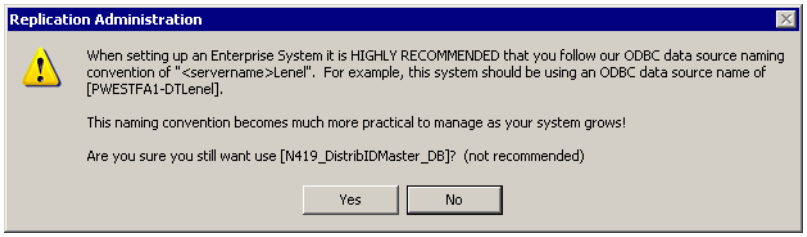

Replication Administration
The OnGuard System that you have logged into is not a Distributed ID Server. Would you like to make this OnGuard System a Distributed ID Server?
Yes
No

4. The Distributed ID Settings form is displayed. In the **This System's Distributed ID Setting** drop-down list, select "Distributed ID Master Server."
5. Click [OK].
6. The following message is displayed. Click [Yes].

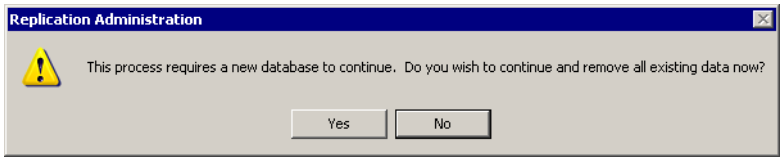

Replication Administration
You are changing a setting that DRASTICALLY changes the fundamental operation of the system. ONCE YOU CONFIRM THIS SETTING, IT IS PERMANENT! THERE IS NO GOING BACK! Are you absolutely certain you understand all the ramifications of setting this computer system as a [Distributed ID/Mobile Station] system?
Yes
No

7. The recommended naming scheme for new databases is "<***Server name***>Lenel." If the name of the database you are configuring follows this naming scheme, no warning message is displayed and you can skip ahead to step 8. If the database you are configuring is not named according to this naming scheme and you wish to proceed using the current database name,

click [Yes]. Otherwise, click [No] and create a new database that follows the recommended naming scheme.


Replication Administration
When setting up an Enterprise System it is HIGHLY RECOMMENDED that you follow our ODBC data source naming convention of "<servername>Lenel". For example, this system should be using an ODBC data source name of [PWESTFA1-DTLenel].
This naming convention becomes much more practical to manage as your system grows!
Are you sure you still want use [N419_DistribIDMaster_DB]? (not recommended)
Yes
No

8. If your database does not contain any data, skip ahead to step 9. If the following message is displayed, then your database already has data in it. Click [Yes] to remove all existing data.


Replication Administration
This process requires a new database to continue. Do you wish to continue and remove all existing data now?
Yes
No

9. The following message is displayed. Click [OK].

Replication Administration
Your new Distributed ID Server has been successfully configured. You will now be logged out of Replication Administration.
OK

The second step is to configure the Distributed ID Mobile Badging Station:

Configure a Mobile Badging Station

1. Run the B.A.S.I.S. setup on the mobile badging station. Choose a “Server installation”. When selecting components, check only the following options:
   - Core Program Files
   - ID CredentialCenter
   - Replicator
   - Online Manuals (optional)
2. After the installation is complete and the computer has been rebooted, open the ID CredentialCenter program. Configuring a mobile badging station

requires that no cardholder data exists, so you must delete the default record in the database. To do this:

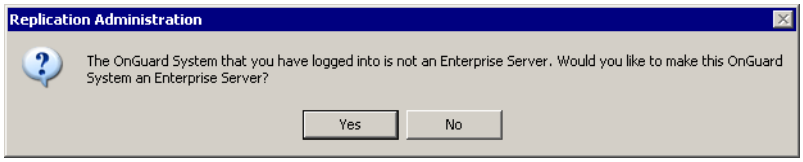
a. Select the **Cardholders** option from the **Administration** menu.

b. Click [Search], then [OK]. **There should be only one sample record for Lisa Lake. If this is not true, something is wrong with your installation!**

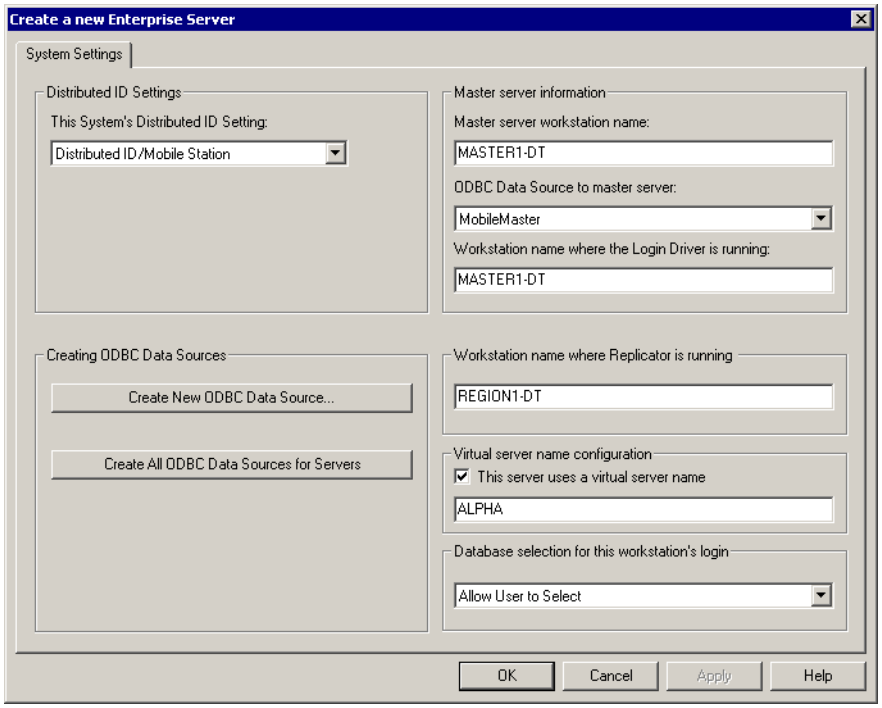
c. Click [Delete], then [OK].

3. Start and log into Replication Administration on the Distributed ID Mobile Station.

4. When you log into Replication Administration for the first time, it will detect that you have a standard database. The following message is displayed. Click [Yes].


Replication Administration
The OnGuard System that you have logged into is not an Enterprise Server. Would you like to make this OnGuard System an Enterprise Server?
Yes
No

5. The System Settings form is displayed.



a. Create a new ODBC DSN that points to the Distributed ID Master server:

1) Click [Create New ODBC Data Source…].

2) For **ODBC Data Source Name**, type a name for the DSN. The recommended name is **LenelMaster**.

3) Select the correct **Database Type** for the master database server. If it's SQL Server, type the computer name of the server, or click [Browse] to select a server.

4) Click [OK].

b. In the **This System's Distributed ID Setting** drop-down list, select "Distributed ID/Mobile Station."

c. Specify the **Master server workstation name**.

d. Select the **ODBC Data Source to master server**.

e. Specify the **Workstation name where the Login Driver is running**.

f. Specify the **Workstation name where Replicator is running**.

g. In the Virtual server name configuration section, select whether the station uses a virtual server name (also known as the failover name). This setting only pertains to systems using Legato.

- By default the **This server uses a virtual server name** checkbox is deselected, which indicates that the station name specified is the actual machine name of the station.
- If you specified a failover name for the station in Legato, then you will need to select the **This server uses a virtual server name** checkbox and enter the failover name used to identify the station in the Legato system rather than the actual machine name.

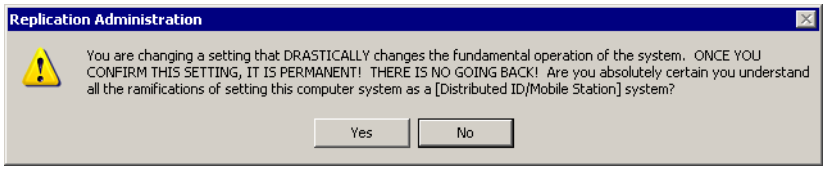
Note: You can modify this value after the station has been created by double-clicking "Enterprise Server Configuration" beneath the station in the System Tree.

---

h. It is also recommended you set the **Database selection for this workstation's login** to "Allow User to Select".

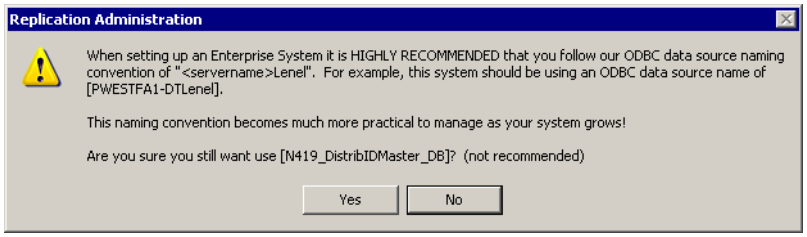
i. Click [OK].

6. The following message is displayed. Click [Yes].

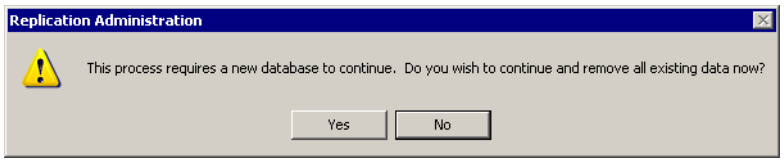

Replication Administration
You are changing a setting that DRASTICALLY changes the fundamental operation of the system. ONCE YOU CONFIRM THIS SETTING, IT IS PERMANENT! THERE IS NO GOING BACK! Are you absolutely certain you understand all the ramifications of setting this computer system as a [Distributed ID/Mobile Station] system?
Yes
No

7. The recommended naming scheme for new databases is "<***Server name***>Lenel." If the name of the database you are configuring follows this naming scheme, no warning message is displayed and you can skip ahead to step 8. If the database you are configuring is not named according to this naming scheme and you wish to proceed using the current database name,

click [Yes]. Otherwise, click [No] and create a new database that follows the recommended naming scheme.

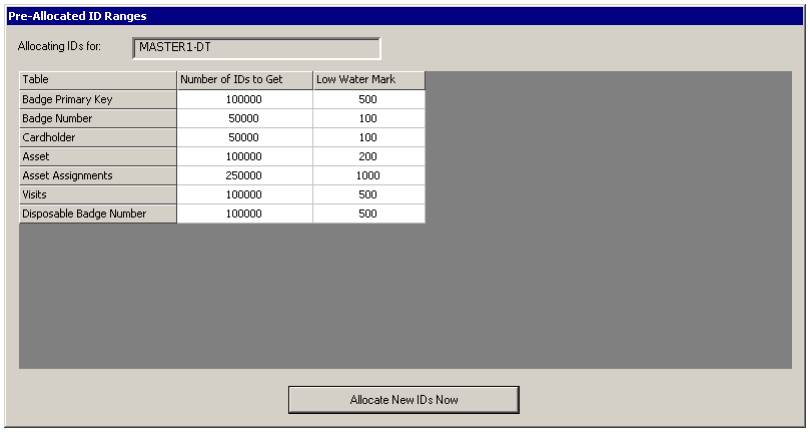

Replication Administration
When setting up an Enterprise System it is HIGHLY RECOMMENDED that you follow our ODBC data source naming convention of "<servername>Lenel". For example, this system should be using an ODBC data source name of [PWESTFA1-DTLenel].
This naming convention becomes much more practical to manage as your system grows!
Are you sure you still want use [N419_DistribIDMaster_DB]? (not recommended)
Yes
No

8. If your database does not contain any data, skip ahead to step 9. If the following message is displayed, then your database already has data in it. Click [Yes] to remove all existing data.

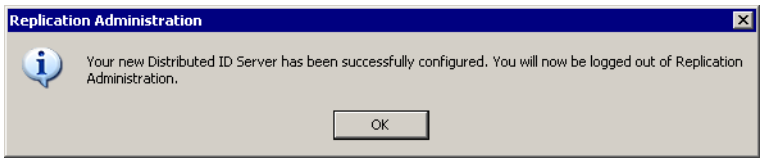

Replication Administration
This process requires a new database to continue. Do you wish to continue and remove all existing data now?
Yes
No

9. The Pre-Allocated ID Ranges form is displayed. This allows you to adjust the amount of pre-allocated IDs for each record type that you wish to “grab” for the region initially. You can also adjust the “Low Water Mark”, which is the amount of remaining IDs below which new IDs will automatically be “grabbed” again. There is normally no need to change these default settings; however you may wish to adjust the number of Cardholder and Badge IDs you wish to allocate depending on how many new Cardholders/Badges you

expect to be added at the region over time. New pre-allocated IDs may be obtained at ANY time after the region is configured.



10. Click [Allocate New IDs Now] when you are ready to continue.
11. The following message is displayed. Click [OK].


Replication Administration
Your new Distributed ID Server has been successfully configured. You will now be logged out of Replication Administration.
OK

Your computer is now configured to perform mobile badging. However, if you want to download all existing cardholder information from the Distributed ID Master Server, you must do so by using the Replicator application and performing a Full Download of the cardholder records. Once you run a Full Download of cardholder records for the first time, you can then do Incremental Downloads as needed, to download only changes that have occurred since your last Full Download. For more information please refer to the Replicator User Guide.

Appendix I: The License Server

The License Server has two main functions: it eliminates the hardware dongle on all client computers and it allows for concurrent licensing of the B.A.S.I.S. software. The License Server is installed only on the server, not on client machines.

A hardware dongle is only needed on the server. Each client computer running B.A.S.I.S. uses a software license instead of a hardware dongle.

Concurrent licensing allows you more flexibility of where B.A.S.I.S. applications are run. Each B.A.S.I.S. application has a separate concurrent license count. The software license is based on the number of computers you wish to run each separate B.A.S.I.S. application at the same time. For example, a ten-user concurrent license for Alarm Monitoring will allow Alarm Monitoring to run on ten computers at the same time, although Alarm Monitoring may be installed on more than ten computers.

Important: The License Server must be run under an administrator account. It MUST be running whenever any B.A.S.I.S. applications are running, as well as when you wish to use the License Administration web application. If the License Server is not running, B.A.S.I.S. applications and the License Administration application will not run.

There are two ways that the License Server can be run on a server running Windows: as a regular application, or as a Windows service.

- The License Server is installed as a service by default when the B.A.S.I.S. applications are installed on a server running Windows. The License Server will automatically be started when the server is running.
- The License Server can also be run as a regular application. This means that the License Server must be started on the server manually, as you would any other application.

ACS.INI Settings Related to the License Server

Entries for the **Host** and **Port** are automatically entered into the **ACS.INI** file when B.A.S.I.S. is installed. Normally, you should not have to open the **ACS.INI** file to adjust these settings. However, if you change the computer that the License Server is running on, you may need to change the **Host** and/or **Port** settings. The settings are as follows:

- **Host:** this should be set to the name of the machine running the License Server
- **Port:** this should be set to the number of the port the License Server is listening on -- use **8189**, which is the default value. If you accepted the default, it was written into the **ACS.INI** file. If you entered a different

setting, it was written into both the **ACS.INI** file AND the **…B.A.S.I.S.\LicenceServerConfig\Server.Properties** file. This file is only created during the install *if* the port setting was changed. If you want to change the port setting in the **ACS.INI** file *after* the installation (either to a new setting or back to 8189), then you must also change it in the **Server.Properties** file.

License Server Procedures

Running the License Server from the Command Line

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Command Prompt**.
2. Change to the directory that contains the License Server executable. This is the directory where you installed B.A.S.I.S., which is **C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S.** by default.
3. Run the command **LicenseServer -interactive**. This will start the License Server.
4. To stop the License Server, press **CTRL-C**.

Running the License Server in Windows

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **License Server**.
2. The License Server will start. There is no visual indication that the License Server is running, but the **LicenseServer.exe** process will be listed in the Task Manager on the Processes tab.

Determining if the License Server is Running

1. In Windows, hold down <Ctrl>, <Alt>, <Delete> consecutively, so that they are all pressed at the same time.
2. The Windows Security window will open. Click [Task Manager…].
3. The Windows Task Manager window will open.
4. Click the **Processes** tab.
5. If the **LicenseServer.exe** process is listed in the window, then the License Server is running. If **LicenseServer.exe** is not listed, then it is not running.

Appendix J: CCD/CCTV Video Setup for Discontinued Hardware

Configuring Video Hardware and Software

This procedure will verify that your system video capture board and required Windows drivers are configured properly for live video capture/CCTV video with one of the following Integral Technologies video capture boards: FlashPoint ISA, FlashPoint PCI, FlashPoint Lite PCI, FlashPoint 128 and FlashPoint Lite 128. Those with FlashPoint 3D Lite or FlashPoint 3D Plus should refer to Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup. Those with other capture boards should contact your BEST customer service representative before proceeding. Be sure to perform Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware through Step 3: Install the FlashPoint Video Capture Board **before** you install any Integral Technologies FlashPoint software.

The latest setup software for all of the discontinued Integral Technologies FlashPoint board models (FlashPoint ISA, FlashPoint PCI, Flashpoint Lite PCI, FlashPoint 128, FlashPoint Lite 128) is version 3.4. The FlashPoint software is available for download from Integral's web site: http://www.integraltech.com/support/dload.html. However, to ensure proper functioning with B.A.S.I.S., users should contact BEST first if they want to use a version later than 3.4.

The FlashPoint User's Manual and accompanying Setup software diskettes are required for the procedures outlined in this chapter. You may also need your Windows 2000 CD or a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette from Integral Technologies.

Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware

Those with a FlashPoint 3D Lite or FlashPoint 3D Plus video capture board, refer to Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup**.**

You will need a FlashPoint video capture board. Refer to the "FlashPoint Cables" chapter of the FlashPoint User's Manual for the video input cable requirements of your board.

Find out which model of FlashPoint board you have and how much VGA frame buffer memory (RAM) it has. **It is essential to know these two things for the steps that follow**.

If you're setting up a capture station you need the following hardware:

- **Hitachi VKC-77U camera and power pack (CAM-77U):** (Has been replaced by CAM-CCP-500K.)

Note: You should use a power pack to power the camera even if you are using a FlashPoint ISA, FlashPoint PCI or FlashPoint 128.

- **LNL-VKPW77A** (Has been replaced by DPS060200-P5.)
- **S-Video cable (# HOC-3652):** Each end terminates in a 4-pin connector. One connector plugs into your FlashPoint board. The other connector plugs into your camera. A different cable is needed (as per the "FlashPoint Cables" chapter of the FlashPoint User's Manual) if you are using a FlashPoint board other than a FlashPoint Lite PCI or a FlashPoint Lite 128. A different cable may be needed (as per your camera user guide) if you are using a camera other than the Hitachi VKC-77U.
- **EHK-283 flash kit (Optional):** (Has been replaced by EHK-K42U-A.) This may not be needed for all applications. The EHK-283 kit is designed to help eliminate shadows that may appear behind the subject that you are capturing, or under the subjects chin (known as bearding). It is intended for abnormally dark environments or conditions in which the lighting is constantly changing. Most capture environments have adequate light to capture a subject with the VKC-77U capture kit, but to enhance the colors (more real life), and to eliminate shadows, the flash kit is necessary. The flash kit includes the following hardware:
  - Vivitar 283 flash unit
  - **VP-1 Manual Flash Adjustment Sensor:** This replaces the Auto Tyristor which ships attached to the front of the Vivatar 283 flash unit.
- **Flash Sync cable (# HOC-3653):** This cable is required for your FlashPoint board to fire your Vivitar 283 flash unit. One end terminates in a straight connector, which plugs into your FlashPoint board. The other end terminates in a right-angled connector, which attaches to an adapter cable that plugs into your flash unit. (The adapter cable ships with your Vivitar 283 flash device.)

If you're setting up a CCTV video station you need the following hardware:

- **CCD Video camera:** The camera must output video in one of the following formats:
  - **RGB**: The FlashPoint Lite PCI and FlashPoint Lite 128 do not support this format.
  - NTSC S-Video
  - NTSC Composite
  - PAL S-Video
  - PAL Composite
- **Video cable(s) and possible CCTV switcher:** The cable(s) needed depend on the model of FlashPoint board you have, the number of CCTV cameras the computer is supposed to connect to and the video format being used.

Note: Although FlashPoint boards have multiple video inputs (the number depending on the model of FlashPoint board), Alarm Monitoring stations are configured to use only one FlashPoint video input at a time. Therefore, if a monitoring station is to use multiple CCTV video cameras, the FlashPoint board must be connected to a CCTV switcher (instead of directly to the

cameras), a cable must be run from the switcher to each CCTV video camera and each camera must be output video in the same format.

Step 2: Set Up the FlashPoint Board

If you're using a FlashPoint ISA or FlashPoint PCI board and are setting up a capture station with flash, verify that the flash jumpers on the FlashPoint board are set to use the Universal flash sync setting, as directed in Appendix A of your Integral Technologies FlashPoint User's Manual.

Step 3: Install the FlashPoint Video Capture Board

Install the FlashPoint board into the computer as directed in your Integral Technologies FlashPoint User's Manual. Make sure your computer boots properly when you are done. In the event of a problem, first consult the Troubleshooting chapter of the FlashPoint User's Manual before contacting your BEST customer service representative.

Step 4: Install the FlashPoint VGA Display Adapter Driver (Windows 2000)

Shut down all currently running applications and make sure you have the correct Windows VGA display adapter driver installed:

1. Start the Windows Control Panel.
2. Double-click the **Display** program icon. The Display Properties folder will appear.
3. Click the Settings tab to switch to the Settings form.
4. Click [Display Type...]. The Display Type window will appear.
5. If your FlashPoint board is a FlashPoint ISA, FlashPoint Lite PCI or FlashPoint PCI board, verify that the **Adapter Type** field indicates either "Tseng Labs ET4000 W/32" or "Integral Technologies FlashPoint". If your FlashPoint board is a FlashPoint Lite 128 or a FlashPoint 128 board, verify

that the **Adapter Type** field indicates “Integral Technologies FlashPoint 128”.

6. If the **Adapter Type** field indicates the **correct** entry for your FlashPoint board **and** you have a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette that has a version number newer than what is shown in the **Adapter Type** field go to step 8.
7. If the **Adapter Type** field indicates the **correct** entry for your FlashPoint board, click [Cancel] then go to Step 5: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct on page 255.
8. Click [Change...] located to the right of the **Adapter Type** field. The Change Display window will be displayed.
9. Do the following if you are using a FlashPoint 128 or FlashPoint Lite 128 board. (You must have a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette):
   - Click [Have Disk...]. The Install from Disk window will appear.
   - Insert the FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette into your floppy drive.
   - Click [Browse...]. The Open window will appear.
   - Navigate into (double-click on) the “winnt40” directory on the driver diskette.
   - Click [Open]. This will return you to the Install from Disk window.
   - Click [OK]. A **second** Change Display window will appear.
   - Select “Integral Technologies FlashPoint 128” in the “Display” list.
   - Click [OK].
   - If a message pertaining to third party drivers appears, just click [Yes] to proceed.
10. Do the following if you are **not** using a FlashPoint 128 or FlashPoint Lite 128 board **and** you have a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette:
    - Click [Have Disk...]. The Install from Disk window will appear.
    - Insert the FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette into your floppy drive.
    - Click [Browse...]. The Open window will appear.
    - Navigate into the “winnt40” directory on the driver diskette.
    - Click [Open]. This will return you to the Install from Disk window.
    - Click [OK]. A second Change Display window will appear.
    - Select “Integral Technologies FlashPoint” in the “Display” list.
    - Click [OK].
    - If an informational window about third party drivers appears, just click [Yes] to proceed.
11. Do the following if you are **not** using a FlashPoint 128 or FlashPoint Lite 128 board **and** you **don’t** have a FlashPoint Display Drivers diskette. (You can use the ET4000 VGA display driver):
    - The Change Display window will contain a “Manufacturers” list and a “Models” list. Select “Tseng Labs” in the Manufacturers list.
    - In the Display list of Models list select “Tseng Labs W/32i Compatible Graphics Adapter” if your FlashPoint board is an ISA board otherwise select “Tseng Labs W/32p Compatible Graphics Adapter”.
    - Click [OK]. A Files Needed window will appear.

- Make sure “Copy Files From” specifies the path to the i386 directory points on your CD-ROM drive. (For example, if your CD-ROM drive is drive D:, make sure it specifies **D:\i386**.)
- If your Windows 2000 CD-ROM is not already in your CD-ROM drive: insert it, wait for the Windows 2000 CD-ROM window to appear and then exit the Windows 2000 CD-ROM window by clicking on the X system menu icon in the upper right hand corner of the window.
- In the Files Needed window click [OK] to install the driver.

12. Windows will copy driver files to your computer and the Installing Driver window will appear telling you the driver was successfully installed. Click [OK]. You will return to the Display Type window.
13. Note that the **Adapter Type** field in the Display Type window may still indicate the previously selected adapter. Don’t worry. This will be updated the next time you start Windows. Click [Close]. This will return you to the Settings form of the Display Settings window.
14. Click [Close]. The System Settings Change window will appear asking you if you want to restart your computer.
15. Make sure there is no floppy disk in your diskette drive.
16. Click [Yes] to restart your computer.
17. Windows may display an Invalid Display Settings window when it starts. If so, just press [OK]. (The VGA display settings will be fixed in step Step 5: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct on page 255.)

Step 5: Verify That the VGA Display Settings are Correct

To perform the following steps you MUST know the model of FlashPoint board you have and how much VGA frame buffer memory (1 MB, 2MB or 4MB) it has.

1. Start the Windows Control Panel.
2. Double-click the **Display** program icon. The Display Properties folder will appear.
3. Click the **Settings** tab to switch to the Settings form.
4. **Take note of the following before proceeding**:
   - ***B.A.S.I.S. does not support video capture in VGA display modes which 256 or 16 Windows color palettes.*** This is because FlashPoint boards do not support video capture when the Windows color palette is set to 16 colors and do not support color video capture when the Windows color palette is set to 256 colors.
   - The greater the number of colors (color bits) contained in the Windows color palette, the more color information will be saved to the database, and the better will be the quality of captured photos. The best quality is achieved with a true color Windows color palette (also known as 24 bit, 16777216 colors or 16.7 million colors).
   - However, the model of FlashPoint board you have and the amount of VGA frame buffer memory it has (1MB, 2MB or 4MB) determines the

maximum desktop area size for a particular Window color palette size. For example, if your FlashPoint board contains less than 2 MB of memory and you choose a true color Windows palette, your desktop area will be limited to 640 by 480 pixels. This means that any larger value in the **Desktop Area** slider field will be automatically revised downward to "640 by 480 pixels"

- Those with 2MB FlashPoint ISA boards should note that the extra 1MB is for increased performance and does not offer you any additional VGA modes over the 1MB FlashPoint ISA board.
- The B.A.S.I.S. software's user interface was designed to fit within a 800 by 600 pixel desktop area, so a desktop area of at least 800 by 600 pixels is highly recommended, especially for CCTV video stations.
- A 1280x1024 desktop should not be used. It does not have square pixels (a width:height ratio of 4:3). Its 5:4 ratio causes video, photos and layout graphics to appear to be squashed vertically.
- Beware that some VGA Windows color palette – desktop area combinations can be selected but actually require the higher amount of VGA RAM available for the model of FlashPoint board you have. For example, those with a *2MB* FlashPoint Lite 128 board can select a VGA mode of 1024 by 768 with a true color Windows palette (a valid combination for *4MB* FlashPoint Lite 128 boards) but will find that the Windows color palette is really limited to 65536 colors when a 1024 by 768 desktop is selected.

5. Those setting up a capture station: Using the table that follows, set the Desktop area **and then** the Windows color palette based on the model of FlashPoint board you have and the amount of VGA frame buffer memory (VGA RAM) it has. The table favors a true color (i.e. 16.7 million colors or 24-bit) Windows color palette over a larger desktop area to achieve the highest quality for your photos. (More advanced Windows users can choose other settings as long as they use the guidelines listed in step 4.)

Model(s)	VGA RAM	Desktop area	Windows 98 color palette	Windows 2000 color palette	Captures image quality
FlashPoint Lite 128, FlashPoint 128	4MB	1024 by 768	True Color (24 bit)	16777216 Colors	Best
FlashPoint Lite 128, FlashPoint 128, FlashPoint Lite PCI, FlashPoint PCI	2MB	800 by 600	True Color (24 bit)	16777216 Colors	Best
FlashPoint ISA	1MB or 2MB	640 by 480	True Color (24 bit)	16777216 Colors	Best
FlashPoint ISA	1MB or 2MB	800 by 600	High Color (16 bit) (actually 15 bit, see step 5d)	65536 Colors	Good under 2000, Marginal under 98

2MB FlashPoint ISA users should note that the extra 1MB is for increased performance and does not offer you any additional VGA modes over the 1MB FlashPoint ISA board.

6. Those setting up a CCTV video station. Using the table that follows, set the Desktop area **and then** the Windows color palette based on the model of FlashPoint board you have and the amount of VGA frame buffer memory (VGA RAM) it has. The table favors a larger desktop size over a true color Windows color palette to allow room to display other windows along side the Video Verification window within Alarm Monitoring. Video Verification video is for live display only so its quality is not as important as it is for a capture station. (More advanced Windows users can choose other settings as long as they use the guidelines listed in step 4.)

Model(s)	VGA RAM	Desktop area	Windows 98 color palette	Windows 2000 color palette
FlashPoint Lite 128, FlashPoint 128	4MB	1024 by 768	True Color (24 bit)	16777216 Colors
FlashPoint Lite 128, FlashPoint 128, FlashPoint Lite PCI, FlashPoint PCI	2MB	1024 by 768	High Color (16 bit)	65536 Colors
FlashPoint ISA	1MB or 2MB	800 by 600	High Color (16 bit) (actually 15 bit, see step 5d)	65536 Colors

7. Select “Small Fonts” in the **Font Size** field. ***B.A.S.I.S. does not support large fonts.*** B.A.S.I.S. dialog text fields and controls do not line up correctly when “Large Fonts” is selected
8. Click [Close] or [OK].
9. If you made any changes to the form:
   - You may be prompted to restart your computer. If so, select [Yes] Windows will start up with the newly selected Windows color palette, desktop area and refresh frequency.
   - If you are not prompted to restart your computer, Windows will adjust the display to have the newly selected Windows color palette, desktop area and refresh frequency. (You may be asked if the new settings look okay and if you want to keep the new settings.)

Step 6: Install FlashPoint software

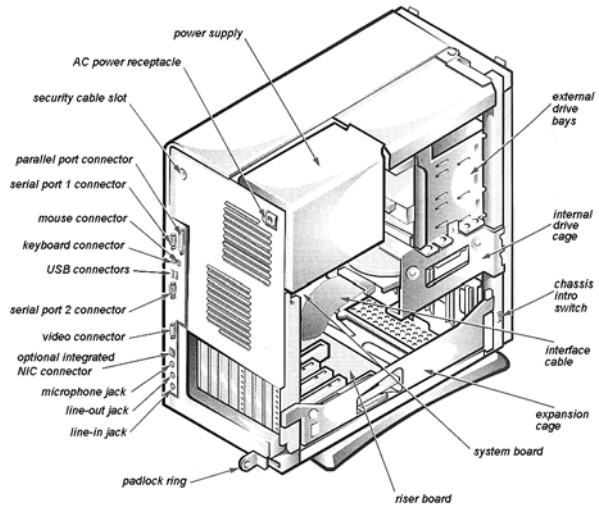
1. If you have not already done so, run the FlashPoint software setup program (**setup.exe** on disk 1 of the FlashPoint Setup software diskettes). In the setup program’s list of things to install, select ***only*** the FlashPoint FPG capture application software (deselect everything else). It is not necessary to install the FlashPoint Overlay MCI driver, Video for Windows driver, ImagePro driver, and DOS software
2. Reboot your computer if prompted to do so.

Step 7: Connect Your Video Camera(s) to Your FlashPoint Board

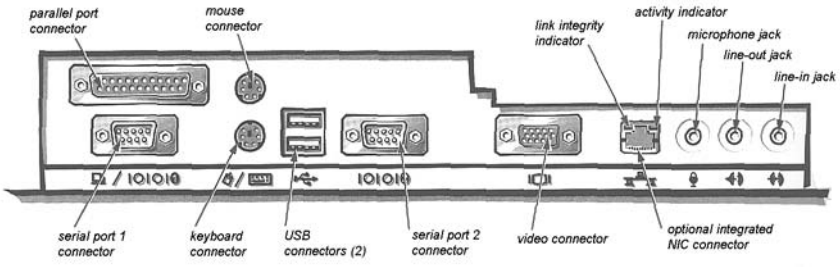
Connect your camera(s) to your FlashPoint board using the cable(s) identified in Step 1: Check to Make Sure You Have All the Required Video Hardware on page 251. Refer your FlashPoint User's Manual and camera user guide for assistance.

Notes: The board must be installed into slot # 1 or it will not work!

Be sure to also connect your SVGA monitor to the FlashPoint board, NOT to the on-board video port!



Dell GX1 Chassis



I/O Ports and Connectors

Step 8: Verify That Your Video Board and Drivers Are Working Properly

This can be done easily and quickly using the FPG32 application which ships with your FlashPoint board. Note that if FPG32 is unable to display video, neither will B.A.S.I.S.; i.e., the FPG32 application can be used for testing your

video hardware and driver setup like the Windows test print feature can be used to test your printer hardware and driver setup.

1. Terminate any currently running B.A.S.I.S. application.

Warning

The FlashPoint capture driver allows only one window of FlashPoint video to be open at any given time. This means you can use only one of the following at a time:

- **FPG32 application**. An error is reported and application will not launch if FlashPoint video is already in use.
- **Video Verification feature**. The live video window will be blank if FlashPoint video is already in use.
- **Multimedia Capture module with the Video Capture Source selected**. The live video display area will be blank if FlashPoint video is already in use.

2. Power your camera on. Hitachi VKC-77U cameras should be powered with a power pack, even if your FlashPoint board is not one of the Lite boards.
3. Launch the FPG32 application by clicking the Windows Start button, then selecting **Programs** > **FlashPoint** > **FPG32**.
4. Make sure you see a live video image which fills the FPG32 window and that the image is in full color if using a color camera or in gray scale if you are using a black and white camera. Do the following if this is not the case:
   - Select “Setup” and then “Video...” from the main menu. The Video Setup window will appear off to the side.
   - Select the video input standard and type as per your camera and video cabling. Those with a Hitachi VKC-77U camera should select NTSC and S-Video. Note that the FPG32 application provides no way to specify the video source (input connector #) because the application assumes you are using the first video input which supports the specified input format. (Consult the cable wiring diagrams located in Appendix A of your FlashPoint User’s Manual.)
   - If you see just black or discolored video make sure the color adjustments have reasonable settings. If you are unsure which adjustments to use press the Video Setup window’s [Reset] button and then re-select the video input standard and format again.
   - If you still see just black or discolored video, your camera’s white point balance and/or iris level may not be set correctly. For more information, refer to Hitachi VK-C77U Camera dip switch settings on page 262.
   - If you still see just black or discolored video consult the Troubleshooting chapter of your FlashPoint User’s Manual.

Step 9: Video Software Settings

Video Software Settings for a CCTV Station

- **Video Source, Input Standard and Input Format.** Video Verification uses the video source, input standard and input format configured in the Workstations form of ID CredentialCenter’s/System Administration’s Workstations folder.

Consult the ID CredentialCenter/System Administration User Guide on how to make those adjustments in the Workstations folder.

- **Video Colors and Video Sync Mode.** Video Verification displays live video using the color adjustments and sync mode configured in the FPG32 application which shipped with your FlashPoint board. Consult your FlashPoint User's Manual on how to make those adjustments. (The sync mode option is configured in the FPG32 application's Advanced Configuration window. When enabled it causes unstable video coming from a VCR to stop jumping up and down and settle down into a stable picture, though there will be a narrow strip of static across the bottom.)

Video Software Settings for a Capture Station

The Multimedia Capture window has its own set of Video Source, Input Standard, Input Format, Color and Sync Mode settings completely separate from the FPG32 application. To adjust the Multimedia Capture settings, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station. More information is available in the BadgeDesigner User Guide, the ID CredentialCenter User Guide and the System Administration User Guide.

- **Default Camera Settings.** The following settings are for a normal office environment. They may need to be changed based on several variables in the capture environment (distance, lighting, backgrounds, wall color, etc.).

Consult your camera user guide for information about manual overrides to the Hitachi VK-C77U camera. Most standard office environments will not need to use the manual adjustments or the Enhance Flash Lighting kit (EHK-283). The Enhance Flash Lighting kit is intended for abnormally dark environments or conditions in which the lighting is constantly changing.

- **Multimedia Capture Settings.** In the Multimedia Capture module of the ID CredentialCenter, System Administration and BadgeDesigner applications, the following settings are made at the factory. If you have purchased a turnkey B.A.S.I.S. system, these settings will have been configured for you. If you have not pressed the save user defaults button, the following settings default to values suitable for the Saerim camera (For more information, refer to Chapter 4: CCD/CCTV Video Setup on page 53.) Those with a Hitachi camera must change them to the values listed is the table that follows.

Video Settings Form:

Section/Field	Value
Video	
Video Board	FlashPoint
Input Format	S Video
Input Standard	NTSC
Video Source	1
Alternate Sync Mode	unchecked
High Resolution Capture	unchecked
Flash	
Flash Type	Universal
Flash Field Delay	2

Video I/O Settings Form:

(Video Input settings)	
Field	**Value**
Flash Brightness	750
Flash Contrast	700
Live Brightness	750
Live Contrast	700
Hue	10
Red	500
Green	500
Blue	500
Saturation	530
Sharpness	500
Gain	500
Gamma	500
Offset	500

- **Chromakey Form.** Preset to 30% tolerance
- **Effects Gallery Form.** *New* installations default to having the following six image processing profiles:

Profile name	Adjustment
Increase Hue	+7%
Decrease Hue	-7%
Increase Saturation	+7%
Decrease Saturation	-7%
Increase Contrast	+7%
Decrease Contrast	-7%

General Settings Form

Field	Value
Show Settings by Default	checked
Default Capture Source	Video Capture
Default Processing Profile	none
Compression Amount	10%
Crop Window	
Enabled	checked
Sizable	checked
Maintain Aspect	checked
Units	Inches
Left	0.233”
Top	0.0”
Width	0.6”
Height	0.8”

If your situation requires that you configure these settings yourself, you must click on the [Save Defaults] push button to save the settings. Note that BadgeDesigner has its own set of Multimedia Capture module settings apart from the set shared by ID CredentialCenter and System Administration.

Hitachi VK-C77U Camera dip switch settings

The following settings are denoted if you are facing the rear of the camera.

- POS/NEG - Always to the Left (Positive and Negative images)
- AGC/OFF - Always to the Left (Automatic Gain Control)

- AWB/MWB - Always to the Right (Automatic White Balance/Manual White Balance)
- R/B - Always to Left (Red - Green - Blue manual adjustments)
- AF/OFF - Always to Left (Automatic Focus)

When setting up the environment, minor adjustments will need to be made to the Zoom and Iris. Once the adjustments have been made, move the switch back to the zoom position.

- Making adjustments to the zoom will bring the subject closer or further away. Optimally you want your subject to fill the pre-sized crop window, so that no additional crop adjustments will need to be made.
- Making Iris adjustments should be made initially for the environment in which the camera is set up. It should not need further adjustment.

EHK-283 (Enhance Lighting Kit)

If you are using the enhance lighting kit, angle the flash at 45 degrees downward towards the subject to avoid flash wash-out. Additional Iris adjustments may be necessary when installing the kit. For more detailed instructions on how to configure capture with flash, refer to Chapter 6: Setting Up & Configuring a Capture Station.

Note: Wait 10 to 15 seconds between capture flashes so that the flash recharges.

Appendix K: The License Administration Application

The License Administration web application is used to install new licenses, view installed licenses, and view the License Server log.

The License Administration application requires a browser to run. Web browsers that are supported are Microsoft Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator. Refer to the **B.A.S.I.S. ET release notes.rtf** file on the root of the B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition CD for which specific versions are supported. The License Administration application is accessed through your web browser: simply point your browser to http*://**LICENSESERVERHOST***:9999, where *LICENSESERVERHOST* is replaced with the name of the machine the License Server is running on. 9999 is the default port the License Server listens on for administration tasks, and should be left as is unless you have modified the configuration of your License Server to listen on another port.

The username/password combination that the License Administration application uses is separate from the username/password combinations that the other B.A.S.I.S. applications use. There is only one valid username/password, which is **admin/admin** by default. For security reasons, you should change the username/password combination after you have initially logged into the License Administration application.

Important: The License Server MUST be running whenever you wish to use the License Administration web application. If the License Server is not running, the License Administration web application will not run.

Note: In order to use the License Administration application, “cookie” support must be enabled in the browser.

License Administration Procedures

Starting the License Administration Application

1. Make sure that the License Server is running. (For more information, refer to Determining if the License Server is Running on page 250.)
2. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **B.A.S.I.S. ET** > **License Administration**.
3. If your browser has JavaScript support enabled, a new window will open with the License Administration application in it.
   Otherwise, follow the directions in the browser’s window and click the hyperlink to continue. The License Administration application will then open in the same browser window.

Note: The URL for License Administration is:
http://*LICENSESERVERHOST*:9999/
Replace *LICENSESERVERHOST* with the name of the machine the License Server is running on. For example, if the machine running the License Server is named alpha, the License Administration URLwill be:
http://alpha:9999/

Logging into the License Administration Application

1. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Starting the License Administration Application on page 265.)
2. In the **Username** field, type a valid username. When logging in for the first time, the **Username** is **admin.**
3. In the **Password** field, type a valid password that corresponds to the username entered. When logging in for the first time, the password is **admin**.
4. Click [Log In]. The License Administration options will be displayed.

Note: After logging in for the first time, you are strongly encouraged to modify the default username and password as soon as possible to discourage unauthorized use.

5. The first time you login, the following is displayed:

License Administration - Microsoft Internet Explorer
License Administration
PWESTFA1-DT
Installed Licenses:
View
Delete...
Install New License...
View Log
Administrator Properties...
Log Out
Weak Password
The password you are using is considered weak -- it can be easily guessed. It is strongly suggested that you change your password at this time.

6. You are strongly encouraged to change the password. Click the “Change Your Password” hyperlink.
7. The Administrator Properties page is displayed. You can change the user name, password, or both. This user name and password is only used for the License Administration application.
   a. To change the user name, enter a new value in the **Username** field.
   b. To change the password, enter a new value in the **Password** field.
   c. If you are changing the password, you must reenter the password in the **Confirm Password** field.
   d. Click [Update]. A message will be displayed that indicates whether the administrator properties were successfully updated.

Viewing an Installed License

1. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to License Administration Procedures on page 265.)
2. Log into the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Logging into the License Administration Application on page 266.)
3. In the **Installed Licenses** drop-down listbox, select the license you wish to view.
4. Click [View]. The license will be displayed in the right half of the window.

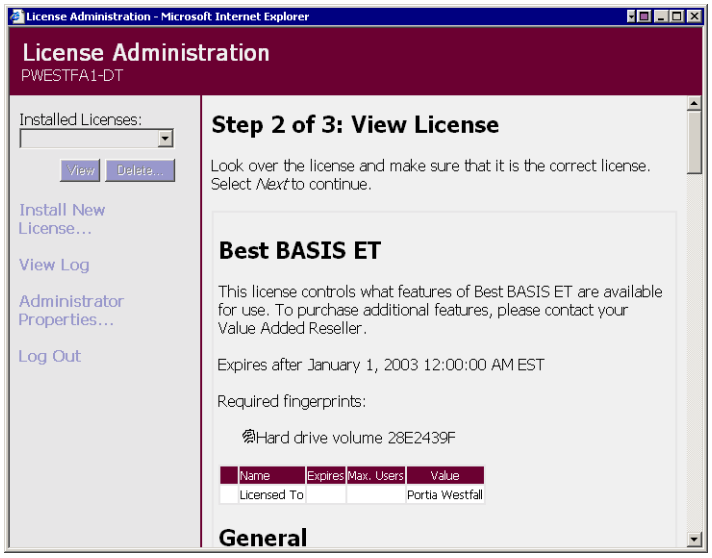
Deleting an Installed License

1. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to License Administration Procedures on page 265.)
2. Log into the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Logging into the License Administration Application on page 266.)
3. In the **Installed Licenses** drop-down listbox, select the license you wish to view.
4. Click [Delete…].
5. A delete confirmation message will be displayed. Click [Yes, Delete] to delete the selected license, or click [No, Cancel] to cancel the deletion.
6. The license will be deleted and removed from the **Installed Licenses** drop-down listbox. This removes the license from the License Administration application. Note that if the license file is saved in another location, it is not deleted from that location. This means that the license could be reinstalled from the license file.

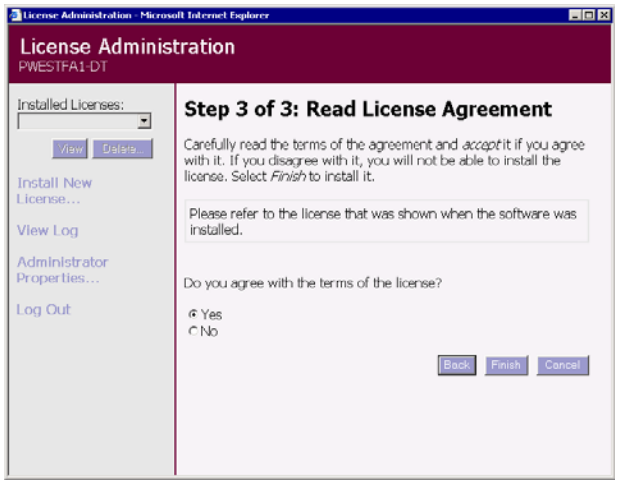
Installing a New License

1. Obtain a new license file from BEST. License files have the extension (.lic). Be sure that you know where the license file is saved, as you will need to know the location to successfully install the license.
2. Make sure that the License Server is running. (For more information, refer to Determining if the License Server is Running on page 250.)
3. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Starting the License Administration Application on page 265.)
4. Log into the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Logging into the License Administration Application on page 266.)
5. Click the **Install New License…** hyperlink.
6. In the **License file** field, enter the name and location of the file containing the license that you want to install. You can use [Browse…] to locate the file.

7. Click [Next].
8. View the license and make sure that the license is the correct license.


License Administration - Microsoft Internet Explorer
License Administration
PWESTFA1-DT
Installed Licenses:
View
Delete...
Install New License...
View Log
Administrator Properties...
Log Out
Step 2 of 3: View License
Look over the license and make sure that it is the correct license. Select Next to continue.
Best BASIS ET
This license controls what features of Best BASIS ET are available for use. To purchase additional features, please contact your Value Added Reseller.
Expires after January 1, 2003 12:00:00 AM EST
Required fingerprints:
Hard drive volume 28E2439F
Name
Expires
Max. Users
Value
Licensed To
Portia Westfall
General

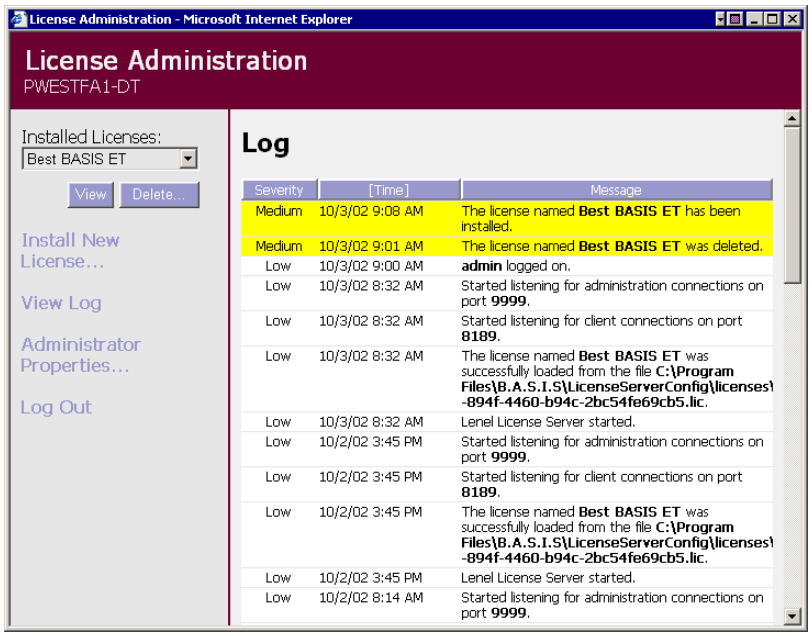
9. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and click [Next].
   If the license is not the correct license, click [Back] to go back and choose another license file.
10. Read the terms of the license agreement.


License Administration - Microsoft Internet Explorer
License Administration
PWESTFA1-DT
Installed Licenses:
View
Delete...
Install New License...
View Log
Administrator Properties...
Log Out
Step 3 of 3: Read License Agreement
Carefully read the terms of the agreement and accept it if you agree with it. If you disagree with it, you will not be able to install the license. Select Finish to install it.
Please refer to the license that was shown when the software was installed.
Do you agree with the terms of the license?
Yes
No
Back
Finish
Cancel

11. Select the **Yes** radio button if you agree with the terms of the license.
12. Click [Finish].
13. The license will be installed. The entry that is displayed in the **Installed Licenses** drop-down listbox indicates the name of the product that the license controls, and will be updated to include the new license.

Viewing the License Server Log

1. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Starting the License Administration Application on page 265.)
2. Log into the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Logging into the License Administration Application on page 266.)
3. Click the **View Log** hyperlink. The License Server log will be displayed in the right half of the window.
   - Click a column heading to sort the log entries according to that criterion. Note that the column heading that is being used as the search criterion is displayed in brackets. For example, if the log is sorted by Time, the column heading will be listed as [Time].
   - Click again on the same column heading to sort the log entries according to that same criterion, only in the reverse order.


License Administration - Microsoft Internet Explorer
License Administration
PWESTFA1-DT
Installed Licenses:
Best BASIS ET
View
Delete...
Install New License...
View Log
Administrator Properties...
Log Out
Log
Severity
[Time]
Message
Medium 10/3/02 9:08 AM The license named Best BASIS ET has been installed.
Medium 10/3/02 9:01 AM The license named Best BASIS ET was deleted.
Low 10/3/02 9:00 AM admin logged on.
Low 10/3/02 8:32 AM Started listening for administration connections on port 9999.
Low 10/3/02 8:32 AM Started listening for client connections on port 8189.
Low 10/3/02 8:32 AM The license named Best BASIS ET was successfully loaded from the file C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S\LicenseServerConfig\licenses\ -894f-4460-b94c-2bc54fe69cb5.lic.
Low 10/3/02 8:32 AM Lenel License Server started.
Low 10/2/02 3:45 PM Started listening for administration connections on port 9999.
Low 10/2/02 3:45 PM Started listening for client connections on port 8189.
Low 10/2/02 3:45 PM The license named Best BASIS ET was successfully loaded from the file C:\Program Files\B.A.S.I.S\LicenseServerConfig\licenses\ -894f-4460-b94c-2bc54fe69cb5.lic.
Low 10/2/02 3:45 PM Lenel License Server started.
Low 10/2/02 8:14 AM Started listening for administration connections on port 9999.

Changing Administrator Properties for the License Administration Application

1. Start the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Starting the License Administration Application on page 265.)
2. Log into the License Administration application. (For more information, refer to Logging into the License Administration Application on page 266.)
3. Click the **Administrator Properties…** hyperlink. The administrator properties will be displayed in the right half of the window.
4. You can change the user name, password, or both.
   a. To change the user name, enter a new value in the **Username** field.
   b. To change the password, enter a new value in the **Password** field.
   c. If you are changing the password, you must reenter the password in the **Confirm Password** field.
   d. Click [Update]. A message will be displayed that indicates whether the administrator properties were successfully updated.

Logging Out of the License Administration Application

1. While logged into the License Administration application, click the **Log Out** hyperlink.
2. You will be logged out of the License Administration application, and the License Administration login screen will be displayed again.

Appendix L: Room Layout & Lighting Setup for a Capture Station with Discontinued Video Capture Hardware

Environmental Considerations Affecting Flash & Camera Capture Quality

There are several factors to consider when selecting your capture station environment. Lighting is the most important factor and the most difficult to provide setup instructions for, because every site's capture environment is unique. B.A.S.I.S. ships with the optimal hardware setting defaults already set. The important items to consider when setting up the capture environment are the flash and camera settings based on environmental considerations.

Capture Station Setup Specifications

For every capture station the equipment should be setup as close as possible to the following specifications:

The backdrop should be approximately 1.5 feet behind the subject. The camera and flash apparatus should be at least 4.5 feet in front of the subject at an average height (the height should be adjustable for obvious reasons). The capture area requires approximately 10 to 12 feet of floor space with appropriate width.

Basic Camera Setup (VK-C77U)

Setup the camera dip switches as follows:

POS	<<	NEG	Positive / negative pictures
AGC	<<	OFF	Automatic Gain Control
AWB	>>	MWB	White Balance
R	<<	B	RGB adjustment
AF	<<	OFF	Automatic Focus

The selector switch at the bottom of the camera's back should be set all the way to the right when there are no adjustments being made.

The VK-C77U camera zooms to X24, but the recommended zoom area should be less than X12. This is because the zoom past X12 is digital and the picture captured becomes rough (pixilated). The subject should be within X1 to X12 zoom for optimal results. The subject should nominally fill the pre-sized crop window if adjusted properly. Always leave on “Maintain Aspect Ratio”

To adjust the zoom, set the selector switch to zoom (all the way to the right). Adjust the camera apparatus for the center of the subject. With the arrows located to the bottom left of the rear of the camera, zoom in all the way and then zoom back to determine the approximate center point of the zoom (remember: you do not want to zoom past X12, the halfway point). Then, zoom into the subject until the desired capture frame is attained. The arrows located at the bottom of the camera can be use in one of two manors. If you push and hold the arrow, it will zoom all the way in or out. If you push the arrow button momentarily, it will move in and out incrementally.

Note: Optimally the subject should fill the pre-sized crop window, so no additional cropping adjustments need be made.

Why manual white balance? With light or gray colors the Auto White Balance adjusts incorrectly. That is why the VK-C77U should be setup for Manual White Balance. It is necessary to White balance the camera to obtain a default white balance setting and is maintained for consistent picture quality.

Lighting Setup

Basic Flash Setup (EHK-283)

The EHK-283 flash kit may not be needed for all applications. The EHK-283 kit is designed to help eliminate shadows that may appear behind the subject that you are capturing, or under the subject’s chin (known as bearding). Most capture environments have adequate light to capture a subject with the VK-C77U capture kit, but to enhance the colors (more real life), and to eliminate shadows, the capture kit is necessary.

This is the setup for the Enhanced Lighting Kit. Now provided with the Enhanced Lighting Kit is a VP-1 Manual Flash Adjustment Sensor. Replace the Auto Tyristor currently on the front of the 283 Flash with the VP-1 (this may have already been done at the factory). Install the flash on the provided camera mount.

Angle the flash head up at 45 degrees. Adjust the manual sensor (VP-1) to 1/32 power (Almost no Flash output), the opposite of the full power setting (Full Flash Output). The flash is set up.

Advanced Setup

After the capture station has been setup, some testing must be performed to determine the optimal illumination settings for image capture. You may have to adjust the lights, drapes, or other elements in the capture environment.

With a test subject, view the live image on the screen with all the room lights on. Set the selector switch on the back of the camera to iris (all the way to the left). With the arrows on back of the camera adjust the iris all the way down, the live image on the screen should become dark if not black. The arrows located at the bottom of the camera can be use in one of two manners. If you push and hold the arrow, it will zoom all the way in or out. If you push the arrow button momentarily, it will move in and out incrementally. While viewing the screen, increase the iris until the subject is visible. Increase the iris a little more, until the screen image is about the same brightness as the real view of the subject. Take a test picture. Label this “test 1, all lights”. From here we will adjust the room environments lighting and make minor adjustments to the iris if needed while continuing to save the sample captures at (test 2, test 3 etc.).

Steps to improving capture quality:

1. Turn on all the lights in the room.
2. Open the Capture dialog and center on a test subject with the camera.
3. Adjust the iris all the way down, then adjust it until the screen image is about the same brightness as the real viewable image.
4. Set the White Balance. (Set the selector switch on the back of the camera to WB. Hold a white piece of paper in front of the camera so there is only white showing on the screen. Using the arrows on the back of the camera adjust the white balance until the image in the capture window is white.)
5. Take a test picture. Save this as a cardholder labeled “Test1: all lights”.
6. Turn off all the lights.
7. Take another picture. Save this as a cardholder labeled “Test2: no lights”.
8. Continue testing until a desired lighting quality is captured on the screen. Be sure to label each test with a number and a description of what you did.

Adjust your environments based on the environmental considerations below. Continue to take pictures, save them, and use them as references until the best conditions are determined.

Environmental Considerations and Factors Leading to Poor Lighting

Environmental factors to consider when setting up a capture station include:

- Is there a different amount of sunlight entering the area through out the day?
- Is the station next to a window or under a skylight?
- Are the wall colors dark or light or bright colors? If they are light they will reflect more light or change your white balance setup.

- Is the ceiling low or cathedral like? The lower the ceiling the more light will reflect.
- What types of lights are used in the room? Incandescent or florescent (cool white or colored) or direct spots?
- Is there any direct lighting of the subject? Is the room evenly illuminated? Direct lighting will over expose the subject.
- What is the color of reflective shields around the lights? I.e. - gold reflective surface shields illuminate subject in yellow highlights.

This is just a partial list of possible factors leading to poor image lighting quality. There may be other features of your site that will affect the image capture that may need to be considered.

Appendix M: Windows Terminal Services/Citrix MetaFrame

Important: To use B.A.S.I.S. Internet, you must have purchased the optional Citrix® MetaFrame™ application. Please refer to the Citrix® MetaFrame™ Administrator's Guide to Installing, Setting Up, and Using this Software.

Windows Terminal Services/Citrix Overview

B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition provides support in conjunction with Citrix MetaFrame™ 1.8 for Windows 2000 Servers, Terminal Server Edition for complete access to configure and operate your B.A.S.I.S. system through a simple web browser interface. (Refer to the **B.A.S.I.S. ET release notes.rtf** for specific supported configurations.)

B.A.S.I.S. Internet allows for the installation of web server software and, once the server is configured, unlimited clients (based on licensing connections) can attach to the server and run any of the B.A.S.I.S. applications. Virtually any desktop operating system that supports a web browser can run B.A.S.I.S. Internet. This includes Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows ME, Macintosh, Unix, Solaris and Linux. B.A.S.I.S. Internet also supports mobile computing environments such as Windows CE.

The basic procedure to set up the server that is used in the B.A.S.I.S. thin client architecture is:

1. Install and configure Windows on the server, along with Windows Terminal Services, and Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS). Windows Terminal Services must be configured for Application Mode with Windows 2000 permissions.
2. Install Citrix MetaFrame on the server.
3. Install Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2) on the server.
4. Configure the Citrix web server.
    a. Create the virtual IIS directory.
    b. Install the Java client.
    c. Install Citrix NFuse web extensions on the server.
    d. Install the NFuse Web Site Wizard.
    e. Run the Citrix Web Site Wizard.
    f. Edit the **appembed.htm** file.
5. Install B.A.S.I.S. on the server.
6. Publish B.A.S.I.S. as a web application.

General Issues

- **Color Depth.** The color depth that Terminal Server and Citrix MetaFrame client machines use can be configured. A setting **greater than 256 colors** should be used so that the B.A.S.I.S. applications and online help will be displayed correctly.

  Note that Terminal Server can be run without Citrix MetaFrame. Terminal Server alone cannot display more than 256 colors. When Terminal Server is run in combination with Citrix MetaFrame 1.8 Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2) and Citrix NFuse, color depth greater than 256 colors can be displayed.

- **Install B.A.S.I.S. on Terminal Services machine via Add/Remove Programs.** Installation programs cannot be run directly on a Terminal Services machine. Instead, they must be run via Add/Remove Programs in the Windows operating system. When the B.A.S.I.S. installation application is run from Add/Remove Programs, there may be a delay before the installation begins. The Add/Remove Programs wizard will display a message that says, “Click Next after installation”. **Wait for the B.A.S.I.S. installation window to open - do not click the [Next] button in the Add/Remove Programs wizard until the B.A.S.I.S. installation has finished**.

Implications

- **User preferences saved to LOCAL_USER in the Windows registry separate for each user.** In a normal Windows environment, all Windows users share the same registry setting. This differs from a Terminal Server Windows environment, where settings in the LOCAL_USER registry entry are stored separately for every Windows user.

  B.A.S.I.S. saves user preferences to LOCAL_USER in the Windows registry. In a Terminal Server Windows environment, there are separate sections in LOCAL_USER for each B.A.S.I.S. user id. For example:

  – In a normal Windows environment when SA logs on from two different Windows accounts, the saved preferences will be common/shared.
  – In a Terminal Server environment when SA logs on from two different Windows accounts, two sets of preferences for SA would be stored because the registry settings are separate for every Windows user.

- **ACS.INI is copied to the user’s home directory when using Terminal Server.** Whenever an .INI file is opened by an application, if a copy of it does not already exist in the Windows subdirectory of the user’s home directory, one gets copied from the Windows directory (i.e. **C:\winnt** in Windows 2000 or **C:\Windows** in Windows XP) and placed there. From that point on, the .INI file from the Windows directory is no longer used. Instead,

the copy from the user's home directory is used. This means that you could end up with multiple copies of the **ACS.INI** file.

Note that all copies might not exist on the Server. If a user's home directory is mounted from a public server, the **ACS.INI** file will exist there. This is true even when you log directly into the Server.

- **Multiple monitoring instances will attempt to write to the activity printer and CCTV in Windows Terminal Server environment.** If multiple instances of Alarm Monitoring are started on the same Windows 2000 Server machine and Monitoring on that Server machine is configured to have an activity printer and/or CCTV device, then all instances of Alarm Monitoring will attempt to write to that activity printer and CCTV device. The first Alarm Monitoring instance will get access to the needed ports, and subsequent instances that startup will get errors trying to open the ports.

Procedures

Step 1: Installing Required Applications

1. Install and configure Windows 2000 with Terminal Services on the server. Configure Windows Terminal Services for Application Mode with Windows 2000 permissions.
2. Configure all network protocols (TCP/IP, IPX, SPX, NetBIOS) that will be used for ICA/ALE connections in Windows.

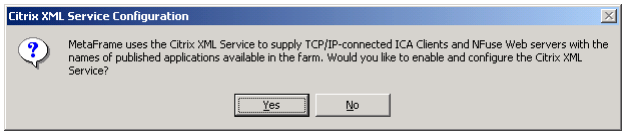
Step 2: Installing Citrix MetaFrame on the Server

To install Citrix MetaFrame, refer to the "Installation" section of the Citrix MetaFrame Administrator's Guide.

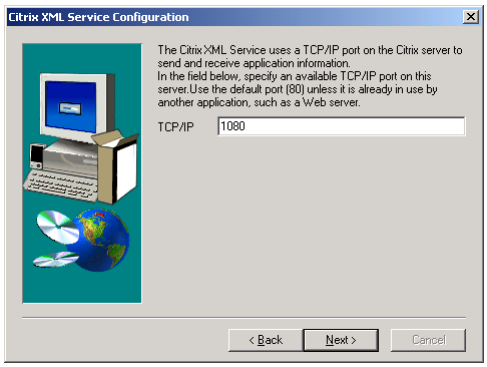
Step 3: Installing Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2)

When installing Feature Release 1, you must enable XML configured to an open HTTP port. To do this:

1. Obtain Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2).
2. Run the installation for Feature Release 1. Use all default settings until you reach the following message:


Citrix XML Service Configuration
MetaFrame uses the Citrix XML Service to supply TCP/IP-connected ICA Clients and NFuse Web servers with the names of published applications available in the farm. Would you like to enable and configure the Citrix XML Service?
Yes
No

3. Click [Yes] to enable and configure the Citrix XML Service.
4. Enter the number of the open HTTP port you wish to use in the **TCP/IP** field.


Citrix XML Service Configuration
The Citrix XML Service uses a TCP/IP port on the Citrix server to send and receive application information.
In the field below, specify an available TCP/IP port on this server. Use the default port (80) unless it is already in use by another application, such as a Web server.
TCP/IP
1080
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Click [Next >] and use the default settings for the remainder of the installation.

Step 4: Configuring the Citrix Web Server

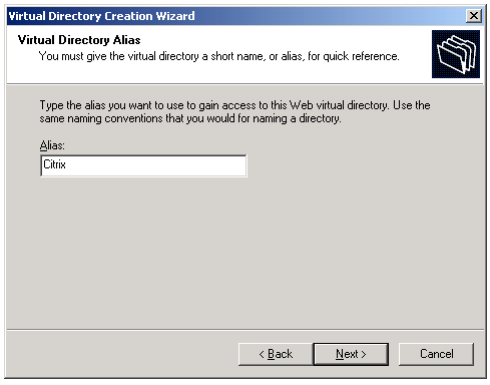
To configure the Citrix web server:

1. Create the virtual IIS directory.
2. Install the Java client.
3. Install Citrix NFuse web extensions on the server.
4. Install the NFuse Web Site Wizard.
5. Run the Citrix Web Site Wizard.
6. Edit the **appembed.htm** file.

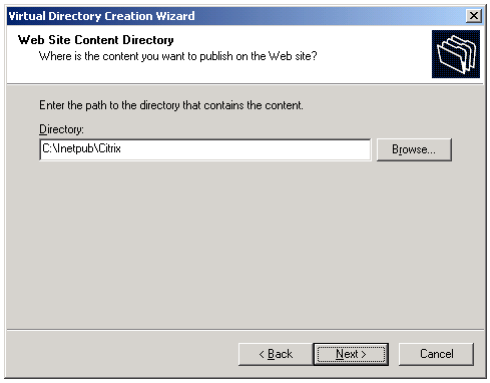
Creating the Virtual IIS Directory

Note: All references to **C** in this procedure refer to the drive that your operating system is installed on.

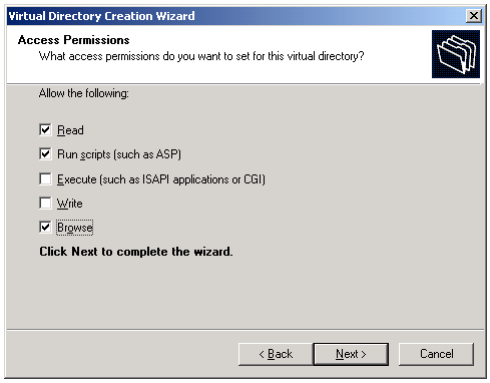
1. Make sure that Windows Terminal Services, Citrix MetaFrame, B.A.S.I.S., Java Virtual Machine, and Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) are installed on the server.
2. Create a directory named **C:\InetPub\Citrix**.
3. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **Administrative Tools** > **Internet Services Manager**.
4. Expand your server name and highlight **Default Web Site**.
5. From the **Action** menu, select **New >Virtual Directory**. A wizard will start. Use the default settings, with the following exceptions:
   - For **Alias** type `Citrix`.


Virtual Directory Creation Wizard
Virtual Directory Alias
You must give the virtual directory a short name, or alias, for quick reference.
Type the alias you want to use to gain access to this Web virtual directory. Use the same naming conventions that you would for naming a directory.
Alias:
Citrix
< Back
Next >
Cancel

   - For **Directory**, browse and select **C:\InetPub\Citrix**.


Virtual Directory Creation Wizard
Web Site Content Directory
Where is the content you want to publish on the Web site?
Enter the path to the directory that contains the content.
Directory:
C:\Inetpub\Citrix
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

   - For access permissions, select **Read**, **Run scripts**, and **Browse**.

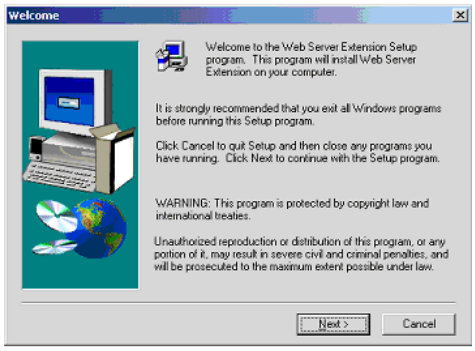


Installing the Java Client

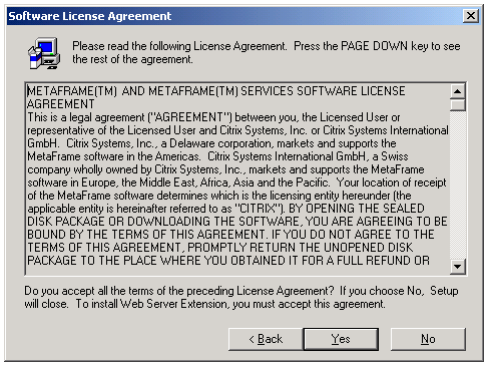
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Accessories** > **Command Prompt**.
2. At the drive prompt, type `md c:\inetpub\wwwroot\nfuseclients\en\icajava\ie` and press <Enter>.
3. Exit the command prompt.
4. Copy **setup.class** (Java JDK client) to the newly created directory.
5. From the command prompt in the **C:\inetpub\wwwroot\nfuseclients\en\icajava\ie** directory, run the Java virtual machine executable to extract **setup.class** (i.e. jview.exe setup.class). (The actual command may vary depending on what Java virtual machine you have installed.)
6. When the Java virtual machine executes, a wizard will be displayed. Use the default settings. On the “Choose Destination Directory” window of the wizard, select the **C:\inetpub\wwwroot\nfuseclients\en\icajava\ie** directory.

Installing Citrix NFuse Web Extensions

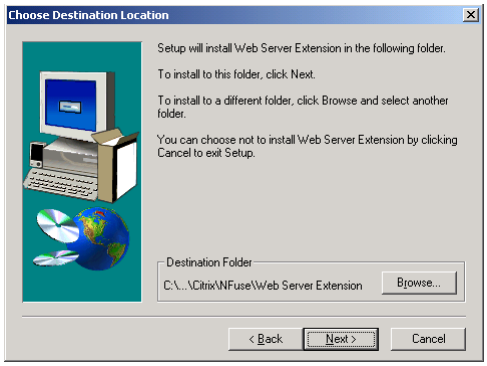
1. From the Citrix NFuse CD, run **NFuseWebExt-IIS.exe**.
2. On the Welcome window, click [Next >].


Welcome
Welcome to the Web Server Extension Setup program. This program will install Web Server Extension on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

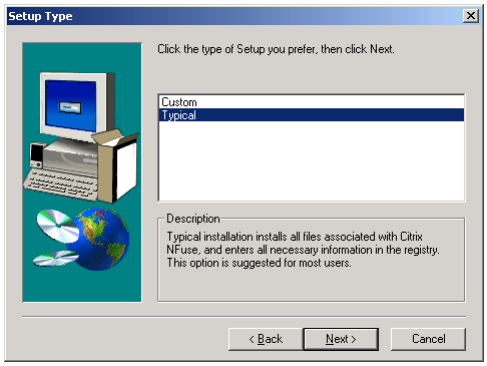
3. When prompted to stop IIS, click [Yes].
4. In the Software License Agreement window, click [Yes] to accept the terms of the license.


Software License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement.
METAFRAME(TM) AND METAFRAME(TM) SERVICES SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
This is a legal agreement ("AGREEMENT") between you, the Licensed User or representative of the Licensed User and Citrix Systems, Inc. or Citrix Systems International GmbH. Citrix Systems, Inc., a Delaware corporation, markets and supports the MetaFrame software in the Americas. Citrix Systems International GmbH, a Swiss company wholly owned by Citrix Systems, Inc., markets and supports the MetaFrame software in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, Asia and the Pacific. Your location of receipt of the MetaFrame software determines which is the licensing entity hereunder (the applicable entity is hereinafter referred to as "CITRIX"). BY OPENING THE SEALED DISK PACKAGE OR DOWNLOADING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE UNOPENED DISK PACKAGE TO THE PLACE WHERE YOU OBTAINED IT FOR A FULL REFUND OR
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, Setup will close. To install Web Server Extension, you must accept this agreement.
< Back
Yes
No

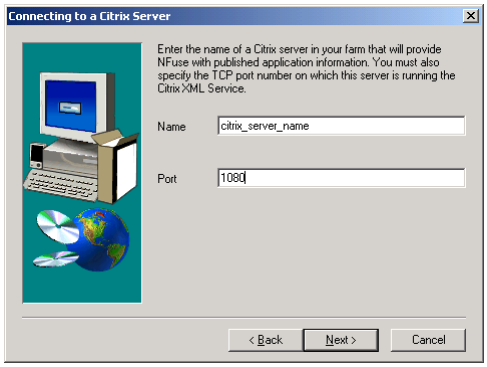
5. On the Choose Destination Location window, use the default **Destination Folder** and click [Next].


Choose Destination Location
Setup will install Web Server Extension in the following folder.
To install to this folder, click Next.
To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder.
You can choose not to install Web Server Extension by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
Destination Folder
C:\...\Citrix\NFuse\Web Server Extension
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

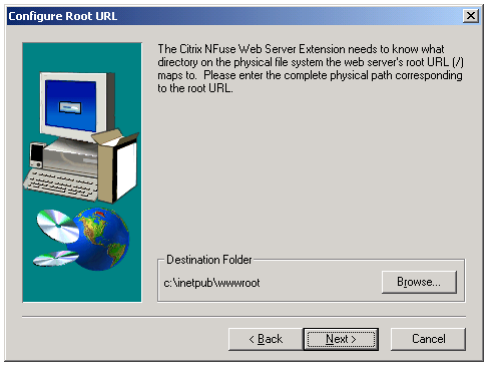
6. On the Setup Type window, use the default setting and click [Next >].


Setup Type
Click the type of Setup you prefer, then click Next.
Custom
Typical
Description
Typical installation installs all files associated with Citrix NFuse, and enters all necessary information in the registry. This option is suggested for most users.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

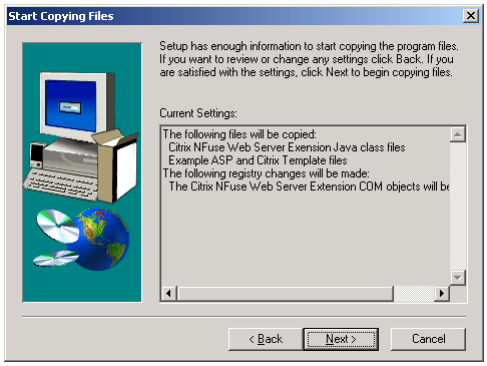
7. On the Connecting to a Citrix Server window:
   a. In the **Name** field, enter your Citrix server name.
   b. In the **Port** field, specify the port you entered for the XML service during the Feature Release 1 installation.
   c. Click [Next >].


Connecting to a Citrix Server
Enter the name of a Citrix server in your farm that will provide NFuse with published application information. You must also specify the TCP port number on which this server is running the Citrix XML Service.
Name
citrix_server_name
Port
1080
< Back
Next >
Cancel

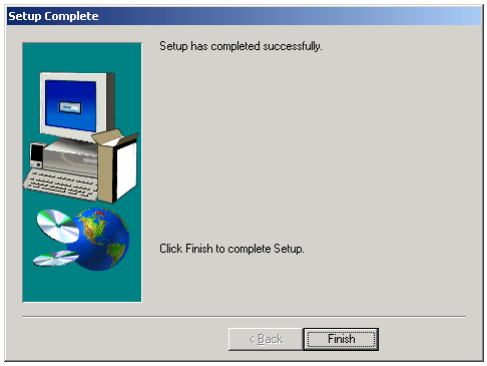
8. Verify that the **Destination Folder** is correct and click [Next >].


Configure Root URL
The Citrix NFuse Web Server Extension needs to know what directory on the physical file system the web server's root URL (/) maps to. Please enter the complete physical path corresponding to the root URL.
Destination Folder
c:\inetpub\wwwroot
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. When asked to copy clients, click [No].
10. On the Start Copying Files window, click [Next >].

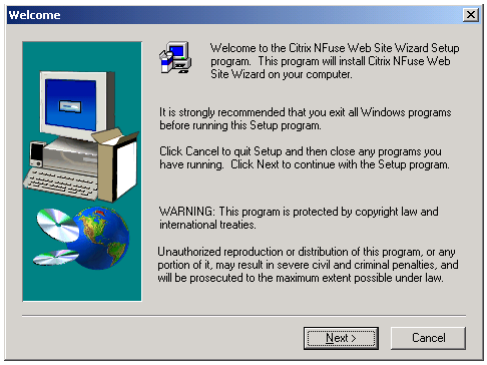

Start Copying Files
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Current Settings:
The following files will be copied:
Citrix NFuse Web Server Exension Java class files
Example ASP and Citrix Template files
The following registry changes will be made:
The Citrix NFuse Web Server Extension COM objects will be
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. On the Setup Complete window, click [Finish].

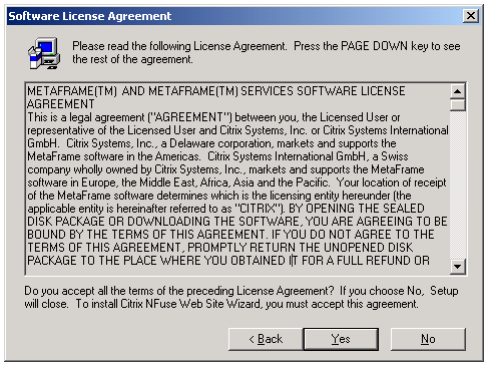


Installing the NFuse Web Site Wizard

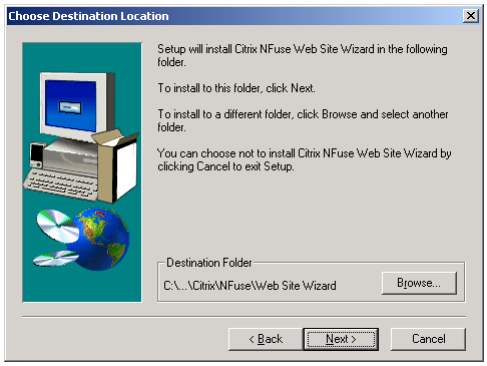
1. On the NFuse CD, run **NFuseWizard.exe**.
2. On the Welcome window, click [Next >].


Welcome
Welcome to the Citrix NFuse Web Site Wizard Setup program. This program will install Citrix NFuse Web Site Wizard on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

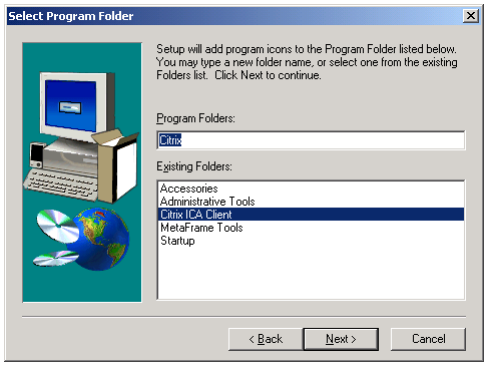
3. In the Software License Agreement window, click [Yes].


Software License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement.
METAFRAME(TM) AND METAFRAME(TM) SERVICES SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
This is a legal agreement ("AGREEMENT") between you, the Licensed User or representative of the Licensed User and Citrix Systems, Inc. or Citrix Systems International GmbH. Citrix Systems, Inc., a Delaware corporation, markets and supports the MetaFrame software in the Americas. Citrix Systems International GmbH, a Swiss company wholly owned by Citrix Systems, Inc., markets and supports the MetaFrame software in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, Asia and the Pacific. Your location of receipt of the MetaFrame software determines which is the licensing entity hereunder (the applicable entity is hereinafter referred to as "CITRIX"). BY OPENING THE SEALED DISK PACKAGE OR DOWNLOADING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE UNOPENED DISK PACKAGE TO THE PLACE WHERE YOU OBTAINED IT FOR A FULL REFUND OR
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, Setup will close. To install Citrix NFuse Web Site Wizard, you must accept this agreement.
< Back
Yes
No

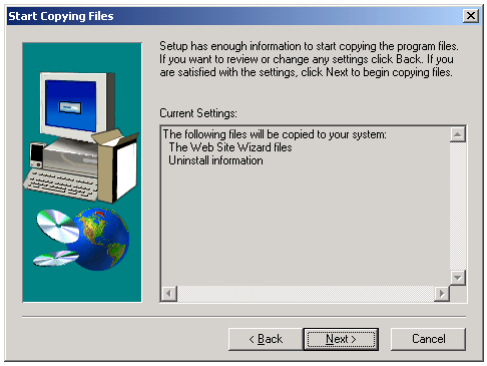
4. In the Choose Destination Location window, use the default **Destination Folder** and click [Next >].


Choose Destination Location
Setup will install Citrix NFuse Web Site Wizard in the following folder.
To install to this folder, click Next.
To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder.
You can choose not to install Citrix NFuse Web Site Wizard by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
Destination Folder
C:\...\Citrix\NFuse\Web Site Wizard
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

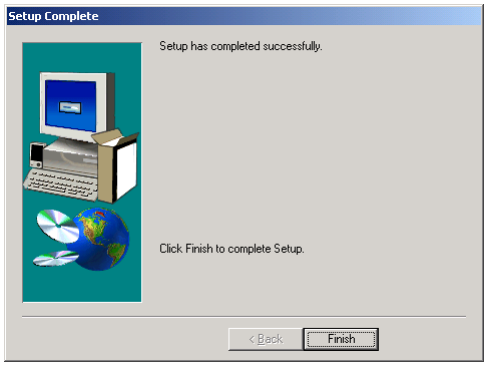
5. In the Select Program Folder window, use the default settings and click [Next >].


Select Program Folder
Setup will add program icons to the Program Folder listed below. You may type a new folder name, or select one from the existing Folders list. Click Next to continue.
Program Folders:
Citrix
Existing Folders:
Accessories
Administrative Tools
Citrix ICA Client
MetaFrame Tools
Startup
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. In the Start Copying Files window, click [Next >].

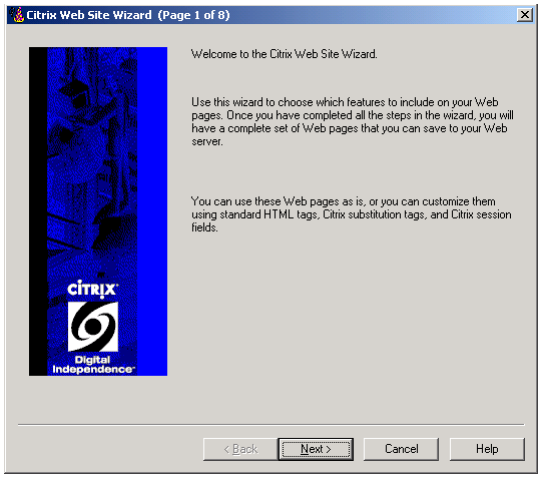

Start Copying Files
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Current Settings:
The following files will be copied to your system:
The Web Site Wizard files
Uninstall information
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. In the Setup Complete window, click [Finish].

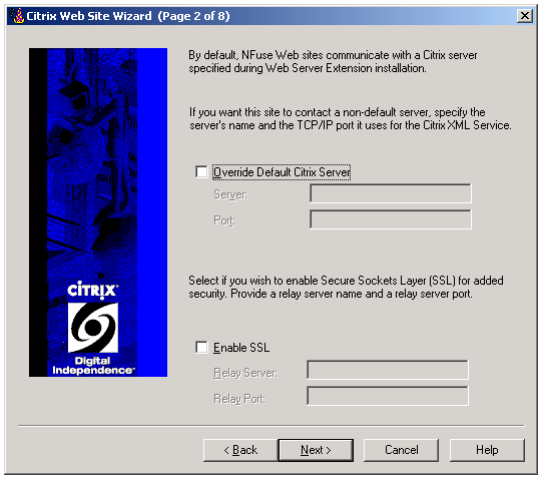


Running the Citrix Web Site Wizard

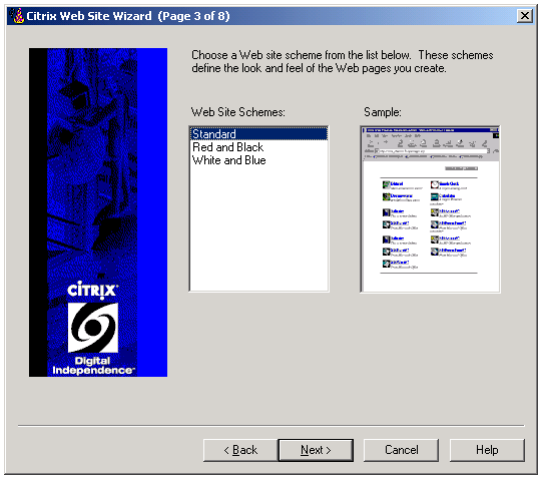
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Citrix > NFuse** > **Web Site Wizard**.
2. On Page 1 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard, click [Next >].


Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 1 of 8)
Welcome to the Citrix Web Site Wizard.
Use this wizard to choose which features to include on your Web pages. Once you have completed all the steps in the wizard, you will have a complete set of Web pages that you can save to your Web server.
You can use these Web pages as is, or you can customize them using standard HTML tags, Citrix substitution tags, and Citrix session fields.
CITRIX
Digital Independence
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

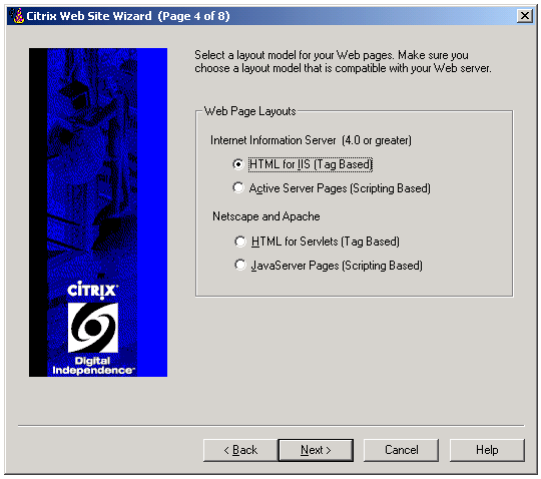
3. On Page 2 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard, click [Next >].


Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 2 of 8)
By default, NFuse Web sites communicate with a Citrix server specified during Web Server Extension installation.
If you want this site to contact a non-default server, specify the server's name and the TCP/IP port it uses for the Citrix XML Service.
Override Default Citrix Server
Server:
Port:
Select if you wish to enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) for added security. Provide a relay server name and a relay server port.
Enable SSL
Relay Server:
Relay Port:
CITRIX
Digital Independence
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

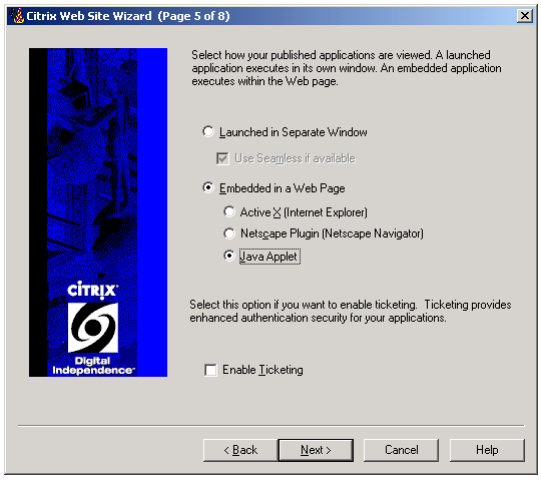
4. On Page 3 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard, select the **Web Site Scheme** you wish to use and click [Next >].


Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 3 of 8)
Choose a Web site scheme from the list below. These schemes define the look and feel of the Web pages you create.
Web Site Schemes:
Standard
Red and Black
White and Blue
Sample:
CITRIX
Digital Independence
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

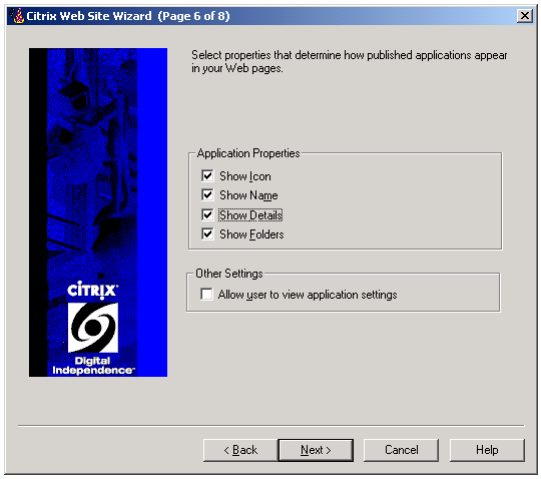
5. On Page 4 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard, use the default settings and click [Next >].


Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 4 of 8)
Select a layout model for your Web pages. Make sure you choose a layout model that is compatible with your Web server.
Web Page Layouts
Internet Information Server (4.0 or greater)
HTML for IIS (Tag Based)
Active Server Pages (Scripting Based)
Netscape and Apache
HTML for Servlets (Tag Based)
JavaServer Pages (Scripting Based)
CITRIX
Digital Independence
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

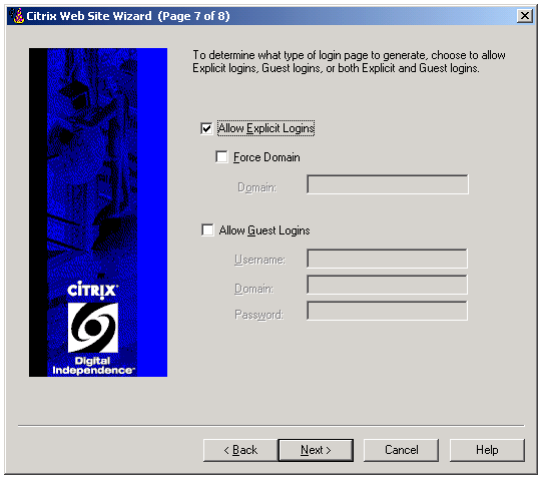
6. On Page 5 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard:
   - Select the **Embedded in a Web Page** option.
   - Select the **Java Applet** option.
   - Deselect the **Enable Ticketing** checkbox.
   - Click [Next >].


Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 5 of 8)
Select how your published applications are viewed. A launched application executes in its own window. An embedded application executes within the Web page.
Launched in Separate Window
Use Seamless if available
Embedded in a Web Page
ActiveX (Internet Explorer)
Netscape Plugin (Netscape Navigator)
Java Applet
Select this option if you want to enable ticketing. Ticketing provides enhanced authentication security for your applications.
Enable Ticketing
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

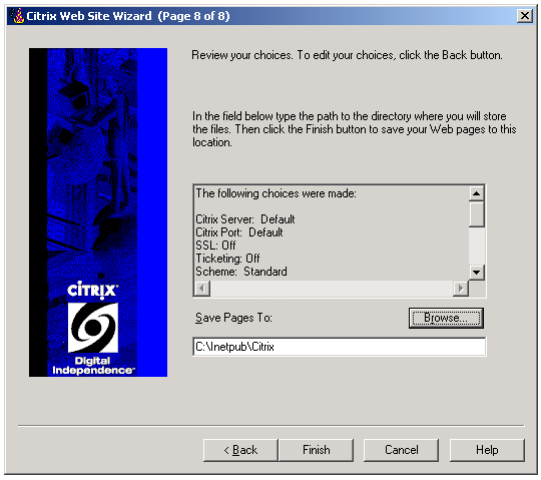
7. At the wizard warning, click [OK].
8. On Page 6 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard:
   - Select the **Show Details** option in addition the default settings that are selected.
   - Click [Next >].



9. On Page 7 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard, use the default settings and click [Next >].

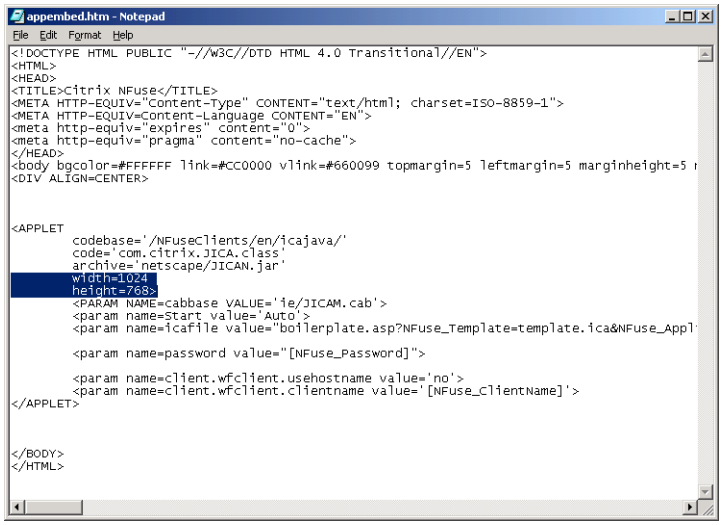

Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 7 of 8)
To determine what type of login page to generate, choose to allow Explicit logins, Guest logins, or both Explicit and Guest logins.
Allow Explicit Logins
Force Domain
Domain:
Allow Guest Logins
Username:
Domain:
Password:
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

10. On Page 8 of the Citrix Web Site Wizard:
    - Click [Browse…] and navigate to the **C:\Inetpub\Citrix** directory.
    - Click [OK]
    - Click [Finish].

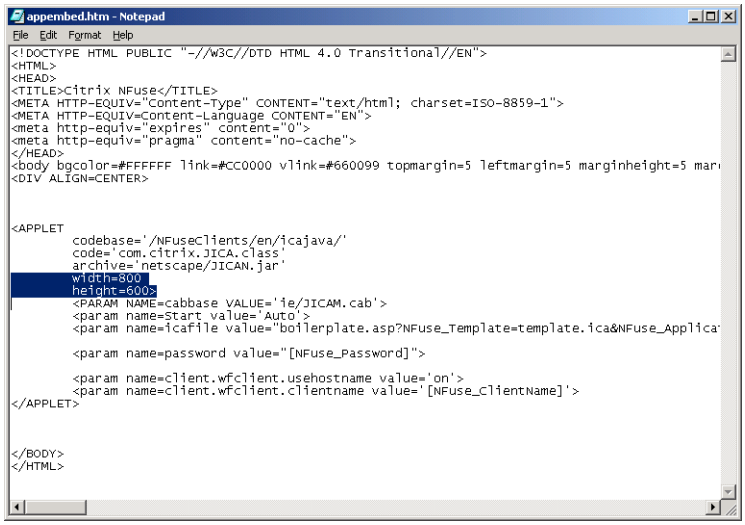

Citrix Web Site Wizard (Page 8 of 8)
Review your choices. To edit your choices, click the Back button.
In the field below type the path to the directory where you will store the files. Then click the Finish button to save your Web pages to this location.
The following choices were made:
Citrix Server: Default
Citrix Port: Default
SSL: Off
Ticketing: Off
Scheme: Standard
Save Pages To:
Browse...
C:\Inetpub\Citrix
< Back
Finish
Cancel
Help

Edit the Appembed.htm and Template.ica File

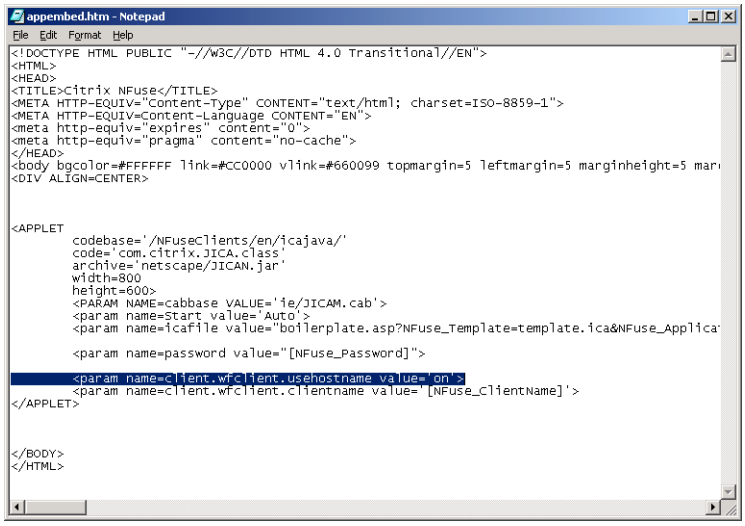
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Accessories > Notepad**.
2. Select the **File > Open** menu option.
3. Navigate to the **appembed.htm** file in **C:\Inetpub\Citrix** and open it.
4. Change the following values:
   - Set **width** to **1024**.



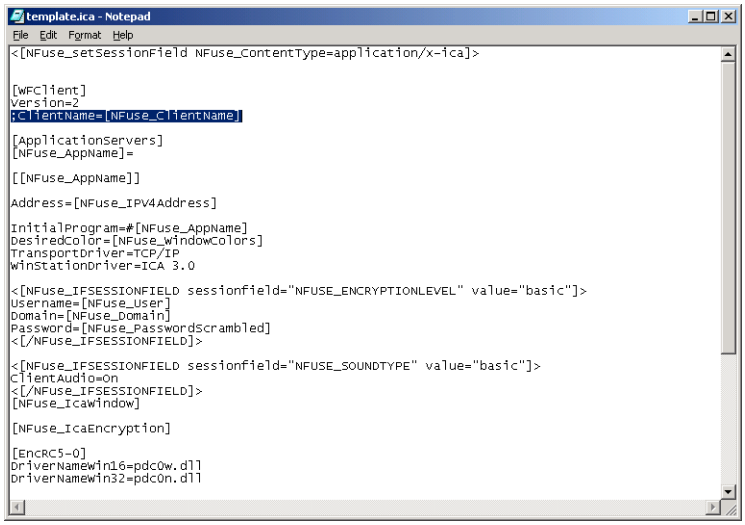
   - Set **height** to **768**.



   - Set the **usehostname value** to **on**.



5. Save the file.
6. Navigate to the template.ica file in **C:\Inetpub\Citrix** and open it.
7. Comment out the **ClientName** with a semicolon (**;**) as shown.



8. Save the file and exit Notepad.

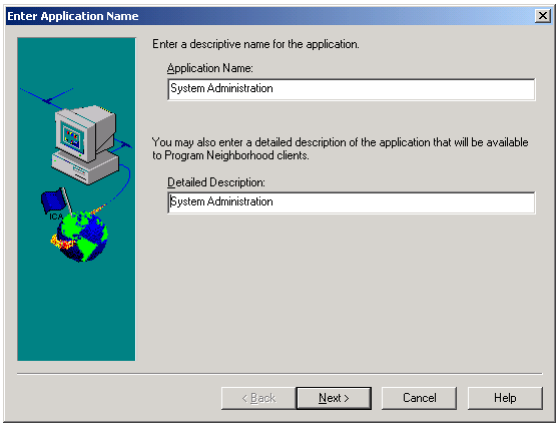
Step 5: Installing B.A.S.I.S. on the Server

For more information, refer to Chapter 3: Installing B.A.S.I.S. ET Third Edition on page 41.

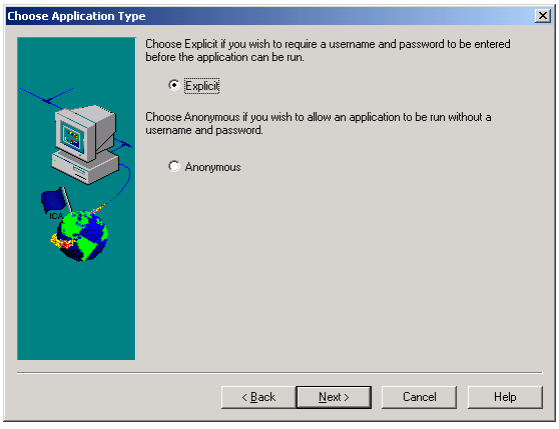
Step 6: Publishing B.A.S.I.S. as a Web Application

Note: All references to **C** in this procedure refer to the drive that your operating system is installed on. Each B.A.S.I.S. application must be published separately.

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs** > **MetaFrame Tools** > **Published Application Manager**.
2. Click the "New Published Application" toolbar button.
3. On the Enter Application Name window:
   - In the **Application Name** field, type the name of the B.A.S.I.S. application you are publishing.
   - In the **Detailed Description** field, type a description for the B.A.S.I.S. application you are publishing.
   - Click [Next >].


Enter Application Name
Enter a descriptive name for the application.
Application Name:
System Administration
You may also enter a detailed description of the application that will be available to Program Neighborhood clients.
Detailed Description:
System Administration
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

4. On the Choose Application Type window, make sure the **Explicit** radio button is selected and click [Next >].


Choose Application Type
Choose Explicit if you wish to require a username and password to be entered before the application can be run.
Explicit
Choose Anonymous if you wish to allow an application to be run without a username and password.
Anonymous
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

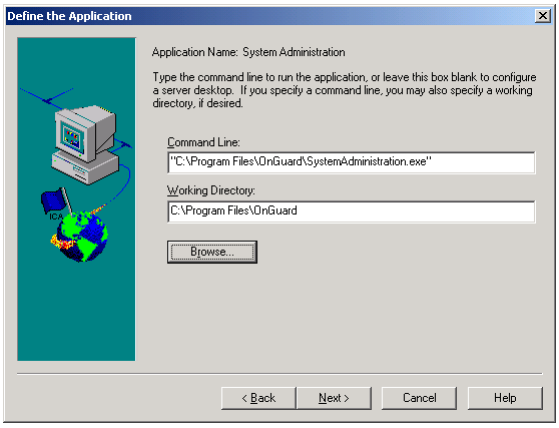
5. On the Define the Application window:

a. Click [Browse..].

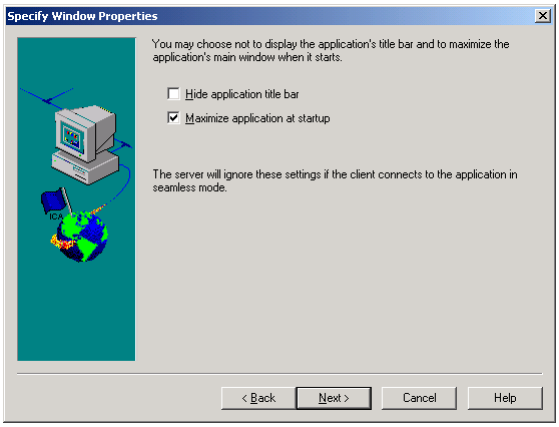
b. Navigate to the B.A.S.I.S. installation directory.

c. Double-click or click [Open] to select the file.

d. Click [Next >].

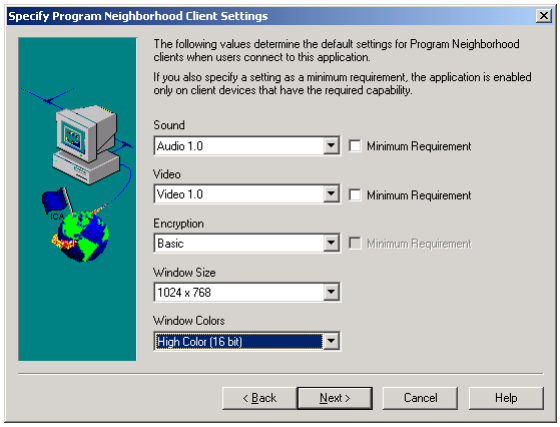

Define the Application
Application Name: System Administration
Type the command line to run the application, or leave this box blank to configure a server desktop. If you specify a command line, you may also specify a working directory, if desired.
Command Line:
"C:\Program Files\OnGuard\SystemAdministration.exe"
Working Directory:
C:\Program Files\OnGuard
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

6. On the Specify Window Properties window, accept the default settings and click [Next >].

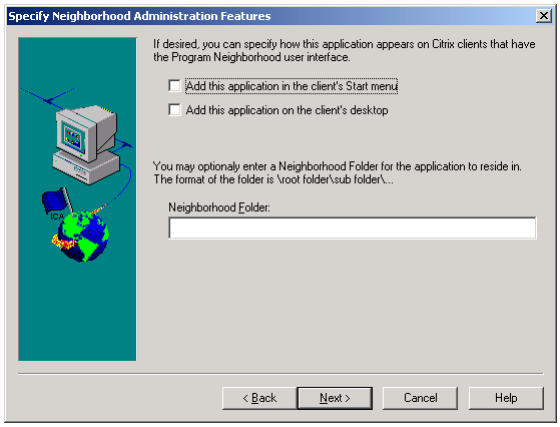

Specify Window Properties
You may choose not to display the application's title bar and to maximize the application's main window when it starts.
Hide application title bar
Maximize application at startup
The server will ignore these settings if the client connects to the application in seamless mode.
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

7. On the Specify Neighborhood Client Settings window:

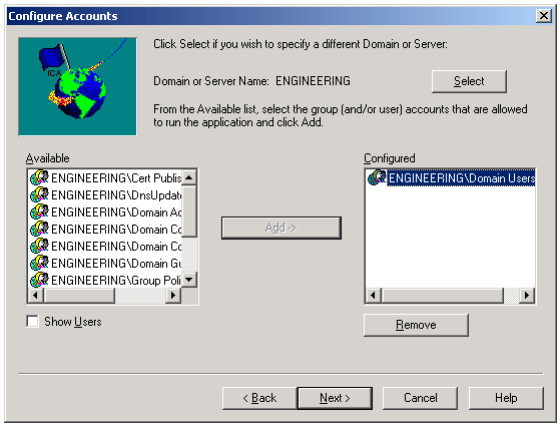
- In the **Window Size** dropdown listbox, select “1024x768.”
- In the **Window Colors** dropdown listbox, select “High Color (16 bit).”
- Click [Next >].


Specify Program Neighborhood Client Settings
The following values determine the default settings for Program Neighborhood clients when users connect to this application.
If you also specify a setting as a minimum requirement, the application is enabled only on client devices that have the required capability.
Sound
Audio 1.0
Minimum Requirement
Video
Video 1.0
Minimum Requirement
Encryption
Basic
Minimum Requirement
Window Size
1024 x 768
Window Colors
High Color (16 bit)
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

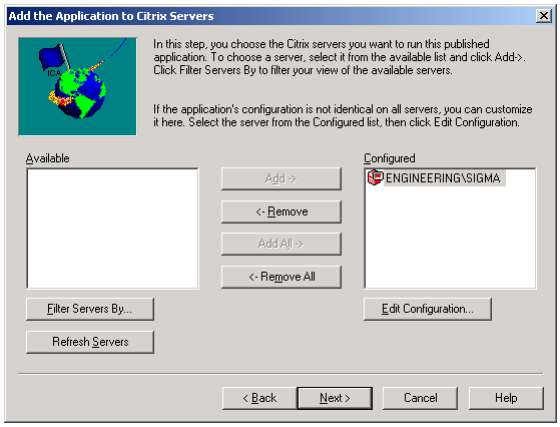
8. In the Specify Neighborhood Administration Features window, use the default settings and click [Next >].


Specify Neighborhood Administration Features
If desired, you can specify how this application appears on Citrix clients that have the Program Neighborhood user interface.
Add this application in the client's Start menu
Add this application on the client's desktop
You may optionaly enter a Neighborhood Folder for the application to reside in. The format of the folder is \root folder\sub folder\...
Neighborhood Folder:
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

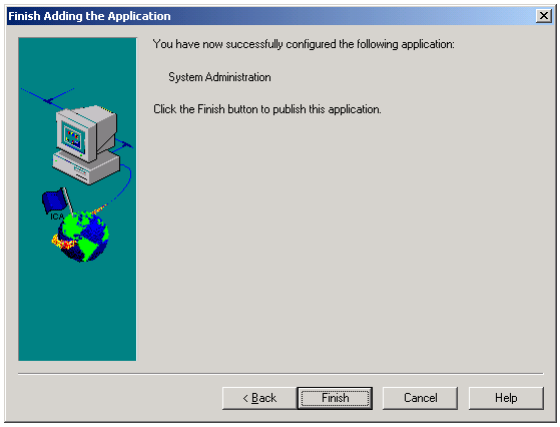
9. In the Configure Accounts window:
   a. From the **Available** list, select the user group you want to be able to run the application you are publishing.
   b. Click [Add].
   c. Repeat steps a and b for each desired user group.
   d. Click [Next >].



10. On the Add the Application to Citrix Servers window, use the default settings and click [Next >].


Add the Application to Citrix Servers
In this step, you choose the Citrix servers you want to run this published application. To choose a server, select it from the available list and click Add->. Click Filter Servers By to filter your view of the available servers.
If the application's configuration is not identical on all servers, you can customize it here. Select the server from the Configured list, then click Edit Configuration.
Available
Configured
ENGINEERING\SIGMA
Add ->
<- Remove
Add All ->
<- Remove All
Filter Servers By...
Refresh Servers
Edit Configuration...
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Help

11. On the Finish Adding the Application window, click [Finish].



12. Repeat steps 1 through 11 for each B.A.S.I.S. application you want to publish.

Is it Working?

This web server virtual directory should now be able to be accessed through the local area intranet by typing "***http://server-name/virtual-directory-name/***" in your web browser address bar. If you followed the instructions above, the ***virtual-directory-name*** is "Citrix".

Installing B.A.S.I.S. Via a Terminal Services Client Window

B.A.S.I.S. can be installed via a Terminal Services client window. To do this:

1. Share the CD-ROM drive.
2. Map the local CD-ROM drive on the server.
3. From inside Add/Remove Programs, select the B.A.S.I.S. installation program, which is **setup.exe** on the root of the B.A.S.I.S. CD.
4. There may be a delay before the B.A.S.I.S. installation begins. The Add/Remove Programs wizard will display a message that says, “Click Next after installation”. **Wait for the B.A.S.I.S. installation window to open - do not click the [Next] button in the Add/Remove Programs wizard until the B.A.S.I.S. installation has finished**.

Appendix N: Encryption

Encryption Overview

Encryption is the translation of data into secret code. The purpose of encryption is to achieve data security. Data sent to and from the B.A.S.I.S. database can be encrypted using either of two methods:

- Windows Internet Protocol Security (IPSec), a part of Microsoft Windows 2000 Server/Professional
- IRE SafeNet/Speed™

Windows 2000 IP Security is based on IPSec (Internet Protocol Security), a set of protocols being developed by the IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) to support application-transparent exchange of packets at the IP layer. IPSec supports two encryption modes: transport and tunnel. Using IPSec transport mode, end-to-end security from client-to-server, server-to-server, and client-to-client can be accomplished. Using L2TP (Layer Two Tunneling Protocol) secured by IPSec, secure remote access from client-to-gateway over the Internet can be accomplished. Refer to the *IPSec end-to-end walkthrough document* in the Windows 2000 Resource Kit to set up Windows 2000 IP Security for use with the B.A.S.I.S. system.

IRE SafeNet/Speed is a hardware device that encrypts data passing from one network to another. SafeNet/Speed automatically encrypts user data with the Triple-Data Encryption Standard (Triple-DES) for public key encryption.

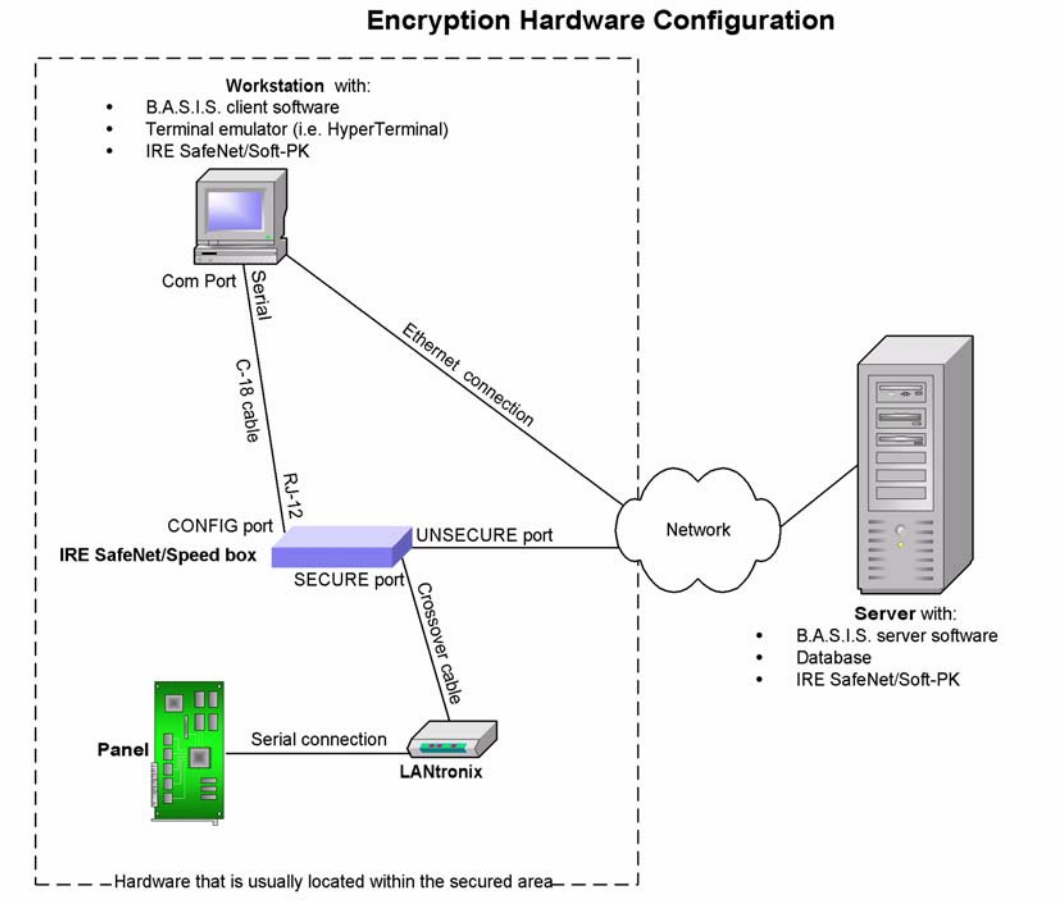
The encryption that occurs with the B.A.S.I.S. system can be broken down into two main segments: peer-to-peer and peer-to-panel. *Peer-to-peer* encryption occurs between the workstation that is within the secured area and the server that is outside the secured area. *Peer-to-panel* encryption occurs between the workstation within the secured area and the panel via the IRE SafeNet/Speed box.

A *key* is a number or set of characters that an algorithm uses to encrypt or decrypt data. The peer-to-peer and peer-to-panel encryption segments use different keys. In this document, the key that peer-to-panel encryption uses is referred to as key A, and the key that peer-to-peer encryption uses is referred to as key B. Key A is only used within the secured area, while key B is used when encrypted data is sent between the workstation in the secured area and the server that is outside the secured area.

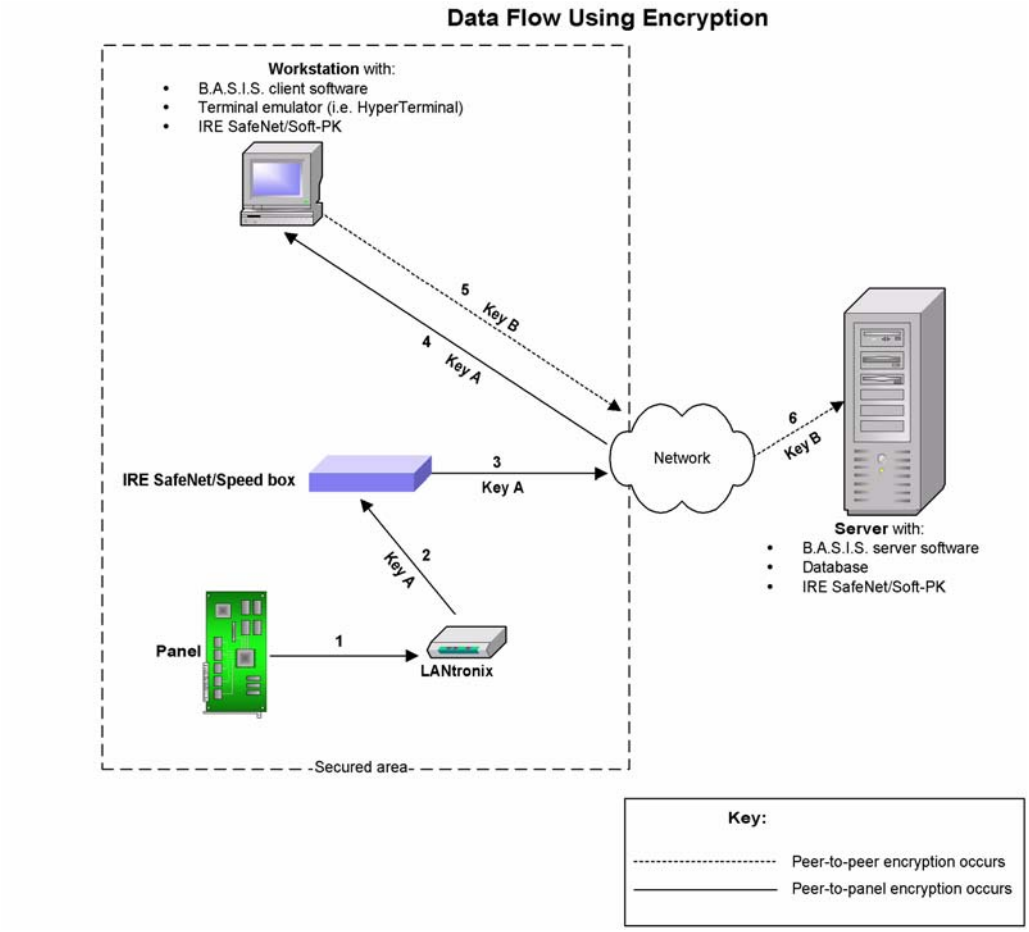
The steps to configure encryption for use with B.A.S.I.S. are:

1. Setup and configure the hardware
2. Configure the SafeNet/Speed box
3. Install SafeNet/Soft-PK on the server and client
4. Configure SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-peer encryption on the server
5. Configure SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-peer encryption on the workstation
6. Configure SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-panel encryption on the workstation

The following diagram illustrates the hardware set up needed to use encryption with B.A.S.I.S.:



The following diagram illustrates how ID information is sent from the panel to the server when encryption is being used with B.A.S.I.S.:



The numbers below correlate to the numbers in the diagram above, which describes the path taken when a card is swiped.

1. ID information from the card swiped at the **panel** goes to the **LANtronix box**, where it is encrypted using key A.
2. Encrypted ID information is sent from the **LANtronix box** to the Secure Port on the **IRE SafeNet/Speed box**.
3. Encrypted ID information is sent from the **Unsecure port on the IRE SafeNet/Speed box** to the **network**, without communicating to an end-decryption device.
4. Encrypted ID information is sent from the **network** to the **workstation** that is in the secured area.
5. At the **workstation**, the ID information that was encrypted using key A is decrypted, then encrypted using key B and sent to the **network**.
6. Encrypted ID information is sent from the **network** to the **server**, where it is decrypted using key B and stored in the database.

In the previous diagram, peer-to-panel encryption occurs between 1 through 4 and peer-to-peer encryption occurs between 5 and 6.

Setting Up Encryption for Use with B.A.S.I.S.

Step 1: Initial Hardware Configuration

1. Connect the server and workstation to the network.
2. Create a static IP address for the workstation accessing the panel. The static IP address should be outside the designated range of other workstation IP addresses. To add a static IP address on a Windows 2000 machine:
   a. Right-click on the **My Network Places** icon and select 'Properties' from the menu.
   b. Right-click 'Local Area Connection' and select 'Properties' from the menu.
   c. Highlight 'Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)'.
   d. Click [Properties].
   e. Select the **Use the following IP address** option and enter the IP Address, subnet mask, and default gateway.
   f. In **Use the following DNS Server address**, enter the preferred DNS server and alternate DNS server.
   g. Click [OK].
   h. Click [OK].
3. Install B.A.S.I.S. on the server and workstation.
4. Connect the panel to the LANtronix box. (For more information please refer to the Hardware User Guide.)
5. Connect the SafeNet/Speed box to the workstation by doing the following:
   a. Connect the RJ-12 end of the C-18 cable into the port labeled **CONFIG** on the SafeNet/Speed box.
   b. Connect the serial end of the C-18 cable into a COM port on the workstation.
   c. Connect the power source to the SafeNet/Speed box.
6. Connect a crossover cable between the LANtronix box and the port labeled SECURE on the SafeNet/Speed box.
7. Connect an ethernet cable between the network and the port labeled UNSECURE on the SafeNet/Speed box.

Step 2: Configuring the SafeNet/Speed Box

To configure the SafeNet/Speed box, you must communicate with the SafeNet/Speed box using a terminal emulation program (such as HyperTerminal) with the following settings:

- Direct connection to the COM port
- 38400 bits per second (bps)
- 8 data bits
- NO parity
- 1 stop bit
- NO flow control

To do this using HyperTerminal:

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > Accessories > Communications** > **HyperTerminal**.
2. Type `SafeNet Speed` as the **Name** of the connection.
3. Select an icon to represent the connection, then click [OK].
4. In the **Connect Using** dropdown listbox, select the COM port of the workstation that the SafeNet Speed box is connected to, then click [OK].
   - In the **Bits per second** field, select '38400'.
   - In the **Data bits** field, select '8'.
   - In the **Parity** field, select 'None'.
   - In the **Stop bits** field, select '1'.
   - In the **Flow Control** field, select 'None'.
5. Close HyperTerminal.
   - When prompted, click [Yes] to disconnect the session.
   - When prompted, click [Yes] to save the session.
6. Reopen the session by clicking the Windows Start button, then selecting **Programs > Accessories > Communications > HyperTerminal** > **SafeNet Speed session**.
7. Press <Enter>, and information will appear in the window.
8. Press <c> and then press <Enter> to enter the Configuration menu.
9. Type `IRE` as the initial password and press <Enter>.
10. Press <p> to create a new password.
11. Enter the new password and press <Enter>.
12. Enter the new password again and press <Enter>.
13. For each item, enter the following value if not already selected:

Item	Value
Encryptor operating mode	Public Key
Encryptor type	Host encryptor
IP processing mode	FILTER
Non-IP processing mode	BYPASS
Level 2 bridging	DISABLED

Item	Value
MID window size	64
IP address tunneling	NOT REQUIRED

14. Press <n> and then press <Enter> to enter the Network configuration menu.
15. For each item, enter the following value if not already selected:

Item	Value
Local encryptor IP address	Your SafeNet/Speed user-defined IP address
Local host IP address	Your LANtronix box user-defined IP address
Router IP address	Your Host computer user-defined IP address
Subnet mask	Your Host network user-defined subnet mask

16. Press <x> to exit the Network configuration menu.
17. Press <y> to enter the Public Key configuration menu.
18. For each item, enter the following value if not already selected:

Item	Value
Identification Type	IP V4 Address
Retransmission Interval	12
Retry Count	2
ISAKMP Notification	ENABLED
ISAKMP Perfect Forward Secrecy	DISABLED
SSC Authorization	DISABLED

19. Press <o> to enter the Oakley (Phase 1) Preferences menu.
20. For each item, enter the following value if not already selected:

Item	Value
Oakley Hash Algorithm	SHA MD5
Oakley Encryption Algorithm	DES CBC Triple-DES
Oakley Authentication Algorithm	PRE
Preshared Key	Create a unique 8-character preshared key (key A).
Oakley Group Description	1 2 IRE
Phase 1 SA Lifetime - Seconds	28800
Phase 1 SA Lifetime - KBytes	DISABLED

21. Press <x> to exit the Oakley (Phase 1) Preferences configuration menu.
22. Press <i> to enter the IPSec (Phase 2) Preferences menu.
23. For each item, enter the following value if not already selected:

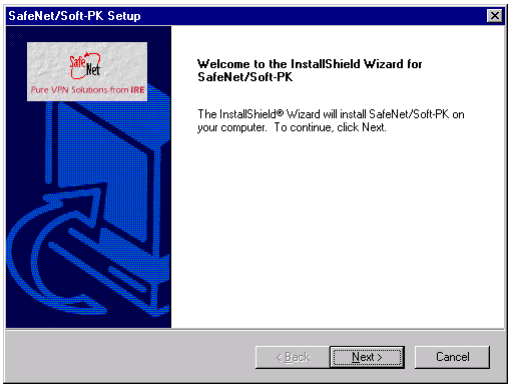
Item	Value
AH Transform	SHA MD5
ESP Transform	DES Triple-DES
HMAC Transform	DES SHA MD5
Phase 2 Lifetime - Seconds	28800
Phase 2 Lifetime - KBytes	DISABLED
AH Protocol Negotiation	DISABLED
ESP Protocol Negotiation	REQUIRED
Replay Protection	ENABLED

24. Press <x> to exit the IPSec (Phase 2) Preferences menu.
25. Press <x> to exit the Public Key menu.
26. Press <x> to exit the Configuration menu.
27. The SafeNet/Speed box is now configured to work with the network.

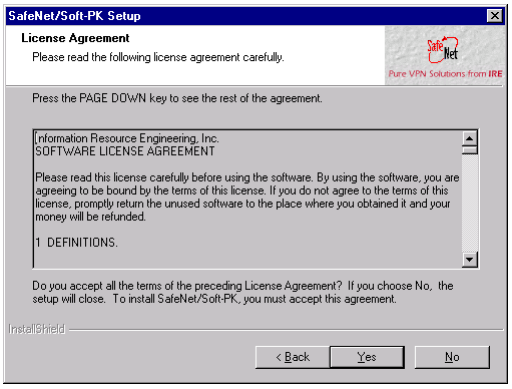
Step 3: Installing SafeNet/Soft-PK on the Server and Client

Note: It does not matter whether you install SafeNet/Soft-PK on the server or the client first, but it must be installed on both machines.

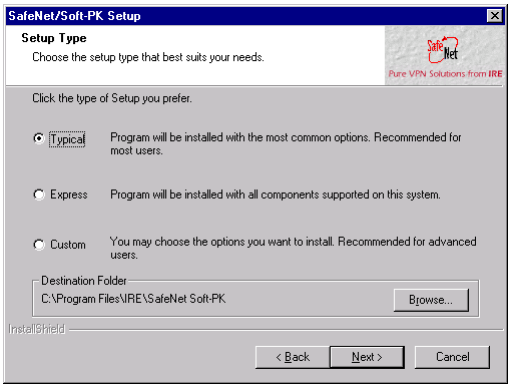
1. On the server, insert the SafeNet/Soft-PK CD into the CD-ROM drive and run the **Setup.exe** file.
2. The InstallShield Wizard for SafeNet/Soft-PK opens. Click [Next].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for SafeNet/Soft-PK
The InstallShield® Wizard will install SafeNet/Soft-PK on your computer. To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

3. The wizard continues, and the License Agreement window is displayed. If you agree to the terms, click [Yes].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement carefully.
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement.
Information Resource Engineering, Inc.
SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
Please read this license carefully before using the software. By using the software, you are agreeing to be bound by the terms of this license. If you do not agree to the terms of this license, promptly return the unused software to the place where you obtained it and your money will be refunded.
1 DEFINITIONS.
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, the setup will close. To install SafeNet/Soft-PK, you must accept this agreement.
InstallShield
< Back
Yes
No

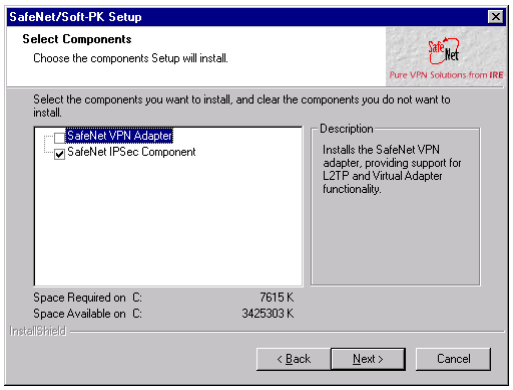
4. The wizard continues, and the Setup Type window is displayed. Select the **Typical** option and click [Next].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
Setup Type
Choose the setup type that best suits your needs.
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
Click the type of Setup you prefer.
Typical
Program will be installed with the most common options. Recommended for most users.
Express
Program will be installed with all components supported on this system.
Custom
You may choose the options you want to install. Recommended for advanced users.
Destination Folder
C:\Program Files\IRE\SafeNet Soft-PK
Browse...
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

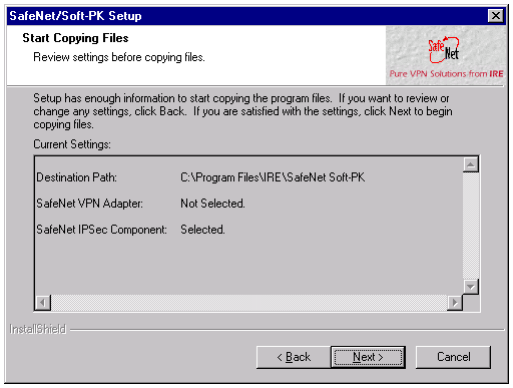
5. A dialog box opens. Since Windows 2000 provides a native L2T2 component, the SafeNet VPN Adapter does not need to be installed. Click

[OK] to acknowledge that the SafeNet L2T2 Component will not be installed.

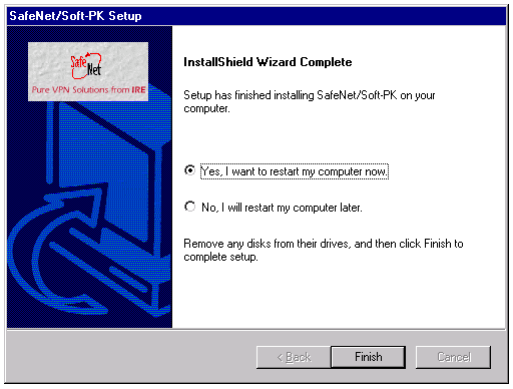
6. The wizard continues, and the Select Components window is displayed. Make sure the **SafeNet IPSec Component** checkbox is selected and click [Next].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
Select Components
Choose the components Setup will install.
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
Select the components you want to install, and clear the components you do not want to install.
SafeNet VPN Adapter
SafeNet IPSec Component
Description
Installs the SafeNet VPN adapter, providing support for L2TP and Virtual Adapter functionality.
Space Required on C: 7615 K
Space Available on C: 3425303 K
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

7. The wizard continues, and the Start Copying Files window is displayed. Click [Next].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
Start Copying Files
Review settings before copying files.
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Current Settings:
Destination Path: C:\Program Files\IRE\SafeNet Soft-PK
SafeNet VPN Adapter: Not Selected.
SafeNet IPSec Component: Selected.
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

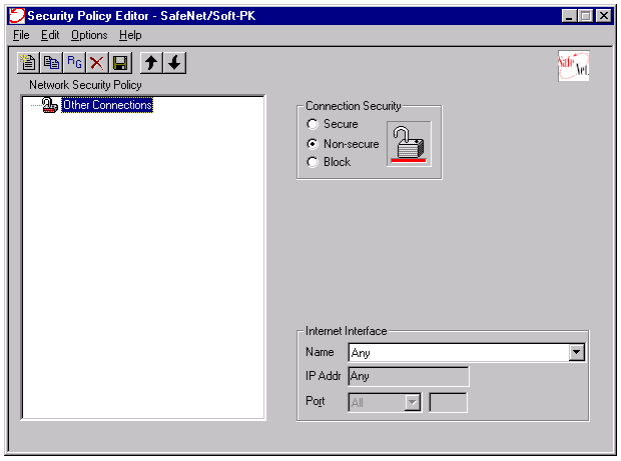
8. Select the **Yes, I want to restart my computer now** option and click [Finish].


SafeNet/Soft-PK Setup
Pure VPN Solutions from IRE
InstallShield Wizard Complete
Setup has finished installing SafeNet/Soft-PK on your computer.
Yes, I want to restart my computer now.
No, I will restart my computer later.
Remove any disks from their drives, and then click Finish to complete setup.
< Back
Finish
Cancel

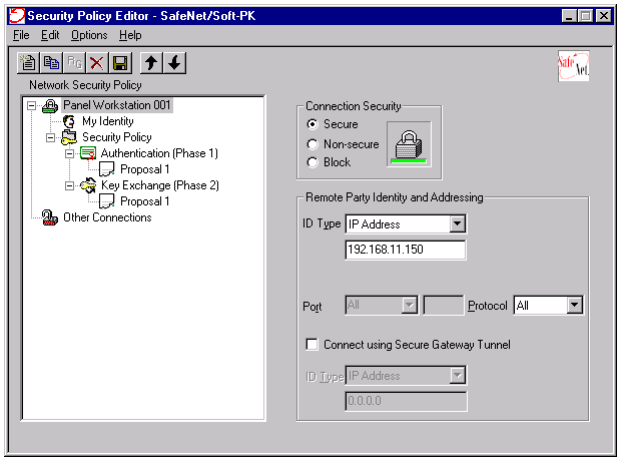
9. Repeat the installation on the workstation.

Step 4: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Server

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > SafeNet Soft-PK > Security Policy Editor**.
2. Click the **Add a new connection** toolbar icon.



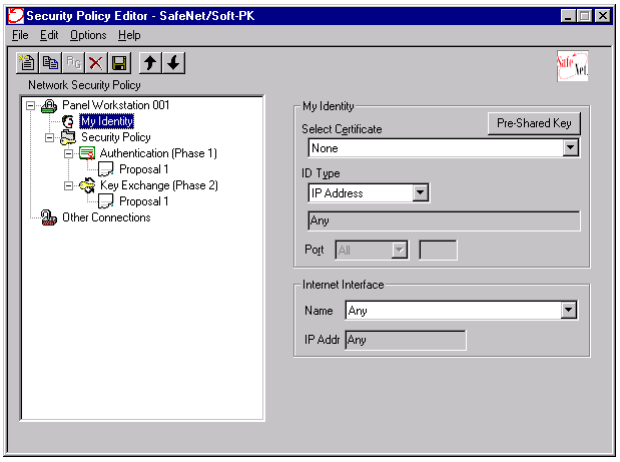
3. Name the connection '**Panel Workstation 001**'.
4. With **Panel Workstation 001 highlighted**:
   a. Make sure the following options are selected:
      - Secure
      - **Protocol** dropdown set to 'All'
      - **ID Type** dropdown listbox set to 'IP Address'
   b. Enter the static IP address of the workstation.



5. Expand **Panel Workstation 001**. With 'My Identity' highlighted:
   a. Make sure the following options are selected:
      - 'IP Address' in the **ID Type** dropdown listbox
      - 'None' in the **Select Certificate** dropdown listbox

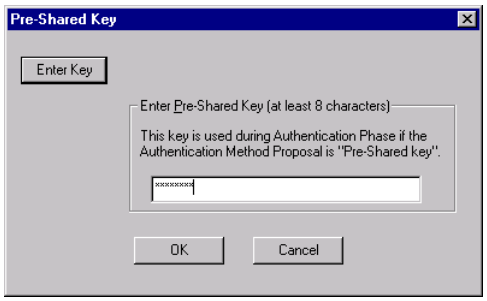
- ‘Any’ in the **Name** dropdown listbox

b. Click [Pre-Shared Key].

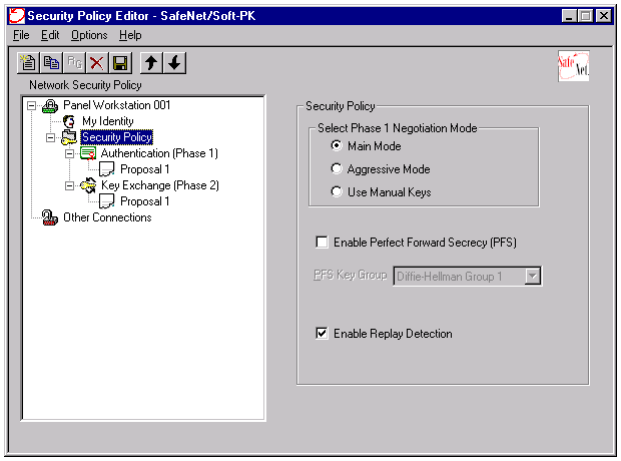


6. Click [Enter Key].
7. Enter at least 8 characters for the key, then click [OK].

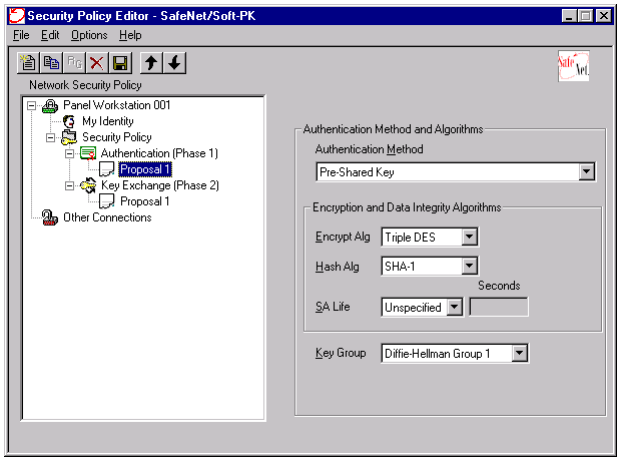
Note: This preshared key: (key B) should be different than the preshared key entered in step 20 of Step 2: Configuring the SafeNet/Speed Box (key A) on page 304.


Pre-Shared Key
Enter Key
Enter Pre-Shared Key (at least 8 characters)
This key is used during Authentication Phase if the Authentication Method Proposal is "Pre-Shared key".
****
OK
Cancel

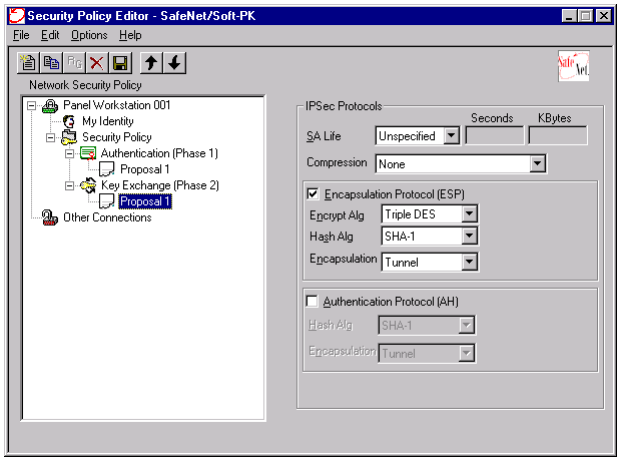
8. With **Panel Workstation 001** expanded and 'Security Policy' highlighted:
   a. Select the **Main Mode** option.
   b. Select the **Enable Replay Detection** checkbox.



9. With **Panel Workstation 001** expanded and **'**Proposal 1' beneath 'Authentication (Phase 1)' highlighted:
   a. Make sure the following are selected:
      - 'Pre-Shared Key' in the **Authentication Method** dropdown listbox
      - 'SHA-1' in the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox
      - 'Unspecified' in the **SA Life** dropdown listbox
      - 'Diffie-Hellman Group 1' in the **Key Group** dropdown listbox
   b. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select 'Triple DES'.



10. With **Panel Workstation 001** expanded and **'**Proposal 1' beneath 'Key Exchange (Phase 2)' highlighted:
    a. Make sure the following are selected:
        - 'Unspecified' in the **SA Life** dropdown listbox
        - 'None' in the **Compression** dropdown listbox
        - The **Encapsulation Protocol (ESP)** checkbox
        - 'SHA-1' in the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox
        - 'Tunnel' in the **Encapsulation** dropdown listbox
    b. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select 'Triple DES'.



11. Click the 'Save' toolbar button.

Step 5: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Workstation

To configure SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-peer encryption on the workstation, follow the same process as was previously described in Step 4: Configuring SafeNet/

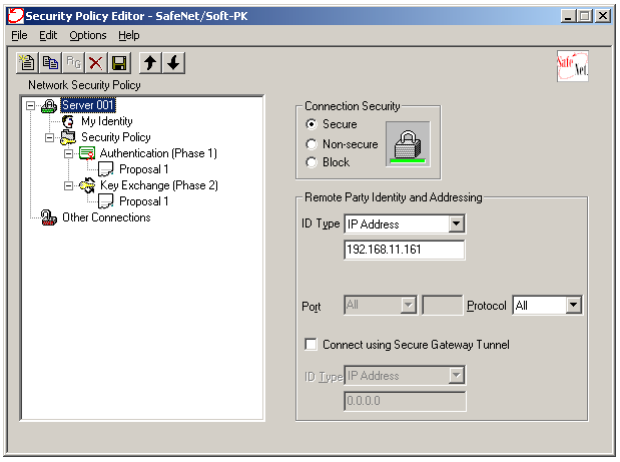
Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Server on page 309, with minor modifications:

1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > SafeNet Soft-PK** > **Security Policy Editor**.
2. Click the **Add a new connection** toolbar icon.
3. Name the connection '**Server 001**'.
4. With **Server 001** highlighted:
   a. Make sure the following options are selected:

Secure

- **Protocol** dropdown set to ‘All’
- **ID Type** dropdown listbox set to ‘IP Address’

b. Enter the static IP address of the workstation.



5. Expand **Server 001**. With ‘My Identity’ highlighted:
   a. Make sure the following options are selected:
      - ‘IP Address’ in the **ID Type** dropdown listbox
      - ‘None’ in the **Select Certificate** dropdown listbox
      - ‘Any’ in the **Name** dropdown listbox
   b. Click [Pre-Shared Key].
6. Click [Enter Key].
7. Enter the same key (key B) that was entered on the server in step 7 of Step 4: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Server on page 310, then click [OK].
8. With **Server 001** expanded and ‘Security Policy’ highlighted, make sure that:
   - The **Main Mode** option is selected.
   - The **Enable Replay Detection** checkbox is selected.
9. With **Server 001** expanded and **‘**Proposal 1’ beneath ‘Authentication (Phase 1)’ highlighted:
   a. Make sure that the following are selected:
      - ‘Pre-Shared Key’ in the **Authentication Method** dropdown listbox
      - ‘SHA-1’ in the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox
      - ‘Unspecified’ in the **SA Life** dropdown listbox
      - ‘Diffie-Hellman Group 1’ in the **Key Group** dropdown listbox
   b. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select ‘Triple DES’.
10. With **Server 001** expanded and **‘**Proposal 1’ beneath ‘Key Exchange (Phase 2)’ highlighted:
    a. Make sure that the following are selected:

- 'Unspecified' in the **SA Life** dropdown listbox
- 'None' in the **Compression** dropdown listbox
- The **Encapsulation Protocol (ESP)** checkbox
- 'SHA-1' in the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox
- 'Tunnel' in the **Encapsulation** dropdown listbox

b. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select 'Triple DES'.

11. Click the 'Save' toolbar button.

Step 6: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Panel Encryption on the Workstation

To configure SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-panel encryption on the workstation, follow the same process as was previously described in Step 4: Configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK Peer-to-Peer Encryption on the Server on page 309, with minor modifications:

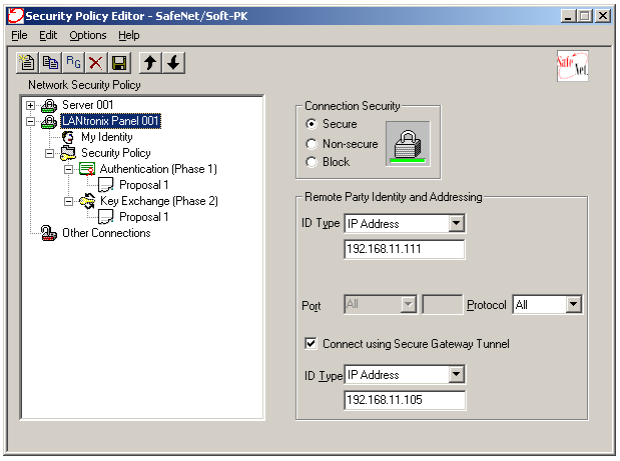
1. Click the Windows Start button, then select **Programs > SafeNet Soft-PK** > **Security Policy Editor**.
2. Select a root item in the tree (i.e. Server 001).
3. Click the **Add a new connection** toolbar icon.
4. Name the connection '**LANtronix Panel 001**'.
5. With **LANtronix Panel 001** highlighted:
   a. Make sure the following options are selected:

Secure

- 'All' in the **Protocol** dropdown
- 'IP Address' in the first **ID Type** dropdown listbox
- The **Connect Using Secure Gateway Tunnel** option
- 'IP Address' in the second **ID Type** dropdown listbox

b. Enter the static IP address of the LANtronix box in the first **IP Address** field.

c. Enter the static IP address of the SafeNet/Speed box in the second **IP Address** field.



6. Expand **LANtronix Panel 001**. With 'My Identity' highlighted:

   a. Make sure the following options are selected:

   - 'IP Address' in the **ID Type** dropdown listbox
   - 'None' in the **Select Certificate** dropdown listbox
   - 'Any' in the **Name** dropdown listbox

   b. Click [Pre-Shared Key].

7. Click [Enter Key].

8. Enter the same key (key A) that was entered on the SafeNet/Speed box in step 20 of Step 2: Configuring the SafeNet/Speed Box on page 304, then click [OK].

9. With **LANtronix Panel 001** expanded and 'Security Policy' highlighted:

   a. Select the **Main Mode** option.

   b. Select the **Enable Replay Detection** checkbox.

10. With **LANtronix Panel 001** expanded and **'**Proposal 1' beneath 'Authentication (Phase 1)' highlighted:

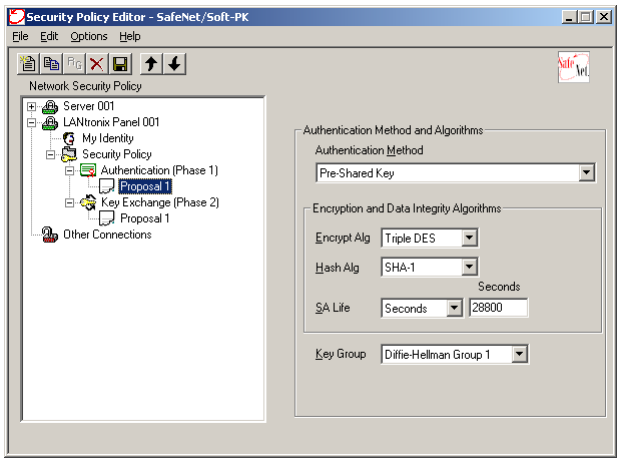
    a. Make sure that the following are selected:

    - 'Pre-Shared Key' in the **Authentication Method** dropdown listbox
    - 'SHA-1' in the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox
    - 'Diffie-Hellman Group 1' in the **Key Group** dropdown listbox

    b. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select 'Triple DES'.

c. In the **SA Life** dropdown listbox, select ‘Seconds’.

d. Enter ‘28800’ in the **Seconds** field.



11. With **LANtronix Panel 001** expanded and **‘**Proposal 1’ beneath ‘Key Exchange (Phase 2)’ highlighted:

    a. In the **SA Life** dropdown listbox, select ‘Seconds’.

    b. Enter ‘28800’ in the **Seconds** field.

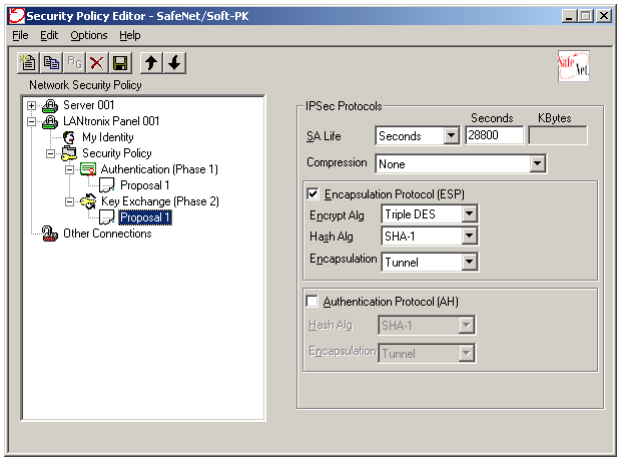
    c. In the **Compression** dropdown listbox, select ‘None’.

    d. Select the **Encapsulation Protocol (ESP)** checkbox.

    e. In the **Encrypt Alg** dropdown listbox, select ‘Triple DES’.

    f. In the **Hash Alg** dropdown listbox, select ‘SHA-1’.

    g. In the **Encapsulation** dropdown listbox, select ‘Tunnel’.



12. Click the ‘Save’ toolbar button.

Appendix O: Ports Used by B.A.S.I.S.

Note: All of the following ports use the TCP protocol.

Port	Function	B.A.S.I.S. version	Where port can be changed
80	Web server	Only used with B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 and 5.8 builds prior to 5.8.310	
1433	Default port for SQL Server		Check SQL Server configuration/ documentation; this can be changed in SQL configuration
1521	Default port for Oracle		Check Oracle configuration/documentation; this can be changed in Oracle configuration
2000	Digital Video - live video streams	B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 and newer	To change, update Registry Setting on Video Recorder **HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\Spider\Resources\Spider\TCPSHAREPARAM**
3001	Lantronix connected controllers	B.A.S.I.S. 5.0 and newer	Used to communicate with all LAN controllers (BEST, Matrix Switchers, all others); this cannot be changed
4001	Communications Server RPC	All B.A.S.I.S. versions	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section DriverRpcPort *
4002	Global Output Server RPC	B.A.S.I.S. 5.0 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section GosRpcPort *
4003	Login Driver RPC	B.A.S.I.S. 5.0 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section LoginRpcPort *
4004	Communications Server Socket (event reporting)	All B.A.S.I.S. versions	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section DriverSocketPort *
4005	Linkage Server RPC	B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section LinkageServerRpcPort *
4006	Video Server RPC	B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section VideoServerRpcPort *
4007-4057	Alarm Monitoring RPC	B.A.S.I.S. 5.9 and newer	Used for Guard Tour only. One port used per Monitoring instance on a given machine (typically 4007) Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section AcsmntrRpcMinPort, AcsmntrRpcMaxPort **
4059	Replicator	B.A.S.I.S. 5.9 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section ReplicatorSocketPort *
4060	Replicator	B.A.S.I.S. 5.9 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section ReplicatorRpcPort *

Port	Function	B.A.S.I.S. version	Where port can be changed
4061	DataExchange	B.A.S.I.S. 5.9 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section DESocketPort *
4062	DataExchange	B.A.S.I.S. 5.9 and newer	Can be changed in **ACS.INI** [Service] section DERpcPort *
8189	License Server	B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 or newer	To change the License Server port: 1. The value for the Port key in the [License Server] section of the **ACS.INI** file must be changed on every B.A.S.I.S. machine. The default is: [License Server] Port=8189 2. The following must be added to the **LicenseServerConfig\Server.properties** file (file content is case-sensitive!): Port=8189 where '8189' is replaced by the desired port number. (This line is not present by default. The whole file is not present by default; it is created when the admin username or password is changed.)
8190	Web Utility Server	Only used with 5.7 and 5.8 builds prior to 5.8.310	
9999	License Administration	B.A.S.I.S. 5.7 and newer	To change the License Administration port, the following must be added to the **LicenseServerConfig\Server.properties** file (file content is case sensitive!): AdminPort=9999 where '9999' is replaced by the desired port number. (This line is not present by default. The whole file is not present by default; it is created when the admin username or password is changed.) **Note:** The License Administration shortcut installed by B.A.S.I.S. can't be used if the License Administration port has been changed. To access the License Administration after the port has been changed, simply point the browser to http://licenseserver:9999 (where 'licenseserver' is the name of the machine running Licenser Server and '9999' is the port number for License Administration).

* To change these ports, the **ACS.INI** settings must be changed on all machines (server and clients).

** To change these ports for a given monitoring station, the **ACS.INI** settings only need to be changed on that machine.

Recorded Digital Video Ports

Recorded digital video uses DCOM to stream video, which is controlled by Microsoft using a “find any free port” method. This can be modified using the DCOMconfig utility to specify the ports that DCOM can use. The following steps can be followed, but please refer to the Microsoft DCOM documentation for complete and updated information.

To modify the ports used for recorded video playback, a change must be made in the DCOMcnfg utility included as part of the Windows operating system.

1. Run the DCOMcnfg utility by typing in “`dcomcnfg`” from the Run command on the Start menu.
2. Select the “Default Protocols” tab, which will list all of the protocols DCOM will use for communication over the network.
3. Modify the ports used by the selecting “Properties” for the “Connection-oriented TCP/IP” protocol and enter in the list of ports that can be used.

Index

A

About accounts 211
Access control server/configuration & monitoring station checklist 14
Access database upgrade 30
ACCESSCONTROL database
backup 166
restore 167
AccessControl_Data.mdf file 238
AccessControlDemo_Data.mdf file 238
Accounts
about 211
ADMIN 205
Lenel 205
SA 205
table of accounts 205
Acrobat Reader - install 52
ACS.INI file
License Server settings 249
settings when manually upgrading from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine 223
Terminal Services environment 278
Administrator properties - change 271
password 271
username 271
Alarm Monitoring
Alarm Monitoring station checklist 15
FlashPoint video input 55, 252
Appembed.htm file 292
Attach
hardware key 25, 47
SQL Server Desktop Engine database 237
Automatic e-mail/paging 89
Automatic paging - setting up 103

B

B 205
B.A.S.I.S.
install 41, 42
installing on Citrix server 293
installing on Oracle 9i client 164
installing on Oracle 9i server 154
maintaining 34
publishing as a web application using Citrix 294
removing 34, 38
set up B.A.S.I.S. database 24, 51
setting up encryption for 302
setting up the B.A.S.I.S. Capture dialog 79
upgrade Access database 30
upgrade from B.A.S.I.S. 2000 23
upgrade from B.A.S.I.S. 2002 23
Backup
ACCESSCONTROL database 166
configure automatic file backup to tape 183
configure database backup folder 175
intervals between 167
SQL Server database to file 175
SQL Server database to tape drive 183
SQL Server Desktop Engine database to file 193
SQL Server Desktop Engine database to tape drive 183
Backup procedures
Dell Precision 330 165
Dell Precision 340
SQL Server 2000 170
Badging room layout 81
Basic camera setup (CAM-CCP-500K) 83
Basic camera setup (VK-C77U) 273
Basic continuous lighting setup (EHK-K42U-A) 85
Basic flash setup (EHK-283) 274

C

CAM-CCP-500K image capture kit 83
CAM-CCP-500KUSB Windows 2000 image capture kit 65
Camera
capture quality 79, 273
CON-500 camera controller 64, 77
connect to Flashpoint board 258
connect video camera to FlashPoint 3D board 58
setting up a CAM-CCP-500K 83
setting up a VK-C77U 273
Capture station
configure 79
set up 79
setup specifications 80, 273
Carrier - configuring in WirelessOffice Administrator 99
CCD video camera 54, 65
CCD/CCTV video setup
current hardware 53
discontinued hardware 251
USB devices 65
CCP-500 (back view) 84
Change
database password 206

Lenel account password 208
scheduled backup Intervals 167
SYSTEM account password using Database Setup 212
system administrator password for the database 211
Change administrator properties for the License Administration application 271
Checklist
access control server/configuration & monitoring station 14
Alarm Monitoring station 15
ID badging station 15
WirelessOffice 91
Citrix
configure the carrier 99
configure the Citrix web server 280
general issues 278
implications 278
installing B.A.S.I.S. on the server 293
installing Citrix MetaFrame on the server . 279
installing Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2) ... 280
installing required applications 279
overview 277
publishing B.A.S.I.S. as a web application 294
running the Citrix Web Site Wizard 288
Citrix NFuse Web Extensions - install 283
Client
Oracle 9i 159
Command line - running License Server from . 250
Communication Server 25, 51
CON-500 camera controller programming unit. 64, 77
Concurrent licensing 249
Conduct
database restore for ACCESSCONTROL . 167
random database backup for ACCESSCONTROL 166
Configuration information - viewing 217
Configure
automatic database file backup to tape drive 183
capture station 79
Distributed ID/Mobile Badging system 243
Microsoft SQL Server for automatic database backup to file 175
Mobile Badging station 244
Oracle 9i client software 159
Oracle 9i server software 133
server to be a Distributed ID Master server 243
SQL Server 2000 116
TCP/IP in Windows 2000 87
video hardware & software 53, 65
WirelessOffice messaging software version 3.0 89
Connect your video cameras to your FlashPoint 3D board 58
Continuous lighting diagram 83
Continuous lighting setup 85
Create
database 116
database backup folder 175
login 120
virtual IIS directory 281
Create the Lenel user
SQL Server 120

D

Database backup
overview 165
Database Installation Utility
field table 236
overview 235
procedures 237
window 235
Database owner - change in SQL Server Desktop Engine 241
Database restoration 165
Database Setup
change database password 217
change SYSTEM account password 212
how to run 214
manually upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine after running 224
manually upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine before running 221
procedures 214
program 213
running on an Oracle 9i server 157
view configuration information 217
viewing the setup log 216
Database Setup Options window 213
Default accounts and passwords table 205
Deleting an installed license 267
Dell GX1
chassis diagram 58
I/O ports and connectors 58
Dell Precision 330 165
backup and restore process overview 165
change scheduled backup intervals 167
conduct a database restore for ACCESSCONTROL 167
conduct a random database backup for ACCESSCONTROL 166
Dell Precision 340
backup and restore process overview 169

manually back up an SQL Server Desktop Engine database to a file 193
SQL Server 2000 backup procedures 170
create a database backup folder 175
install drivers for the tape backup device .. 170
Demo database 238
Determining if the License Server is running ... 250
Diffused lighting 82
DirectX
install 201
requirements 201
Disable strong password enforcement 206
Discontinued hardware
configure video hardware 251
configure video software 251
connect your video cameras to your FlashPoint board 258
EHK-283 (Enhance Lighting Kit) 263
Flashpoint video capture board installation 253
install FlashPoint VGA display adapter driver. 253
verify that the VGA display settings are correct 255
Distributed ID Master server 243
Dongle 25, 47, 249
parallel port 47
USB 47
DPS060200-P5 camera power supply 54, 65

E

Edit
Appembed.htm file 292
Template.ica file 292
EHK-283 274
EHK-K42U-A 85
EHK-K42U-A Professional Continuous Lighting Kit 54
EHK-K42U-A professional continuous lighting kit 65
E-Mail
setup procedures 92
E-mail
automatic 89
manual 89
Enable strong password enforcement 206
Encryption 299
configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-panel encryption on the workstation 315
configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-peer encryption on the server 309
configuring SafeNet/Soft-PK peer-to-peer encryption on the workstation 312
configuring the SafeNet/Speed box 302
hardware configuration 302
installing SafeNet/Soft-PK on the server and client 306
overview 299
Enforce strong passwords checkbox 206
Environmental considerations affecting flash & camera capture quality 79, 273
Environmental considerations and factors leading to poor lighting 86, 275

F

File Messenger - configuring 99
Final adjustments for continuous lighting 83
Final adjustments for fixed diffused lighting 82
Flash capture quality 79, 273
Flash setup 274
FlashPoint
3D VGA display adapter driver installation 56
install software 58
video capture board installation 55
Flashpoint
software installation 257

H

Hardware key 25, 47
parallel 47
USB 47
Hardware requirements for SQL Server 107
Hitachi VK-C77U camera dip switch settings .. 262
HOC-3610 ..... 55, 56, 66
How to run the Database Setup program 214

I

ID badging station checklist 15
IIS directory 281
Install 25
Acrobat Reader 52
B.A.S.I.S. ET 41
B.A.S.I.S. on an Oracle 9i server 154
B.A.S.I.S. software 42
B.A.S.I.S. via a Terminal Services client window 298
Citrix MetaFrame on the server 279
Citrix NFuse Web Extensions 283
DirectX 201
F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows 2000) 70
F5U208 VideoBus II USB Cable (Windows XP) 66
Feature Release 1 (Service Pack 2) for Citrix .. 280
FlashPoint 3D VGA display adapter driver. 56

FlashPoint software 58, 257
FlashPoint VGA display adapter driver..... 253
FlashPoint video capture board 55, 253
Java client 282
Microsoft SQL Server..... 107
new B.A.S.I.S. license 25, 51, 268
NFuse Web Site Wizard 286
Oracle 9i client software..... 159
Oracle 9i server software..... 133, 135
SafeNet/Soft-PK on the server and client.. 306
SQL Server 2000 (new installations)..... 108
configuring SQL Server 2000 116
create a login..... 120
installing SQL Server 2000 109
run SQL Query Analyzer..... 123
VideoBus USB cable 66
WirelessOffice messaging software 93
WirelessOffice messaging software version 3.0 89

J

Java client - install 282

L

Large fonts 57
Layout of room recommended for badging 81
Lenel account password
change..... 208
Lenel database
configure for Oracle 9i server..... 137
Lenel user
create on Oracle 9i server 155
License
deleting 267
install 25
viewing 267
License Administration
change administrator properties..... 271
deleting an installed license 267
logging into..... 266
logging out..... 271
overview 265
password 265
procedures..... 265
starting 265
username..... 265
viewing an installed license..... 267
viewing the License Server log..... 270
License Server
ACS.INI settings..... 249
attach the hardware key 25, 47
determine if running 250
overview 249
procedures..... 250
running from the command line 250
running in Windows 250
viewing License Server log 270
Lighting
environmental considerations..... 86, 275
final adjustments for continuous lighting 83
final adjustments for fixed diffused lighting 82
Log files
License Server 270
setup log..... 216
Logging into License Administration..... 266
Logging out License Administration..... 271
Login Driver 210
Login for SQL Server 120

M

Maintain
B.A.S.I.S. 34
Manual
e-mail 89
override settings for Saerim DSP 32X 76
paging 89
Manual paging
setting up..... 103
Manually back up an SQL Server Desktop Engine
database to a file 193
Manually upgrade from Access to SQL Server Desktop Engine
after running Database Setup..... 224
before running Database Setup..... 221
Mobile Badging station
configure..... 244
Mobile Badging system 243

N

Net Configuration Assistant
running on Oracle 9i client..... 164
running on Oracle 9i server 146

O

Operating system requirements for SQL Server 108
Oracle 9i client
configure software 159
install B.A.S.I.S. software 164
install software..... 159
run the Net Configuration Assistant..... 164
verify that the system works..... 164
Oracle 9i server
configure the Lenel database 137
create the Lenel user..... 155
install B.A.S.I.S. 154
install software..... 135

installing 133
run Database Setup 157
run the Net Configuration Assistant 146
software configuration overview 133
verify that the system works 152

P

Paging
automatic 89
manual 89
setting up automatic paging 103
setting up manual paging 103
setup procedures 92
Parallel port dongle 47
Password 120
Password change
inform administrators of the password change. 212
write down 212
Passwords
access control database 120
case sensitivity 206
change database password 205, 217
change Lenel account password 208
change the database password 206
change the SYSTEM account password using Database Setup 212
change the system administrator password for the database 211
disable strong password enforcement 206
enable strong password enforcement 206
Enforce strong passwords checkbox 206
enforcement when using single sign-on 205
License Administration 265
Login Driver 210
maximum length 206
minimum length 206
Oracle 206
standards 205
table of default passwords 205
Peer-to-panel encryption
workstation 315
Peer-to-peer encryption
server 309
workstation 312
Poor lighting 86, 275
Port
configure for WirelessOffice 98
Ports 319

Q

Query Analyzer - running 123

R

Recommended badging room layout 81
Remove
B.A.S.I.S. 34, 38
Required video hardware 53, 65, 251
Restore
ACCESSCONTROL database 167
Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database 189
Room layout & lighting setup for a capture station with discontinued video capture hardware 273
Room layout recommended for badging 81
Run
Citrix Web Site Wizard 288
License Server from the command line 250
License Server in Windows 250
Query Analyzer 123

S

Saerim DSP32X manual override settings 76
SafeNet/Soft-PK
configure peer-to-peer encryption on the server 309
configure peer-to-peer encryption on the workstation 312
configuring peer-to-panel encrytion on the workstation 315
SafeNet/Speed box - configuring for encryption 302
Setting up
automatic paging 103
B.A.S.I.S. Capture dialog 79
B.A.S.I.S. database 24, 51
capture station 79
FlashPoint board 253
manual paging 103
Setup log - viewing 216
Small fonts 57
SQL Server
configure for automatic database backup to file 175
configure SQL Server 2000 116
create database 116
create login 120
create the Lenel user 120
hardware requirements 107
install 107
manually back up the database to tape 181
new installations 108
operating system requirements 108
restore file to Microsoft SQL Server 2000 database 189
support overview 107
upgrade B.A.S.I.S. database 26

upgrading from SQL Server 7.0 to SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition 125
verifying the database upgrade 131
SQL Server Desktop Engine
change database owner 241
manually back up an SQL Server Desktop Engine database to a file 193
manually upgrade from Access after running Database Setup 224
manually upgrade from Access before running Database Setup 221
transfer database to new machine 229
Start
Communication Server 25, 51
License Administration application 265
Strong password enforcement
disable 206
enable 206
SYSTEM account password - change 212

T

Tape drive
backup 183
TCP/IP in Windows 2000 87
Template.ica file 292
Terminal Services
install B.A.S.I.S. using 298
Transfer an SQL Server Desktop Engine database.. 229

U

Upgrade
B.A.S.I.S. Access database 30
B.A.S.I.S. Oracle database 26
B.A.S.I.S. SQL database 26
from B.A.S.I.S. 2000 23
SQL Server 7.0 to SQL Server 2000 Standard Edition 125
Upgrading 23, 38
USB devices
hardware key 47
install Belkin F5U208 VideoBus II on Windows 2000 70
install Belkin F5U208 VideoBus II on Windows XP 66
Username for License Administration 265

V

VGA display settings
discontinued hardware 255
supported hardware 56
Video capture board installation - FlashPoint 55
Video hardware
configure discontinued hardware 251
required 53, 65, 251
Video I/O Settings form
discontinued hardware 261
Video Settings form
current hardware 61, 74
discontinued hardware 261
Video software
configure discontinued software 251
Video software settings 72
current hardware 60
discontinued hardware 259
Video software settings for a capture station
current hardware 60
discontinued hardware 260
Video software settings for a CCTV station
current hardware 60
discontinued hardware 259
View
configuration information 217
installed license 267
License Server log 270
setup log 216
Virtual IIS directory 281
VK-C77U
basic camera setup 273
camera dip switch settings 262

W

Web browsers supported 265
Web server configuration for Citrix 280
Windows Terminal Services/Citrix overview ... 277
WirelessOffice 89
configuration checklist 91
configure File Messenger 99
configure the port 98
installing 93
overview 89

P.O. Box 5044
Indianapolis, IN 46250
Phone: (317) 849-2250

B.A.S.I.S.® ET Third Edition Installation & Setup User Guide, product version 5.10.423
Item number E810, revision 143, April 2004

Content of this document copyright © 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003 & 2004 by Lenel Systems International, Inc. BadgeDesigner™, FormsDesigner™, and MapDesigner™, are trademarks used by Best Access Systems with permission from Lenel Systems International, Inc. Windows, Windows XP, Windows 2000 are trademarks and Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Integral and FlashPoint are trademarks of Integral Technologies, Inc. Crystal Reports for Windows is a trademark of Crystal Computer Services, Inc. Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation. Other product names mentioned in this User Guide may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies and are hereby acknowledged.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of the authors.

The software described in this document is licensed to Best Access Systems by Lenel Systems International, Inc. Portions of this product were created using LEADTOOLS © 1991-2004, LEAD Technologies, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. The software includes ImageStream® Graphic Filters. Copyright © 1991-2004 Inso Corporation. All rights reserved. ImageStream Graphic Filters and ImageStream are registered trademarks of Inso Corporation.